

**2015-2016**  
**Undergraduate Academic Catalog**

---

## FROM THE PRESIDENT

---



### Welcome

Averett is a place of learning where you will find a diversity of academic programs all grounded in the strength of a liberal arts curriculum. You will have the opportunity to explore many subjects and courses. You may even decide to spend a semester abroad or to explore the world on one of our exciting study trips.

This catalog serves as your roadmap to these and many other opportunities. But this is only a guide; the rest is up to you. I encourage you to seek the advice of our talented faculty and staff who are dedicated to nurturing your success. We are here to support you, to challenge you, and to encourage you as you discover the power of an Averett education. It is our privilege to listen to your dreams and to help you find your path.

Please know that my door is open to you. You will see me and my husband, Joe, around campus and at University events. I look forward to getting to know you and to applauding your success.

Best Wishes,

Tiffany M. Franks  
President

FROM THE PRESIDENT .....	2
INTRODUCING AVERETT .....	5
ADMISSION .....	10
ACADEMIC PROGRAMS AND REGULATIONS .....	19
STUDENT SUCCESS AND RESEARCH SERVICES .....	29
GENERAL REGULATIONS .....	42
INDIVIDUALLY DESIGNED EDUCATION FOR ADULT LEARNERS (IDEAL) .....	47
DEGREE PROGRAMS AND COURSES .....	49
AERONAUTICS (AV) .....	50
ART (ART) .....	60
ATHLETIC TRAINING .....	66
BIOLOGICAL AND PHYSICAL SCIENCES (BIO, CH, PSC) .....	73
BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (BSA) .....	85
COMMUNICATION STUDIES/JOURNALISM .....	95
COMPUTER AND INFORMATION SCIENCE (CSS) .....	100
CRIMINAL JUSTICE (CRJ) .....	106
EARLY CHILDHOOD EDUCATION .....	112
ECONOMICS (ECO) .....	114
ENGLISH (ENG) .....	116
ENGLISH/HISTORY (PRE-LAW) .....	123
EQUESTRIAN STUDIES (ES) .....	125
FRENCH (FR) .....	139
GREEK (GRK) .....	141
HEALTH (HTH) .....	141
HEBREW (HEB) .....	141
HISTORY (HIS) .....	142
HISTORY AND POLITICS .....	148
HONORS PROGRAM (HON) .....	150
INTERDISCIPLINARY STUDIES (IDS) .....	154
LEADERSHIP STUDIES (LDR) .....	155
LIBERAL STUDIES (ELEMENTARY EDUCATION) (ED) .....	157
MATHEMATICS (MTH) .....	171
MODERN LANGUAGES .....	179
MUSIC (MUS) .....	181
NURSING (NUR)	
.....	190
PHILOSOPHY (PHL) .....	203
PHYSICAL EDUCATION, WELLNESS, AND SPORT SCIENCE (PE) .....	199
POLITICAL SCIENCE (POS) .....	212

PSYCHOLOGY (PSY).....	217
RELIGION (REL).....	223
SOCIOLOGY (SOC) .....	227
SPANISH (SPA) .....	231
THEATRE (TH).....	233
WOMEN'S AND GENDER STUDIES (WGS)	
STUDENT LIFE .....	242
FINANCIAL INFORMATION .....	251
THE PEOPLE OF AVERETT UNIVERSITY .....	270
UNDERGRADUATE COLLEGE CALENDAR .....	286

---

# INTRODUCING AVERETT

---

## General Information

The University welcomes visitors to the campus throughout the year. The administrative offices are open from 8:30 a.m. to 4:30 p.m., Monday through Friday. Telephone (434) 791-5600, toll free 1-800-AVERETT (283-7388), contact us at [admit@averett.edu](mailto:admit@averett.edu).

Averett University does not discriminate on the basis of race, color, creed, age, gender, national origin or disability in the administration of any of its educational programs, activities, admissions or employment practices.

Averett reserves the right to change courses, requirements, and regulations in this catalog without advance notice. Failure to read this catalog does not excuse students from the requirements and regulations described herein.

Since Averett University does not print a paper catalog, this electronic document is the official academic catalog of the university.

## The University Mission

Averett University prepares students to serve and lead as catalysts for positive change. Averett fulfills this mission by educating students from diverse backgrounds, cultures, and nations through liberal arts based undergraduate and graduate programs in a personal, collegial, interdisciplinary environment.

## The University Vision

Averett University will be a premier student-centered university renowned for innovative teaching and engaged learning.

## The University's Core Values

**Integrity:** We practice the highest ethical standards.

**Innovation:** We encourage and embrace innovative teaching and learning inside and outside the classroom.

**Engagement:** We promote global awareness, service, and leadership.

**Discovery:** We foster a spirit of discovery, problem solving and critical thinking and incorporate liberal arts with professional preparation in our teaching and learning.

**Diversity:** We value diversity of thought, cultures, and the uniqueness of all persons.

**Tradition:** We embrace Averett's Judeo-Christian heritage by honoring the search for truth and spiritual formation.

## Accreditations and Memberships

Averett University is accredited by the Southern Association of Colleges and Schools Commission on Colleges, 1866 Southern Lane, Decatur, GA 30033-4097, telephone 404-679-4500, at <http://www.sacscoc.org> to award associate, baccalaureate and master's degrees. The teacher preparation program is approved by the

Department of Education, Commonwealth of Virginia. The Athletic Training Program is accredited by the Commission on Accreditation of Athletic Training Education (CAATE). The University is approved for payment for veterans.

Averett University's memberships include: the American Council on Education, Association of Virginia Colleges, Council of Independent Colleges, and the Virginia Humanities Conference.

### **Articulation Agreements**

Augusta Health (King's Daughters' Hospital)

BOCES

Bryant & Stratton College

Central Texas College

Virginia Criminal Justice Academies (Central Shenandoah, Prince William, Rappahannock)

Danville Community College

*General*

*Bachelor of Applied Science*

*Business Administration (Traditional & GPS)*

*Criminal Justice*

*Early Childhood Education*

*Computer Science and Information Systems*

*Nurse Education*

Guilford Technical Community College

Hyria Education Finland

Mary Baldwin College

Pajulahti Sports Center

Patrick County Education Foundation

Patrick Henry Community College

Piedmont Community College

*General*

*Bachelor of Applied Science*

*Nurse Education*

Richard Bland College

Rockingham Community College

Virginia College of Osteopathic Medicine

Virginia Commonwealth University

Wake Technical Community College

### **History**

Averett was chartered in 1859 under the name of Union Female College. For over 150 years it has operated continuously, though undergoing several name changes. In 1910 the College became affiliated with the Baptist General Association of Virginia. The name Averett was given to the College by the Board of Trustees in 1917. It was also in 1917 that the College received, from the Virginia State Board of Education, its first accreditation as a junior college. The College was accredited by the Southern Association of Colleges and Schools in 1928 and by the Board of Regents of the University of the State of New York in 1932.

In the fall of 1969, Averett undertook a major reorientation of its program by adding a four-year baccalaureate degree program and making the College coeducational. Since that time, Averett has experienced unusual growth and is emerging as one of the outstanding private senior colleges in Virginia. Upon the graduation of its first baccalaureate class in the spring of 1971, Averett received senior college approval from the State Council of Higher Education for Virginia and accreditation by the Southern Association of Colleges and Schools. In 1978 the College began offering courses leading to the Master of Education degree. Accreditation at the master's level was received in 1981. In the fall of 1983 the College began offering courses leading to the Master of Business Administration degree. The program was approved by the State Council of

Higher Education of Virginia in the spring of 1984 and received accreditation from the Commission on Colleges of the Southern Association of Colleges and Schools in 1986.

On July 1, 2001, Averett College officially became Averett University. In adopting the name Averett University, the Board of Trustees affirmed Averett's position as an innovative, small, private university that gives students the individual attention traditionally associated with small liberal arts colleges along with the advantages found at comprehensive universities. Today Averett remains true to its heritage as an institution where Christian principles are valued and where teaching and learning come first. The University, in addition to its main campus in Danville, has grown to include learning centers throughout Virginia where working adults can experience the benefits of an Averett education.

## **Averett University and Danville, Virginia**

Averett University is located in a residential neighborhood adjacent to Danville's famed Millionaires' Row, a vast collection of Victorian homes recognized by historians for their architectural splendor. Ballou Park, a 107-acre park with an 18-hole Frisbee golf course and a shopping center, is located within easy walking distance from the University. Averett is also located within walking distance of a variety of churches and several restaurants. Piedmont Mall, Coleman Marketplace, other shopping outlets, and a selection of chain and family-owned restaurants are just a short drive across the Dan River. Averett is also conveniently located down the street from Danville Regional Medical Center and other medical service providers.

In addition to the tennis courts, playing fields, fitness center, and basketball courts available at Averett, the city offers recreational facilities, including the 150-acre Dan Daniel Park, home of the Danville Braves, Atlanta's Rookie Class minor league baseball team. Dan Daniel Park features paved and wooded trails for hiking and biking. Averett is within walking distance of a YMCA, which offers swimming, racquetball and other fitness activities.

The University sponsors an annual Arts@Averett Series that brings musical groups, lectures, and plays to Danville. The Averett Singers, Averett Players, and Averett's art students also provide a schedule of plays, concerts and exhibits during the academic year. The Danville Concert Association, Danville Arts and Humanities, the Little Theatre of Danville, and other community groups regularly bring high-quality performances to the area. Danville's Carrington Pavilion, an outdoor amphitheater, hosts concerts and special events.

The city offers three local museums. The Museum of Fine Arts and History, which is within walking distance of the University, houses art galleries, studio space and an auditorium used by local repertory groups. The Danville Science Center, a satellite of the Science Museum of Virginia, offers hands-on exhibits and, during the summer, its popular butterfly station. The American Armoured Foundation Tank Museum showcases tanks and other military equipment.

## **Campus**

The main campus of Averett is situated on approximately 19 acres in the city of Danville. Rolling Piedmont hills, with the Blue Ridge Mountains in the distance, provide an appealing view.

Four of the major living and instructional facilities are located in connected buildings. These buildings contain residence hall rooms, classrooms, laboratories, lounge areas, and administrative offices.

**Main Hall**, constructed in 1910, was the first building on the present site of the University. It has undergone many renovations and additions. Currently this five-story building contains administrative offices, Averett Central, student laundry facilities, campus post office, and residence hall space for men and women. Street level entrance and an elevator make this building accessible to persons with disabilities. **Davenport Hall** houses three floors of residence halls, a central lounge area, an art studio, and the Residence Life Office. Faculty offices are located on the basement level. **Danville Hall** contains residence halls on the top two floors. Classrooms, the Computer Center, a computer lab, facilities for the student publications, and the Security Office are located on the second floor. Two of the classrooms have wireless computer capabilities. Faculty offices are

located on the basement level. The first and second floors have outside entrances that are accessible to those with disabilities. **Bishop Hall** includes classrooms, meeting rooms and a residence hall.

**Averett Commons** is our student apartment complex providing 140 private student bedrooms. Each apartment contains a furnished central living area, a full-service kitchen, a washer/dryer, and two bathrooms. This complex is intended for upperclass students and contains accessible apartments on the first floor for those with disabilities.

The Carrington **Gymnasium** and **Violet T. Frith Fine Arts Center** are located immediately north of Bishop Hall. The **Gymnasium** is used for classes, intramurals and open recreation. The Violet T. Frith Fine Arts Center is located above the gymnasium and has its entrance from Mt. View Avenue. It is the home of the Averett Players and is a site for cultural offerings of the Arts@Averett series.

**Frith Hall**, completed in 1985, houses the science and psychology laboratories and most of the classrooms for the University. A large number of faculty have offices in this building. The David S. Blount Chapel, completed in 1996, is located on the second level. Street access is available on three levels and an elevator makes all floors accessible to persons with disabilities.

**Alumni Hall** was originally constructed as the house for the University president. Since 1984 it has housed the staff of Institutional Advancement, including alumni relations and public relations.

The **Emily Swain Grousbeck Music Center** houses the Music Department, practice rooms, music library, and media center, as well as classrooms and a recital hall.

**Fugate Hall** is a residence facility with a capacity for housing 150 students. There are fifteen suites, each containing a central living area, storage closets, a large bath and five bedrooms. This building has central air conditioning and one floor is easily accessible for persons with disabilities.

The **Fine Arts Building** is located on West Main Street. It was formerly a private residence which has been converted for use by the Art Department. Nearby is the **Carriage House**, another building used by the Art Department for sculpture and ceramics instruction.

The **W. C. English Hall** is another private residence on West Main Street which has been converted to University use. It houses the Admissions Office.

The **Student Center** opened in 2006. The 35,000-square-foot facility includes a dining hall, café, lounge, game area, outdoor deck, computer lab, and offices for student clubs/organizations. The building also houses the office of the Dean of Students, student activities, and counseling center.

The **Mary B. Blount Library** advances the curriculum, research and reading interests of Averett students with scholarly and professional sources, reference consultations, and instruction. The library is located at 344 West Main Street, next to Averett University's Admissions Office. The library building is open seven days a week during the fall and spring semesters. During summer sessions and semester breaks it is open every day except Saturday. Averett students can access the library's electronic resources and ask questions at any time, from any location on the Internet (<http://discover.averett.edu/library>).

The library enables students to discover and retrieve information from multiple sources, including research reports, primary sources and holdings of other libraries. Averett collections include 100,000 print and 100,000 electronic books, 40,000 electronic and print journals, 100 research databases, media and media equipment. Students have access to group and quiet study areas, a computer classroom and lab, self-service digital scanner, printers, and color print and fax services. Library faculty encourage students to develop information fluency skills: the ability to define and articulate a problem, locate reliable sources of information, retrieve, evaluate and understand this literature, and use the knowledge gained to communicate effectively. Librarians offer orientation and research classes throughout the year. Students consult with librarians at the reference desk, toll free at 800-543-9440, locally at 791-5692, by email at [aclib@averett.edu](mailto:aclib@averett.edu), and by FAX at 434-791-5637.

The administrative offices of Averett's Graduate and Professional Studies Program (GPS) and the nursing program are located at 512 Bridge Street, at Riverview in the Historic Tobacco Warehouse District. The repurposed building is surrounded by cobblestone streets leading to the nearby Riverwalk and downtown shopping and restaurants. GPS also operates regional centers in Richmond and the Tidewater area.

The **Danville Regional Airport** houses the facility that Averett leases for the **Aeronautics Program**. The building includes 3,127 square feet of space for all instruction related to supplemental ground instruction, operation manager's office, aircraft maintenance technician's office, and simulator room.

The **Averett University Equestrian Center**, located on 100 acres close to Pelham, North Carolina, is about 15 minutes driving time from the West Main campus. Facilities include a 46,000 square foot building which houses an indoor ring, eighteen stalls and a tack room. The lower stable building houses twenty-two stalls which have removable partitions, two tack rooms, student lounge, office, wash stall for horses and equipment, restroom, and a small laundry area. Outdoor facilities include paddocks and pastures, as well as three training areas: a round pen twenty-five meters in diameter, a dressage ring, and a jumping ring.

**North Campus**, located on approximately seventy acres at 707 Mount Cross Road in Danville, is about ten minutes driving time from the West Main campus. Located on this property is the **E. Stuart James Grant Athletic and Convocation Center**, which houses offices for the Athletic Department staff, the faculty in the Physical Education Department, training room, locker rooms, and gymnasium. This facility will seat approximately 3,000. Also located on **North Campus** are playing fields for the intercollegiate athletic teams.

The **Galesi Family Student Success Center**, opened in 2010, and houses the Office of Student Success, Academic Support, and Writing Support. It is located on the north end of Bishop Hall on the second floor.

**Schoolfield House Booksellers**, opened in 2010, and is located at 354 West Main Street between Main Hall and the Fine Arts Building.

---

## ADMISSION

---

### I. Beginning Freshman

The Admissions Committee attempts to select for enrollment those applicants considered best able to benefit from a college education at Averett. In making its decisions, the Admissions Committee considers many factors:

Graduation from a secondary school or its equivalent;

Grades from the applicant's secondary school;

Results of the College Entrance Examination Board Scholastic Aptitude Test (SAT) and/or the American College Test Assessment (ACT) ;

A college preparatory curriculum taken in the secondary school;

Evidence of the ability of the applicant to do college-level work;

Involvement by the applicant in extracurricular activities.

Averett University admits students of any sex, race, color, and national and ethnic origin to all the rights, privileges, programs, and activities generally accorded or made available to students at the school. The University does not discriminate on the basis of sex, race, color, or national and ethnic origin in administration of its policies, scholarships and loan programs, and athletic and school administrated programs. The University is also committed to non-discrimination on the basis of handicap or religion.

Applicants should provide the Admissions Office with:

1. A completed Application for Admission Form, which may be found at our website: [www.averett.edu](http://www.averett.edu). Applications for Fall entrance are accepted on a rolling basis but should be filed by May 1. Applications received after May 1 will be reviewed on a space available basis.
2. A transcript of credits completed, or in progress, from high school and any college attended. A final high school transcript must be on file for all entering freshmen by Sept. 1, and should include sixteen academic units in a secondary school including at least 4 English, 3 math, 3 lab sciences, 3 history and social sciences, and 3 electives.
3. SAT scores (Averett's code is 5017) or ACT scores (Averett's code is 4338) sent to the Averett University Admissions Office. SAT or ACT scores included on an official high school transcript are acceptable.
4. A Student Health History form, provided by the Dean of Students' office or available online, must be completed and returned to Averett before a student enrolls.

### A. Notification of Acceptance

Averett operates on the "rolling admissions" system; therefore, when all the necessary supporting documents arrive at the University, the Admissions Committee will review the application and promptly inform the applicant of the action taken. Upon receipt of a favorable decision, the applicant should remit a \$300 fee to confirm enrollment and to assure reservation in the residence halls. The reservation fee for commuting students is \$150. International students should confirm their enrollment with a \$1,500 deposit. This fee is refundable until May 1 (for fall entrance). After this date, this fee is non-refundable. An enrollment deposit will remain active if it is applied to a subsequent term within one year from the initial term of application with a recorded date of deposit.

To be granted Regular Acceptance to the University the candidate should complete the following University preparatory course work in grades 9 – 12:

#### Academic Preparation

4 units of English

3 units of Math (at least Algebra I, II and Geometry)

3 units of Lab Science

3 units of History and Social Science

The remaining units for graduation may include other academic related courses such as foreign languages, business, religious study, and computer coursework.

#### Score Guidelines

A High School GPA of 2.5 or greater in grades 9 - 12.

Class rank in the top 50 percent.

A combined SAT score of 850 or greater with a required minimum score of 350 Critical Reading and 350 Mathematics. If the candidate has completed the ACT, a composite score of 17 or greater can be considered. The University will accept the best score if both were taken.

### **B. Reactivating Admission Applications**

The University retains admissions files for two years. An applicant who did not attend the University after having been accepted may reactivate the request for admission by providing the Admissions Office with a statement of the intent to reapply and with an official transcript of any college-level work undertaken since the original application was submitted.

### **C. Advanced Placement**

Advanced placement and academic credit toward a degree may be granted to the student who receives a grade of three, four, or five on the Advanced Placement Examinations of the College Entrance Examination Board. Credit is awarded only in those areas applicable to the Averett curriculum. Information about these examinations can be obtained from the College Board Advanced Placement Examination, Post Office Box 977, Princeton, New Jersey 08540 or <http://www.ets.org/>.

### **D. College Placement Tests for New Freshmen Students**

#### 1. Mathematics

All students entering Averett for the first time must take a mathematics placement test to ensure placement in the proper courses. The test can be taken online prior to orientation or at orientation. Scores are provided to advisors prior to registration for classes.

#### 2. Foreign Language

All students with two or more years of high school credit in French or Spanish must take a placement test in the respective foreign language. These tests are administered online, and scores are provided to advisors prior to registration for classes.

3. Music

All students seeking admission into the music major are required to audition. These auditions can be arranged directly with the Chair of the music department.

4. Equestrian Studies

All students who plan to major in Equestrian Studies are required to take a riding placement test.

## **II. Accelerated Admission and Dual Enrollment**

Accelerated Admission may be granted to qualified high school seniors who wish to complete their secondary school graduation requirements at Averett. These admissions are handled on a case-by-case basis. Dual Enrollment permits students to attend courses at Averett for postsecondary credit while still enrolled at the high school. Both options are excellent ways for academically and socially advanced high school students to expand their educational opportunities. Interested students should follow the normal procedure for applying to the University. Applicants will be evaluated for admission using the following criteria:

1. The student must have the written approval from the high school principal to pursue Accelerated Admission or Dual Enrollment;
2. The student must have a minimum grade point average of 3.0 on a 4.0 scale and rank in the top 50% of the class. Accelerated Admission students must also score a combined total of at least 920 on the SAT or 19 on the ACT;
3. The course(s) attempted must be for college degree credits;
4. The student should demonstrate, through a personal interview, the level of personal maturity necessary to meet the demands of college.

It is the responsibility of the student to request that an official Averett transcript be sent to the high school after the completion of courses attempted.

Accelerated Admission and Dual Enrollment students are not eligible for state or federal financial aid or institutional grants/scholarships until they have completed their requirements for high school graduation. The high school must issue an official transcript or letter indicating that the graduation requirements have been fulfilled.

## **III. International Students**

International students must submit an international application and all required educational documents and test scores to the Admissions Office before an admissions decision can be made. These educational documents include certified English translations of both secondary school transcripts and official transcripts of any college-level work, and acceptable TOEFL (Test of English as a Foreign Language) or SAT scores. Students who are resident aliens must submit a copy of their permanent resident card with their application in order for the application process to continue. The applicant is responsible for having the transcripts evaluated and translated into English and for all costs and fees associated with the service.

Averett accepts only transcripts evaluated by:

World Education Services, Inc.  
P.O. Box 5087  
Bowling Green Station  
New York, NY 10274-5087  
(212) 966-6311

Request that your TOEFL and/or SAT scores be sent directly from the testing service (Averett's code for the SAT and TOEFL is 5017). Averett requires a minimum TOEFL score of 500 (paper-based), 173 (computer-based), or 61 (Internet-based). The SAT will be accepted in lieu of a TOEFL if a minimum Critical Reading score of 480 is achieved.

After acceptance, students must submit a \$1,500 US Dollar enrollment deposit and a completed Certification of Finances form (<http://www.averett.edu/admissions/pdf/CERTIFICATION%20OF%20FINANCE.pdf>) before an I-20 can be issued. The deposit will be accepted from a bank wire, money order, or check. The I-20 is issued after wires, money orders, or checks have cleared. The enrollment deposit is deducted from the first semester's tuition and is refundable (by written request) if the student is denied a student visa. An explanation of the costs to attend per semester can be found online at <http://www.averett.edu/student-accounts/tuition-fees.html>.

For more information on obtaining a student visa, visit the U.S. Citizenship and Immigration Services website at [www.USCIS.gov](http://www.USCIS.gov).

#### **IV. Transfer Student Admission**

A transfer is categorized by having attended any accredited post-secondary institution even if there is no transferable credit. A student who has attempted and completed at least 12 academic hours at an accredited post-secondary institution will be considered a transfer student. A transfer student must have a minimum GPA of 2.0 to be considered for acceptance.

If, however, the candidate has passed fewer than 12 transferrable credits, he/she will also be evaluated upon his/her high school performance and must meet freshman guidelines in addition to the transfer GPA guidelines.

Students who have completed university work while still in high school will not be considered transfer students. These students will be evaluated as first-time freshmen.

It is the responsibility of the student who wishes to transfer to Averett from another college to have a high school transcript and official transcripts of all previous college work sent to the Averett University Admissions Office. In order to receive transfer credit for courses completed before matriculating to Averett, a final official transcript should be received by the end of the first semester of enrollment at Averett. Transfer students must submit a completed Confidential Inquiry for Transfer Applicants Form provided by the Admissions Office or available online (<http://www.averett.edu/admissions/pdf/conf-inq-trans-app.pdf>). To be admitted to Averett, transfer students should have a minimum transfer GPA of 2.0 (on a 4.0 scale) and be in good academic and social standing at their previous institution.

#### **A. Placement Tests for Transfer Students**

All transfer students must take a mathematics placement test. The placement tests are administered online. Information about these placement tests is available from the Office of Admissions or the Vice President for Academic Affairs.

Any transfer student who plans to continue or pursue foreign language study at Averett is required to take the French or Spanish placement exam or see the department chair.

Any transfer student who plans to continue or pursue a major in equestrian studies is required to take a riding placement test.

#### **B. Transfer Credit**

Averett will transfer courses from regionally accredited institutions of higher education for which a grade of C or higher was received. For those students who have received an associate's degree, Averett will accept in transfer all courses that were credited by the transferring institution toward the student's degree.

The one exception to that policy is that Averett does not transfer grades of D in College Composition I or II (or their equivalents). Any student who holds an associate's degree with a D in College Composition I and/or II (or their equivalents) must take ENG 111 and/or ENG 112 at Averett.

An official evaluation of transfer credit will be sent by the Registrar's Office after notification of acceptance.

Because institutions differ in the minimum scores required for awarding credit, Averett does not normally transfer credits for Advanced Placement, CLEP, and similar nationally-normed tests. The student must have an official copy of the test scores sent to Averett for evaluation.

Credits are not normally transferred from proprietary schools or from non-accredited colleges. A student may use the challenge examination or develop a portfolio demonstrating prior learning to receive credit or waiver of specific courses. A department may recommend the waiver of a required course on the basis of course work which is not fully transferable.

Averett University will accept transfer credit earned while a student is on suspension from another institution based on the policy of the suspending institution.

### **C. International Baccalaureate Diploma**

Averett University will grant advanced standing and/or credit for International Baccalaureate higher level examinations. Minimum scores acceptable for credit are determined by each academic department.

### **D. Senior College Credit**

A student who plans to graduate from Averett must complete a minimum of 60 semester hours at a senior college (the nursing program is exempt from this requirement), and the last 30 semester hours of work must be completed at Averett. No work will be transferred to Averett from another college until the student has been granted regular admission to Averett.

### **E. Direct Transfer Agreement**

Direct transfer, or articulation, agreements have been arranged with several two-year colleges. Such agreements follow careful comparisons of the curricula at Averett and the two-year institution. Transfer students who have completed an associate's degree program covered under the agreement will be admitted as juniors and will have all coursework which was credited toward the associate's degree transferred to Averett University. A transfer guide based on the agreement with the Virginia Community College System may be found at <http://www.averett.edu/admissions/pdf/VCCS-transfer-guide.pdf>.

The one exception to that policy is that Averett does not transfer grades of D in College Composition I or II (or their equivalents). Any student who holds an associate's degree with a grade of D in College Composition I and/or II (or their equivalents) must take ENG 111 and/or ENG 112 at Averett.

### **V. Special Students**

A Special Student is, by definition, a non-degree seeking student. In order to apply with the Special Student status, a final high school transcript or an equivalent credential is required for a student who is either currently enrolled in high school, who has graduated from high school, working towards a GED, or who has

never been enrolled in an accredited postsecondary institution. An unofficial college transcript is acceptable until such time as the student seeks degree-seeking status. The special student application should be received by the Admissions Office at least two weeks prior to the beginning of the term in which a student plans to enroll. Once approved, the student may continue to study as a special student at Averett in subsequent consecutive terms. If the student elects to stay out for one or more regular terms (fall or spring semester), then he/she must reapply for readmission as a special student. A special student may take day or evening classes and may be part-time or full-time. Special students are not eligible to receive financial aid.

To be admitted as a degree-seeking student, a special student must file an application for admission with the Admissions Office and satisfy regular entrance requirements. To graduate, a minimum of 30 hours must be earned at Averett after a student has obtained degree-seeking status.

Students who have been suspended from another college or university are ineligible to enroll at Averett under the Special Student status. The applicant must be in good standing at his/her former institution. Admission will be considered after the student serves one full semester of his/her suspension. If a student enrolls at Averett University as a Special Student while on academic suspension/dismissal, he/she forfeits his/her registration.

A degree-seeking applicant cannot request Special Student status after his/her degree-seeking application was denied by the Admissions Committee for the same term, unless new, academically pertinent information is submitted to the Committee.

A borderline student, who first applies as a Special Student as recommended by the Admissions Committee, may be allowed to take 3-6 hours of coursework at Averett. The Averett earned GPA may then be viewed as part of the student's GPA should the student apply for degree-seeking status.

Special students enrolled full-time are eligible to live on campus. Any exceptions or appeals to this policy must be presented to the Dean of Students or the Director of Residence Life.

## **VI. Readmission**

Any student who has attended Averett as a degree-seeking student and has withdrawn, been granted a leave of absence, or not returned for the next regular semester and would like to be readmitted to Averett **MUST** complete an application for readmission through the Admissions Office or online (<http://www.averett.edu/admissions/pdf/Readmit%20Application.pdf>).

A student who attends another college and then seeks readmission to Averett must reapply through the Admissions Office. An official record of all college-level work taken since leaving Averett should accompany this request for readmission. Transfer credit is applied toward an Averett degree based on regular transfer policies.

A student seeking readmission after being on academic or social suspension for one semester must submit a written request for readmission to the Academic Policies Council. The letter should be sent to the Vice President for Academic Affairs at least six weeks prior to the beginning of the term for which the student is seeking readmission. Coursework taken at another college while on suspension from Averett will be considered for transfer if the GPS is a 2.5 or higher.

A student who has been placed on academic suspension and who is readmitted is readmitted under conditions of extended probation. Also, any student who was on academic warning or probation at the time of withdrawal from the University and who is subsequently readmitted will be readmitted with the same status which was in effect at the time of withdrawal.

## **VII. Resident and Commuter Policy**

Students normally are classified as resident students unless they:

- Are undergraduate students 23 years of age or older prior to the next period of enrollment;
- Are married students [no married/family student housing];
- Are parents who care for a dependent child;
- Have served 180 days of consecutive military service prior to enrollment;
- Live with an immediate blood relative within 30 miles of the Danville campus. Immediate blood relative is defined as mother, father, aunt, uncle or grandparent;
- Have accumulated 90 credit hours or will earn 90 credits hours by the end of the spring semester of a given academic year. Such classifications are made once/year prior to the spring housing selection process.
- Anticipated credits for summer or fall sessions of the following year do not count toward the 90 credit hours;
- Have lived in Averett housing for three years;
- Are independent, emancipated adults bearing the full cost of their education;
- Are transfer students who have lived on their own for at least one year prior to entering Averett;

More information about the Resident and Commuter policy is available online (<http://www.averett.edu/student-life/living-on-campus/exceptions.html>). Appeals should be addressed to the Residence Life Office.

## **VIII. Other Admissions**

### **A. Non-Traditional Degree Admissions**

Information about the Individually Designed Education for Adult Learners program (IDEAL) is found on page 44 of this catalog. Students may also consult the Director of the IDEAL Program at Averett University. Information about the Graduate and Professional Studies programs (GPS) is found on page 43 of this catalog. Admissions requirements, program descriptions and requirements and course descriptions for GPS are found in a separate catalog ([http://www.averett.edu/academics/catalogs/active/GPS2011\\_2012v12.pdf](http://www.averett.edu/academics/catalogs/active/GPS2011_2012v12.pdf)).

B.

## **Campus Visits**

Averett welcomes prospective students and parents throughout the year. As a service to visitors, Averett offers individual opportunities to experience campus. As a guest of the campus you will take a student-led tour that incorporates Blount Library, Fugate residence hall, classrooms in Frith Hall, as well as our state-of-the-art Student Center, which houses the Dining Hall and Jut's Café. You also will have a personal interview with your admissions counselor and sit in on a college class. Individual visits can be scheduled online at <http://www.averett.edu/campusvisits/forms/visitform.php> or by calling 1-800-AVERETT (283-7388).

Students can experience Averett during special visit days and open houses as well. A complete calendar of events is available at ( <http://www.averett.edu/campusvisits/pdf/AverettCalendar11-12.pdf>).

If you are interested in attending an open house, please register online or by phone:

Telephone: 434-791-6880

Toll Free: 1-800-AVERETT (283-7388)

Fax: 434-797-2784

E-mail: [slogan@averett.edu](mailto:slogan@averett.edu)

Correspondence regarding campus visits should be addressed to:

Shekinah Logan  
Campus Guest Coordinator  
Averett University  
420 West Main Street  
Danville, Virginia 24541

## Admission Requirements

	Application	Application Fee	High School Transcript	College Transcript	SAT or ACT Scores	Letter of Recommendation	AP Scores	Readmission Form	Dean of Students Form	Enrollment Reservation Fee
Beginning Freshman	•		•	• <sup>1</sup>	• <sup>3</sup>	• <sup>6</sup>	• <sup>1</sup>			•
Transfer Student	•			•		• <sup>6</sup>	• <sup>1</sup>		• <sup>1</sup>	•
International Student	•		•	• <sup>1</sup>	• <sup>5</sup>					•
Former Averett Student (who will transfer credit in)				•				•	•	•
Former Averett Student (not graduated; no transfer credit)								•		•
Veteran	• <sup>2</sup>		• <sup>1</sup>	• <sup>1</sup>					• <sup>1</sup>	•
Special Student (non-degree seeking)	•		• <sup>4</sup>	• <sup>4</sup>						•
IDEAL Beginning Freshman	•		•				• <sup>1</sup>			•
IDEAL Transfer Student	•			•					• <sup>1</sup>	•

<sup>1</sup>If applicable

<sup>2</sup>Contact Office of Registrar for other requirements

<sup>3</sup>Unless student has been out of high school for 5 or more years

<sup>4</sup>For advisement purposes (if applicable)

<sup>5</sup>TOEFL may be substituted for SAT or ACT for non-English speaking students

<sup>6</sup>Recommended but not required

For information about Traditional Undergraduate Admissions, contact the Director of Admissions (1-800-AVERETT). For information about admission to the Graduate and Professional Studies Program, contact GPS Enrollment Services at 1-800-849-0115 (Richmond area); 1-800-448-5233 (Southern Virginia area); or 1-888-757-1100 (Tidewater area). For information about admission to the IDEAL program, contact the IDEAL Director at 434-791-4949.

---

## ACADEMIC PROGRAMS AND REGULATIONS

---

### Degrees

#### Associate of Arts

A student may earn an Associate of Arts degree with a major in Liberal Arts by completing the core general education requirements and a minimum of 60 semester hours. A minimum of 15 semester hours must be taken at Averett. The general education requirements begin on page 19 of this catalog.

#### Bachelor of Applied Science

Averett University offers the Bachelor of Applied Science degree to those individuals who meet the following requirements:

1. Possess an Associate of Applied Science degree from a regionally accredited institution with a 2.0 grade point average on work counted toward the associate's degree.
2. Complete a minimum of 30 semester hours at Averett University, including a minor in a related field. Examples include:

<b>Associate of Applied Science Degree</b>	<b>Related Field</b>
Office Technology	Business or Computer Science
Printing Management	Business
Administration of Justice	Sociology

3. Complete all Averett requirements for the baccalaureate degree, including a minimum of 60 semester hours from a senior institution.

Note: Because of State licensure requirements, courses in the Department of Education may not be offered for the minor area.

#### Bachelor of Applied Science in Early Childhood Education

Under an articulation agreement with Danville Community College, Averett offers a Bachelor of Applied Science in Early Childhood Education. See page 105 for details about this degree option.

#### Bachelor of Arts, Bachelor of Science

Students may earn a Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree by completing the core general education requirements along with a major area of study. A minimum of 120 semester hours is required for graduation. Requirements for specific majors may be found in departmental descriptions beginning on page 47. The general education requirements begin on page 19. A complete list of the requirements for graduation may be found on page 25.

#### Bachelor of Business Administration, Master of Business Administration, Master of Education

See the catalog for the Graduate and Professional Studies (GPS) Program ([http://www.averett.edu/catalogs/active/GPS2011\\_2012v111.pdf](http://www.averett.edu/catalogs/active/GPS2011_2012v111.pdf)).

## GENERAL EDUCATION AND CORE CURRICULUM

### Goals of the General Education and Core Curriculum

The Averett University curriculum seeks to develop students as lifelong learners with the appropriate skills and knowledge to become creative and critical thinkers, effective communicators, and to serve and lead as catalysts for positive change.. Moreover, we encourage students to examine a variety of cultural expressions and values so that they may develop an appreciation of the contributions of others and acquire knowledge that may serve as a foundation for continuing development. We foster a spirit of discovery, problem solving and critical thinking, and incorporate liberal arts with professional preparation in our teaching and learning.

### General Education and Core Curriculum Requirements for a Baccalaureate Degree

General Education courses introduce a breadth of knowledge and reinforce cognitive skills and affective learning. The three required Core courses are designed to develop a common base of communications skills and to provide each student with at least one integrative application-based experience. The General education courses taken by a student must total a minimum of 30 credit hours.

#### 1. An Averett graduate can communicate effectively.

Students will demonstrate the ability to read with comprehension, and to write, and speak in a clear and engaging manner.

To meet these requirements, students will take courses in the following:

Required Core courses: ENG 111 and ENG 112	6 hours
(1A) Writing Competency	3 hours
(1B) Reading Competency	3 hours
(1C) Oral Competency	3 hours

#### 2. An Averett graduate can discuss his or her relationship to society and other individuals. (Social/Behavioral Sciences)

Students will demonstrate the ability to explain interactions among cultural (to include religions and languages), social, political, and/or economic systems, how these systems vary across societies and through time, and how human relationships work within these contexts.

To meet this requirement, students will take 9 semester hours from 3 areas (2A)-(2E):

- (2A) Religion or Philosophy
- (2B) Psychology or Sociology
- (2C) Western Civilization
- (2D) History, Political Science, Economics, Criminal Justice
- (2E) Culture or language
  - If you are a B.A. student, you must take a language, and it must be through the intermediate (202) level.
  - If you are a B.S. student, and choose to partially fulfill the Society requirement with a Language course, you must complete the 102 level.

**3. An Averett graduate can discuss works of creative art.  
(Humanities/Fine Arts)**

Students will demonstrate an ability to explain terms, texts, and movements in such fields as music, literature, theatre, and the visual arts. Courses that meet this requirement will provide students with the vocabulary of the discipline and appropriate methodologies for critical analysis through the study of the history of the discipline or participation in it.

To meet this requirement, a student will take 6 semester hours in the fine arts.

(3A) Fine Arts 6 hours

**4 An Averett graduate can apply scientific and mathematical reasoning.  
(Natural Sciences/Mathematics)**

Students will demonstrate the ability to address issues using a scientific approach and to use mathematical reasoning to solve problems.

The science must be a 4 hour lab science, and the mathematics must be MTH 103 or higher based on placement exam.

To meet this requirement, a student will take at least one course from each of the following areas:

(4A) Mathematics 3-6 hours

B.S. students must take two math courses.

(4B) Science 4 hours

**5 An Averett graduate can think critically and independently.**

Students will demonstrate the ability to identify appropriate questions or problems; locate and evaluate information; and analyze, synthesize, and apply the knowledge gained.

To meet this requirement, a student will take at least one General Education course from:

(5A) Critical Thinking 3 hours

Courses that meet this requirement will require students to analyze and evaluate information and form their own conclusions.

To meet this requirement, a student will take at least one Core course from:

(5B) Application 3 hours

Internship, Research Project, Community Project

This course must provide a substantial or extensive learning experience for the student.

## **Majors and Minors**

In order to graduate with a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree from Averett University, students must complete the core general education requirements and a major.

Five different approaches may be followed in developing a major area of study.

## **I. The traditional major with a minor:**

Such programs require a specified amount of work in a major area of study with an additional 18-21 semester hours in a minor concentration or in related fields. The requirements for a major area of study vary according to the department and are described under each academic department in the section on Degree Programs.

## **II. Combined majors:**

The University has designed several majors that cross traditional disciplinary lines. The requirements for such majors have been specified by the faculty and are described in the section on Degree Programs.

## **III. Liberal Studies major:**

Students whose career goal is to teach elementary school major in Liberal Studies. Once they are admitted to the Teacher Education Program, their major is changed to Liberal Studies with Teaching Licensure. If a student cannot meet the requirements for entry into the Teacher Education Program, s/he completes the liberal studies major requirements for the degree. (See pages 145).

## **IV. Interdisciplinary Studies major:**

The University has a structured interdisciplinary studies major consisting of three concentrations. Guidelines for developing the academic plan and policies governing the major may be found on pages 142.

## **V. Individually designed interdisciplinary majors:**

The faculty recognizes that some students have unique educational goals and interests which may not be best realized by means of traditional majors or the structured interdisciplinary programs. Such students are encouraged to propose a plan of study which will draw broadly upon the learning resources of the University. The plan must be approved by a faculty committee and the Vice President for Academic Affairs. The student may not have a double major with the individually designed interdisciplinary major. Inquiries regarding this option should be addressed to the Vice President for Academic Affairs.

## **Degrees, Majors, Minors and Teaching Licensure Fields**

### **Students may earn a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree in the following disciplines:**

Aerospace Management	Computer Science
Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice	
Athletic Training	Equestrian Studies
Biology	
	History/Politics
Business Administration	
	Liberal Studies (with or without Teaching Licensure)
Computer Information Systems	Mathematics

Mathematical Decision Science  
Physical Education

Political Science  
Psychology  
Sociology  
Sociology/Criminal Justice (4-year Program)

**Students MUST earn a Bachelor of Arts degree in the following disciplines:**

Art  
Communication Studies/Journalism

Theatre

English

English/History  
English/History (Pre-Law)  
English/Theatre  
History

Modern Language  
Music

Religion

**Students MUST earn a Bachelor of Science degree in the following disciplines:**

Athletic Training  
Sociology/Criminal Justice (2+2 program)

English with Teaching Licensure (6-12)  
Health and Physical Education with Teaching Licensure (PK-12)  
History/Social Science with Teaching Licensure (6-12)  
Liberal Studies (Elementary Education) with Teaching Licensure (PK-6)  
Mathematics with Teaching Licensure (6-12)  
Theatre Arts with Teaching Licensure (PK-12)  
Visual Arts with Teaching Licensure (PK-12)

**Teaching Licensure is available in the following disciplines:** Biology with Teaching Licensure (6-12)

**Add-on teaching endorsements are available in the following areas:**

Computer Science  
Driver Education

Journalism  
Speech Communication

**Academic minors are available in the following disciplines:**

Applied Behavior Analysis  
Art History  
Biology  
Business Administration  
Coaching  
Communication Studies  
Computer Information Systems  
Computer Science  
Criminal Justice  
Economics  
English  
Equestrian Studies

Equine Assisted Psychotherapy  
French  
History  
Journalism  
Leadership  
Mathematics  
Music  
Musical Theatre  
Physical Education  
Political Science  
Psychology  
Religion

Sociology  
Spanish  
Special Education  
Studio Art

Theatre  
Women's and Gender Studies

## **Minors**

In addition to a major concentration, each student may elect to have a minor area of concentration to complement the major. A minor is available in disciplines noted previously. A minor normally requires the completion of at least 18 semester hours, 9 hours of which must be at the 300 or 400 level, unless otherwise specified by the department. Specific requirements for minors in each discipline are indicated in the Degree Program section of this catalog. A student may not elect a minor from courses that have the same departmental prefix as the major, e.g., a student may not major in Art and minor in Art History. Transfer students must complete a minimum of 6 semester hours in the minor field at Averett. Students must attain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

## **Formal Declaration of Major and Minor**

Major - Each student is expected to file a declaration of major with the Registrar by the beginning of the junior year. Students who wish to change majors or add a second major must notify the Registrar. Any change in major may result in the delay of the date of graduation.

Some professional programs have special admissions requirements and procedures. The student should consult the section of this catalog that describes those programs and/or see the chairs of the specific departments.

Minor - Students who elect to have a minor area of concentration must file a declaration of minor with the Registrar. Minors should be declared before the start of the senior year and all requirements must be completed through regularly scheduled classes. A student may not elect a minor from courses which have the same departmental prefix as the major, e.g., a student may not major in BSA: Accounting and minor in Business Administration.

## **Interdisciplinary Studies Major**

A student may earn either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science Degree in Interdisciplinary Studies.

1. This major will be carefully planned by the student in conjunction with the Vice President for Academic Affairs and must be approved by an Interdisciplinary Studies committee comprised of three department chairs who represent, respectively, the three concentrations the student chooses. The student must make the argument for the interdisciplinary nature of the three areas. The committee will guide the student's academic program.
2. When the committee, the student and the Vice President for Academic Affairs have approved the courses to be included in the major, the Registrar's Office staff will prepare a degree plan.
3. The committee, the student and the Vice President for Academic Affairs must approve any changes to the degree plan.
4. The Vice President for Academic Affairs will serve as the student's advisor or may assign a faculty member from one of the concentrations to serve as the academic advisor.

**The following policies govern this degree program:**

1. The student will meet all general education requirements of the university and must declare this major before accumulating 75 semester hours credit. Transfer students may select this major after 75 hours credit but this may require more semesters than the typical degree completion of 120 credit hours.
2. The student must complete a minimum of 60 semester hours at a senior college, the last 30 of which must be taken at Averett.
3. The student must maintain a cumulative grade point average of 2.0 in the courses submitted for the degree plan.
4. The student must select three areas of concentration and must complete a minimum of 12 semester hours in each area, exclusive of general education courses, with a maximum of 18 semester hours accepted from any one area of concentration. The student may not take a major or minor in another field.
5. The student must complete a minimum of 12 semester hours at the 300-400 level in two of the concentrations and a minimum of 9 semester hours at the 300-400 level in the third concentration. If a student selects French or Spanish as a concentration, 12 semester hours beyond the 202 level are required. A minimum of 6 credit hours in each concentration must be completed at Averett.
6. The student must elect the Bachelor of Arts degree if two of the three areas are selected from Art, English, French, History, Journalism, Music, Religion, Spanish, or Theater. The student may not choose Education as one of the areas.
7. If two of the three areas are selected from Biological and Physical Sciences, Business Administration, Computer Information Systems, Computer Science, Equestrian Studies, Mathematics, Physical Education, Wellness and Sport Science, Psychology, or Sociology/Criminal Justice, the student may elect either the Bachelor of Science or the Bachelor of Arts degree. Students who complete the requisite number of hours in foreign language study are eligible for the BA degree but must have prior permission from the Interdisciplinary Studies Committee to do so. The student may not choose Education as one of the areas.
8. With the guidance of and topic approval by the advisor and the committee, the student will prepare and present in written and oral form a senior capstone project that explores in depth some common aspect of the three concentrations. The oral presentation will be open to the campus community. This capstone project will carry 2 semester hours of credit. With the approval of the student's committee, the Honors Program senior project may be considered as the capstone course.

Students who choose this major late in their academic careers should be aware that alternate year course rotations and pre-requisites for upper-level courses will probably require additional semesters for degree completion.

A student who has declared an Interdisciplinary Studies major, and who subsequently elects to change to a major in a specific discipline, must satisfy all of the departmental requirements for that major.

### **Liberal Studies (With or Without Teaching Licensure)**

All candidates desiring teaching licensure in Elementary (PK-6) Education must complete requirements for the Liberal Studies degree as outlined on pages 145-158 of this catalog.

### **Pre-Professional Studies**

Averett provides pre-professional preparation for students planning to enter schools of dentistry, law, medicine, pharmacy, physical therapy, theology, or veterinary medicine. Although the University does not offer these pre-professional preparations as majors (with the exception of English/History [Pre-Law]), students are assigned an academic advisor who is cognizant of the appropriate courses for entrance into one of the

professional schools. The student who anticipates attending a professional school, however, should consult the catalog of the preferred professional school in selecting courses at Averett University.

### **Honors Program**

The Honors Program, operating within the liberal arts philosophy of the University, enhances the academic life of the institution, creates a scholarly ethos, provides an academic challenge, and recognizes students' needs to express creativity, to develop one's humanity, and to see the world from different vantage points.

The Honors Program is described in detail on page 137.

### **International Study Opportunities**

Averett University encourages students to gain learning experiences that only can be obtained by an extended period of time in another country or culture. In addition to occasional travel courses conducted by Averett faculty, the instructors in the Modern Languages Department can assist the student in selecting programs in countries where French and Spanish are spoken. Semester or year abroad programs are also available through cooperative arrangements with other institutions and Averett affiliates. For information about any study abroad programs, contact the Director of Study Abroad.

## Requirements for Graduation

The basic requirements for an undergraduate degree from Averett University are a minimum of 120 semester hours of credit (60 semester hours of credit for the associate degree) with at least a 2.0 grade point average on all work attempted as well as on courses offered to complete the major. Other specific requirements are listed below:

1. Students must satisfactorily complete all Core General Education requirements.
2. Students must achieve satisfactory completion of a specified major area of study with the corresponding GPA required by that major.
3. The last 30 semester hours of academic work prior to graduation must be taken at Averett University.
4. Transfer students must complete a minimum of 60 semester hours at a senior college or university, at least 30 of which must be from Averett University.
5. Transfer students must satisfactorily complete a minimum of 12 semester hours in the major field at Averett University. Individual programs may have higher semester-hour requirements.
6. Students who are first admitted to Averett University as special students must earn a minimum of 30 semester hours of credit after obtaining degree-seeking status. (See the section on Special Students on page 14 of this catalog.)
7. Students must file an application for graduation with the Registrar's Office by the designated date in the semester in which graduation is planned. See the university calendar for the exact dates. Appropriate forms are available in the Registrar's Office or online at <http://www.averett.edu/registrar/graduation-applications.html>.
8. Students must have completed all requirements for graduation in order to participate in commencement exercises.
9. Students must have met all financial obligations to the University in order to participate in graduation. All tuition, fees, fines, bookstore charges, and other bills must be paid in full prior to participating in graduation.

In addition to the requirements listed above, students must complete any required departmental exit examination. Students should consult with the individual department for details. These items must be completed before a student's graduation application can be processed.

It is the student's responsibility to be familiar with and to fulfill all requirements for graduation.

A student may choose to graduate under the requirements of any Averett University catalog in effect from the date of the student's entrance through the year of the student's graduation, providing enrollment for fall and spring terms has not been interrupted.

If continuous enrollment in the University has been interrupted for one or more semesters, the student must graduate under the catalog that is current upon his/her readmission.

If degree requirements are changed so that a once-required course is no longer offered, the department or University may substitute a comparable course requirement.

## Second Baccalaureate Degree

The student who has a baccalaureate degree from Averett University or another accredited institution of higher education may receive a second baccalaureate degree upon the successful completion of an additional minimum of 30 semester hours of work at Averett University. Specific course requirements for the major field for the second degree must be satisfied. The student will be considered to have completed the General Education requirements of Averett University by possessing a baccalaureate degree. However, if the first degree was a Bachelor of Science and the second degree is to be a Bachelor of Arts, the student must have completed the intermediate level of a modern foreign language. Similarly, if the first degree was a Bachelor of Arts and the second degree is to be a Bachelor of Science, the student must have completed at least 6 semester hours of mathematics and at least one lab science (4 hours).

The student may add a second major to his/her degree after graduating provided the second major is completed within one calendar year following the awarding of the diploma. The student must declare intent to complete the second major prior to the final semester of coursework for the first major.

---

## STUDENT SUCCESS AND RESEARCH SERVICES

---

### **The Office of Student Success**

111 Galesi Family Student Success Center  
Teresa Lawrence /tlawrence / 434-791-5754

- enhances student academic performance,
- helps increase student satisfaction with scholarly and co-curricular experiences,
- assists students as they persist through their college careers,
- works to increase Averett's retention and graduation rates.

### **Academic Support**

113 Galesi Family Student Success Center  
Karen Duhamel //  
434-791-5788

- assists students with general learning skills, including study skills, time management, and research,
- provides tutoring assistance for most of Averett's academic classes,
- aids students in learning subjects and in completing special projects,
- coordinates accommodations for students with special needs.

### **Honors Students**

Danville Hall 104B

Dr. Andrew Canady / [acanady@averett.edu](mailto:acanady@averett.edu) provides in-depth exploration into many areas of academics,

- offers opportunities for international travel and conferences,
- provides social activities and cultural performances.

### **Study Abroad Office**

Frith

Dr. Catherine Clark / [coclark@averett.edu](mailto:coclark@averett.edu)

- makes study abroad possible for Averett students,
- assists students with preparation for studying in another country,
- helps students with the application, financial aid packages, and other materials, as needed.

### **Writing Support**

114 Galesi Family Student Success Center  
Carianna Beck / 434-791-5761

- provides one-on-one writing support with trained consultants,
- aids in making composition more vibrant, clear, and effective,
- assists in all stages of the writing process from generating ideas, proofreading, to production of the final draft.

## Mary B. Blount Library

The Mary B. Blount Library advances the curriculum, research, and reading interests of Averett students with scholarly and professional sources, reference consultations and instruction. The library is located at 344 West Main Street, next to the Averett University Admissions Office. The library building is open seven days a week during the fall and spring semesters. During summer sessions and semester breaks it is open every day except Saturday. Averett students can access the library's electronic resources and ask questions at any time, from any location on the Internet: <http://www.discover.averett.edu/library>.

The library enables students to discover and retrieve information from multiple sources, including research reports, primary sources and holdings of other libraries. Averett collections include 100,000 print and 100,000 electronic books, more than 30,000 electronic and print journals, 100 research databases, media, and media equipment. Students have access to group and quiet study areas, a computer classroom and lab, self-service digital scanner, printers, and color print and fax services.

Library faculty encourage Averett students to develop information fluency skills, which are the ability to:

- define and articulate a topic or problem,
- locate and retrieve credible information from a variety of sources,
- evaluate this literature or data in the context of the topic,
- modify research strategy to seek additional sources,
- organize, synthesize and use knowledge gained to accomplish a specific purpose, and
- communicate results effectively and ethically in an academic or professional setting.

Librarians offer orientation and research classes throughout the year. Students consult with librarians at the reference desk, toll free at 800-543-9440, locally at 791-5692, by e-mail at [aclib@averett.edu](mailto:aclib@averett.edu), and by FAX at 434-791-5637.

---

## ACADEMIC STANDARDS AND INTEGRITY

---

### Class Attendance

Regular class attendance is an obligation implicit in the agreement between the students who apply for admission and the college which admits them. Anyone enrolled in a course is responsible for the work done in all class meetings. **Therefore, the University expects students to attend all class meetings of the courses for which they are enrolled. A student who is absent for 25% of the total time allocated for classes and/or labs may be administratively withdrawn. Students who expect to be absent for a week or more must notify the Office of Student Success in advance. Any student who misses 25% of the total time allocated for classes and/or labs may be in danger of losing his/her Title IV funds. For more information, see the section on Satisfactory Academic Progress Policy for Financial Aid Eligibility.**

No right or privilege exists which justifies absence from any number of class meetings. There is no official distinction between an excused and unexcused absence. It is the student's responsibility to notify his/her instructors if he/she will be absent from a class because of an official university representation, such as concerts, intercollegiate athletic events, equestrian events, or field trips. This notification is to inform only and is not an excuse for the absence. The student is responsible for the work done in the class meetings that are missed because of events stated above. The student should determine with each instructor whether that absence will affect the grade in that course.

Specific attendance requirements for each course are included in the syllabus provided by the instructor of the course. Both the student and the instructor are expected to be concerned and responsible in the matter of class attendance and to keep records of any necessary absences. When absences endanger a student's academic standing or indicate serious lack of commitment to the work of the course, appropriate action should be taken to remedy the situation.

If a student does not attend the first two class meetings at the beginning of the semester, the instructor may notify the Registrar's Office to drop the student from the course in order to allow students on a waiting list to add the course. Once a student has attended a class, failure to continue to attend class does not constitute a withdrawal from the course. The procedures for withdrawal from a course are found on page 36 in this catalog. **Students who stop attending classes without formally withdrawing from the course will receive a grade of F for the semester.**

### The Honor Code

One mark of an educated individual is personal integrity. The members of the Averett University community are committed to a code of behavior which may be found in the Student Handbook. A student is thus pledged to academic honesty. As academic honesty is considered to be the foundation of the educational enterprise, any form of cheating or plagiarism is considered to be an affront to the entire University community and may result in suspension from the University. Students should carefully study the honor code, and should be especially familiar with the definitions of cheating and plagiarism.

Cheating includes the following behaviors:

- copying another student's answers while completing any class assignment or during in-class and take-home examinations;
- using notes, books or any unauthorized aids during an examination;
- discussing answers during in-class examinations;
- submitting another student's work as one's own;
- stealing another student's work.

Plagiarism - Submitting a paper in which the language, ideas, or thoughts are identical to published or unpublished material from another source without correctly giving credit to that source.

## REPORTING ACADEMIC VIOLATIONS

A faculty member who suspects a student of violating a university rule or regulation that is academically related should confront the student with the suspicion. The faculty member may follow one of two courses of action:

1. The faculty member may choose to deal with the situation personally.
  - Determine if the student is guilty of the violation.
  - Discuss the incident with the department chair.
  - Assign an appropriate penalty (this may range from a repetition of the work in question, to failure of the work, to failure of the course).
  - Report the action taken to the Vice President of Academic Affairs (VPAA) within five business days.
  - Report of action will be placed in a sealed envelope in the student's file in the Registrar's Office with a copy in the VPAA's office.
  - The VPAA will notify the student in writing of the reported violation and that a second offense will result in the student being suspended from Averett University.
  - If the offense is that of plagiarism, traditional students will be required to meet in person with the Director of Student Success and complete a module on plagiarism to ensure he/she fully understands the violation. GPS students will be required to meet in person or virtually with the Director of Student Success.
  - Upon graduation, the violation will be purged from the file.

In the event the student challenges the faculty member's decision, the student must register his/her challenge with the Vice President for Academic Affairs within two business days. The VPAA will submit the challenge to the Academic Policies Council (APC) to review the purported violation, faculty member action, and develop an appropriate response to the student and faculty member. The decision of the Academic Policies Council is final and will be communicated by the VPAA.

2. If the faculty member chooses not to deal with the situation personally, he/she should report the incident to the department chair and Vice President for Academic Affairs who will convene the Academic Policies Council in person or virtually.
  - The APC will determine if the student is in violation of the Honor Code; and, if so, after collaborating with the faculty member, assign an appropriate penalty (this may range from a repetition of the work in question to failure of the work, to failure of the course).
  - The report of the academic violation will be placed in a sealed envelope in the student's file in the Registrar's Office with a copy in the VPAA's office.
  - The VPAA will notify the student in writing of the reported violation and that a second offense will result in the student being suspended from Averett University.
  - If the offense is that of plagiarism, traditional students will be required to meet in person with the Director of Student Success and complete a module on plagiarism to ensure he/she fully understands the violation. GPS student will be required to meet in person or virtually with the Director of Student Success.
  - Upon graduation, the violation will be purged from the file.
  - The decision of the Academic Policies Council is final and will be communicated by the VPAA.

Students who wish to report another student for an Honor Code violation should speak with the faculty member if a specific course or faculty member is known; otherwise, the report should be made to the VPAA. The VPAA will then make a referral to the Academic Policies Council, which will investigate and determine the proper course of action. The action of the Academic Policies Council will be final and communicated by the VPAA

If a student fails a class because of cheating, the student cannot repeat the class online or as an independent study.

## Evaluation of Academic Work

Academic work is evaluated and grades are assigned at the end of each academic term in order to indicate a student's level of performance. Grades are assigned by the faculty member responsible for each course.

A student earns quality points as well as semester hours if the grade in a course is not less than "D." The letter grades awarded by Averett, their interpretations, and the quality points per hour of credit are shown in the following table.

<u>Letter Grade</u>	<u>Interpretation</u>	<u>Quality Points</u>
A	Excellent Work	4
B	Good/Above Average Work	3
C	Average/Satisfactory Work	2
D	Passing/Below Average Work	1
F	Failure/Unsatisfactory Work	0
I	Incomplete	-
P	Pass (not counted in cumulative average)	-
@R	Course must be repeated	-
W	Withdrawal (extenuating circumstances)	-
*WP	Withdrawal Passing	-
*WF	Withdrawal Failing (counted in cumulative average)	0
NC	No credit or Audit	-
NP	Not Passing (not counted in cumulative average)	-
@A, @B, or @C	Passing grade for MTH100	-

\*To receive a withdrawal grade (WP or WF), the student must officially withdraw from the University or from the course. Courses with the grade WP are not calculated as hours attempted and do not affect the cumulative grade point average. Courses for which the grade WF is recorded are included in hours attempted and receive no quality points; thus, they affect the GPA in the same manner as a grade of F. See page 39 of this catalog for information concerning withdrawing from a course.

The grade of Incomplete (I) may be given to a student who is unable to complete scheduled course requirements. It is a privilege that may be granted by the instructor under extraordinary circumstances and may be awarded only when the student has completed a significant portion of the coursework and has made specific arrangements with the instructor for the completion of the work. If the student has not completed the coursework by the end of the agreed upon time period, the grade will be changed to an F. The maximum amount of time that the instructor may allow for completion is until the last day of classes the following semester. Emergency extensions may be considered with the approval of the faculty member and the Vice President for Academic Affairs.

The grade point average (GPA) of a student's academic work is determined by means of quality points. The grade point average is calculated by dividing the total number of quality points earned by the total number of GPA credit hours. (GPA credits are attempted credits exclusive of those for which a grade of P or WP is recorded.)

## **Grade Appeal**

In the absence of compelling reasons, such as error or bad faith, the grade determined by the instructor of record is to be considered final. A student who believes an appropriate grade has not been assigned should follow the procedures described below to appeal the grade.

Discuss the matter with the instructor involved.

If the student does not receive satisfaction in dealing with the instructor or feels too uncomfortable in dealing with the instructor directly, he/she should discuss the issue with the department chair.

If, after consulting with the chair, the student still feels that he/she has been dealt with unsatisfactorily or inequitably, he/she may submit a written appeal to the Vice President for Academic Affairs. The written appeal must be submitted no later than 30 days into the semester following the receipt of the grade in question. Grade appeals from the spring or summer terms must be initiated by 30 days into the fall semester.

At his/her discretion, the Vice President for Academic Affairs may establish a review committee to study the issue and make recommendations for action, or the Vice President for Academic Affairs may rule on the issue without such advice.

If the Vice President for Academic Affairs decides to rule on the issue without benefit of committee, the investigation and resolution shall take place within 30 days after the written complaint has been received. The student will be notified of the Vice President for Academic Affairs' decision in writing.

If the Vice President for Academic Affairs decides to establish a review committee, he/she shall appoint three faculty members who have not taught the student and who are not members of the same department as the faculty member who issued the grade in question. The committee will investigate the matter and notify the student in writing of the decision within 30 days after the complaint is forwarded to the committee.

The student, instructor, department chairperson, and committee (if appropriate) shall be instructed that all information and procedures regarding the investigation of the appeal shall be kept confidential.

The written appeal by the student and all information regarding the investigation and resolution of the appeal shall be maintained in the Office of the Vice President for Academic Affairs for five years following the incident.

This procedure will be followed for grade appeals initiated by both undergraduate and graduate students. The Associate Vice President of Graduate and Professional Studies will handle appeals requested by students in the Graduate and Professional Studies Program.

## **Academic Honors**

In an effort to reinforce its commitment to the intellectual development of students, Averett recognizes those students whose academic performance has been outstanding. These recognitions are described below.

### **Honors Lists**

At the conclusion of each regular semester, the University recognizes students who have demonstrated academic excellence by publishing their names on one of two honor rolls. To be included on one of the honor rolls a student must have completed at least 12 semester hours of coursework for which quality points are awarded and have achieved at least the minimum grade point average listed below:

President's List	4.0
Dean's List	3.4

## **Honors at Graduation**

To be eligible for Latin honors at graduation, a student must have completed at least 30 semester hours at Averett for which quality points are earned and have the appropriate cumulative grade point average on work taken at Averett. In addition, all prior academic work of students transferring from another institution will be considered in computing the final grade point average, but no overall average may exceed the one earned by a student at Averett.

Below are the minimum cumulative grade point averages which must be earned for Latin honors.

*Summa cum laude* - a grade point average of 3.8

*Magna cum laude* - a grade point average of 3.6

*Cum laude* - a grade point average of 3.4

## **Honor Societies**

### **I. Alpha Chi**

Alpha Chi is a national coeducational society whose purpose is to produce academic excellence and exemplary character among college students and to honor those achieving such distinction. The Virginia Beta Chapter of Alpha Chi was established at Averett in the spring of 1973. The chapter seeks to stimulate a spirit of sound scholarship and devotion to truth in an atmosphere free of intellectual narrowness and personal discrimination. The faculty elects to membership junior and senior candidates of good character who meet the following qualifications:

1. Students must have completed at least 30 semester hours of academic work at Averett University.
2. Juniors must have attained a cumulative grade point average of 3.50 and be in the top 5 percent of their class.
3. Seniors must have attained a cumulative grade point average of 3.40 and be in the top 10 percent of their class.

The total combined grade point average is considered (grade point average at Averett University combined with the grade point average on all previous college work); however, the total combined grade point average may not be above the grade point average earned at Averett University.

### **II. Alpha Kappa Delta**

Alpha Kappa Delta is an international honor society based on superior academic achievement in sociology. Membership is by invitation. The purpose of the society is to promote an interest in the study of sociology, in research of social problems and in other intellectual activities that will lead to improvement of the human condition.

### **III. Alpha Psi Omega**

Alpha Psi Omega is a national college dramatic fraternity, in which membership is granted to advanced students in speech and dramatics.

### **IV. Beta Beta Beta**

Beta Beta Beta is an honor society for students who have superior academic achievement in biology. The society aims to cultivate a keen interest in the natural sciences, to stimulate an appreciation for biological research, and to promote scholarship. Membership is by invitation.

### **V. Kappa Delta Pi**

Kappa Delta Pi is an International honor society for students involved in the field of education. Selection for membership is based on outstanding performance both in and out of the classroom. It is designed to recognize accomplishments and provide professional growth for its members.

## VI. Lambda Pi Eta

Lambda Pi Eta is a national communication studies/journalism honor society. Its purpose is to recognize outstanding scholastic achievement in the field of communication, to stimulate interest in the field, to promote and encourage professional development among communication majors and to provide an opportunity to discuss and exchange ideas in the field of communication.

## VII. Sigma Beta Delta

Sigma Beta Delta is an international honor society for students of business, administration or management. It is open to undergraduate and graduate students, both traditional and non-traditional. Students are invited to join if they fall within the top 20% of their graduating class. There is a lifetime membership fee of \$50, which the student pays. Students who accept the invitation to join are given a SBD certificate, lapel pin and honor cord. These items are given to the students at the induction ceremony, held twice a year.

## Academic Warning, Probation and Suspension

In order to meet degree requirements, a student must attain a grade point average of 2.0 or C average. The grade point average is determined by dividing the total quality points earned at Averett University by the number of GPA credits. The University maintains a graded policy on academic probation in order to indicate to students at different levels of their work that, unless significant improvement occurs, they will not be able to satisfy graduation requirements. The college determines a student's academic standing as indicated in the following table.

### Minimum Standards for Continuance

<b>Attempted Hours or Total Hours* (whichever is higher)</b>	<b>Academic Warning</b>	<b>Academic Probation</b>	<b>Considered for Academic Suspension</b>
<b>0 – 15</b>	<b>1.60 – 1.99</b>	<b>1.00 – 1.59</b>	<b>Less than 1.00</b>
<b>16 – 30</b>	<b>1.80 – 1.99</b>	<b>1.40 – 1.79</b>	<b>Less than 1.40</b>
<b>31 – 59</b>	<b>1.90 – 1.99</b>	<b>1.60 – 1.89</b>	<b>Less than 1.60</b>
<b>60 – 120+</b>	<b>--</b>	<b>--</b>	<b>Less than 2.00</b>

\*Includes hours transferred to Averett University

Students placed on academic warning, probation, and suspension should realize that their financial aid and scholarships may be in jeopardy.

Students who are placed on warning, probation, or considered for suspension will be placed on an academic success contract, and the student must make an appointment with the Dean of Student Success in the Student Success Center at that time.

Together the dean and the student will develop the academic success contract, which may entail setting up a semester-long tutoring schedule in Writing Support and/or Academic Support offices. The contract will entail the student meeting with the dean on a regular basis. Further, students will be monitored on their class attendance and achievement. Information on the student will be kept through the semester for review and consideration by Averett University's Academic Policies Committee.

Students may contact the Dean of Student Success at 434-791-5754, or by e-mail: [tlawrence@averett.edu](mailto:tlawrence@averett.edu). The Office of Student Success is located in the Student Success Center. More information about the Office of Student Success may be found on page 27.

### Academic Warning

Any student whose cumulative grade point average at the end of any given semester falls within the stipulated range will receive a letter from the Vice President for Academic Affairs regarding Academic Warning. Academic Warning means that the student's grade point average is below 2.0, but the deficiency is not severe enough to warrant Academic Probation. A notation is not placed on the student's permanent record for Academic Warning.

**Students placed on Academic Warning must contact the Dean of Student Success as noted above.**

### **Academic Probation**

Any student whose cumulative grade point average at the end of any given semester falls within the stipulated range will be placed on Academic Probation and will receive a letter from the Vice President for Academic Affairs. A notation stating Academic Probation will be placed on the student's permanent record.

Any student on academic probation may enroll in no more than 14 semester hours in a regular semester (fall and spring) and may be required to participate in an academic intervention program. Students on Academic Probation may not participate in intercollegiate athletics, which includes regular season practice and games, off season practice and games, off season conditioning, or any organized activities associated with the intercollegiate sport. Student athletes on probation may not serve as managers or in any other volunteer capacity with the team. Students on academic probation may not participate in intramurals, drama productions, in any capacity, or serve as an officer in university-recognized student organizations. Only those events which are components of credit courses or which are requirements for majors as noted in the catalog may be exempt.

**Students placed on Academic Probation must contact the Dean of Student Success as noted above.**

### **Considered for Academic Suspension**

A student who fails to meet the minimum standards for continuance will be considered for Academic Suspension by the Academic Policies Council. If the Council imposes suspension, the Vice President for Academic Affairs will notify the student of the decision. A notation will appear on the student's permanent record.

Any student who is considered for academic suspension but is continued is governed by the same requirements and/or restrictions described under Academic Probation.

A student who earns at least a 2.30 semester grade point average after completing all attempted coursework for which he or she is registered at the end of the semester shall not be subject to suspension.

**Students placed on Considered for Suspension must contact the Dean of Student Success as noted above.**

### **Suspension**

Ordinarily, decisions regarding academic suspension are made by the Academic Policies Council at the end of the fall and spring semesters. Suspension begins immediately upon the vote of the Council. Students who received an Incomplete in one or more courses may finish the work, but the outcome of that work will not affect their suspension. Students who have been suspended may not take courses at Averett for at least one regular semester and one summer. Therefore, a student suspended at the end of the fall semester may not be considered for readmission until the following fall semester; a student suspended at the end of the spring semester may not be considered for readmission until the following spring. Averett will consider accepting credits from another regionally accredited higher education institution during the period of academic suspension if the student earns a 2.5 GPA or higher in the coursework. The existing Readmission of Students on Suspension policy will apply, and official transcripts from courses taken should be submitted with the request for readmission.

### **Probation and Suspension Policy for Transfer Students**

Probation and suspension standards for transfer students will be based upon the sum of their transfer credits plus the hours attempted at Averett. The grade point average is based only on credit hours attempted and quality points earned at Averett University. **Coursework completed at another college may not be used to improve the grade point average at Averett.**

### **Readmission of Students on Academic Suspension**

After one semester of suspension, a student may apply to the University for readmission. This request should be made in writing to the Academic Policies Council in care of the Vice President for Academic Affairs and should include a rationale for being considered for readmission. This letter should reach the University at least six weeks prior to the date sought for readmission. Before making a final decision, the Council may request a personal interview with the student. It should be noted that readmission is neither automatic nor certain. If the student is granted readmission, he/she will be governed by the regulations and degree requirements of the catalog that are current at the time of readmission. If a student is suspended for a second time for academic reasons, he/she will be academically ineligible to return to Averett.

### **Academic Renewal**

Academic renewal is the concept that a student may be relieved from some of the effects of past academic failures. The renewal process is designed to allow the individual to renew confidence and hope regarding his or her academic performance. Averett University offers two areas of academic renewal.

1. **Course Repeat Option:** A student may repeat a maximum of five courses, substituting the new grade and canceling the previous hours attempted. The student must accept the grade on the repeated course even if the grade is lower than the prior grade. After repeating five courses, no other course may be repeated unless the student earned a grade of F in a course required for his or her degree. In that case, the course may be repeated, but the previous grade and hours attempted will not be cancelled. Courses from other institutions will not be counted as repeats for courses at Averett.
2. **Academic Forgiveness:** A student may apply to the Academic Policies Council to have the entire post-secondary record forgiven (or the record prior to an agreed upon date). The record of such courses remains a part of the student's transcript whether courses were taken at Averett University or at another institution. However, the current Averett permanent record will carry the notation that prior courses have been forgiven. Courses completed during the period of time for which forgiveness is granted (regardless of grade) may not be used to fulfill any academic requirements nor will they be computed in the student's grade point average for graduation or for consideration for honors. **The following guidelines govern the academic forgiveness policy:**
  - a. Five years must have elapsed since the most recent work to be disregarded was completed;
  - b. The student must apply in writing for forgiveness stating the point in the prior record beyond which forgiveness is sought;
  - c. An application will not be considered until a student has completed the equivalent of one semester of coursework at Averett University with a 2.5 GPA on a cumulative total of at least twelve semester hours of credit;
  - d. A student must have selected a major and should submit a letter of support from the chair of the major department;
  - e. The student's transcript will indicate that the student has been granted academic forgiveness for all academic work undertaken prior to the effective time for forgiveness;
  - f. The student will be allowed only one academic forgiveness. Should a student who has been granted academic forgiveness reach the point of requiring consideration for suspension, the student shall be suspended and it shall be a final suspension;
  - g. The student will be allowed to use Course Repeat Options to improve the GPA;
  - h. All regular academic requirements must be met by the student for graduation.

### **Withdrawal and Leave of Absence**

## **Withdrawal**

Students may be administratively withdrawn from the university in accordance with the Class Attendance policy found on page 29.

Students may request to withdraw from the University at any time during the semester. Students withdrawing from Averett University must first meet with the Dean of Student's to fill out a withdrawal survey and obtain a withdrawal application form.

Students may contact the Dean of Student's at 434-791-, or by e-mail at [lvillarose@averett.edu](mailto:lvillarose@averett.edu) [mvanderl@averett.edu](mailto:mvanderl@averett.edu). The Dean of Student's Office is located in the Student Center.

Students withdrawing during the semester with no documented extenuating circumstances will have grades of WP or WF posted to their records based on grades assigned by the faculty. In addition, faculty will verify the student's last date of class attendance, and it will be recorded in the Registrar's Office.

Students withdrawing during the semester for documented medical reasons may have grades of W posted to their records. The Vice President for Academic Affairs will review and verify submitted documentation to determine if a medical withdrawal is warranted. The student's last date of class attendance will be verified and recorded by the Registrar's Office. Students withdrawing due to extenuating circumstances (e.g., documented medical reasons) may request to remain under the catalog requirements in effect when they first entered Averett. All other students must complete requirements in the catalog that is current when they re-enter Averett.

**All students returning after a withdrawal must complete an application for readmission through the Admissions Office.**

## **Leave of Absence**

Students may apply for a leave of absence through the office of the Dean of Student's. The following guidelines govern a leave of absence:

1. A leave of absence may only be granted before the beginning of the semester;
2. A leave of absence may be granted for up to one calendar year;
3. A leave of absence is for a complete semester, meaning that a student cannot be granted a leave for a specified semester and then return to take classes within that semester;
4. A leave of absence will not be granted to students suspended, being considered for suspension, or on probation;
5. A student who has been approved for a leave of absence may remain under the catalog requirements in effect when they first entered Averett;

**All students returning after a leave of absence must complete an application for readmission through the Admissions Office.**

## **Readmission Process after Withdrawal or Leave of Absence**

All students who have withdrawn or been granted a leave of absence must complete an application for readmission through the Admissions Office. Students who left in good standing, or with an academic status of "warning" *may* be automatically readmitted and allowed to register for classes.

Students whose academic status was “probation,” “considered for suspension,” or “suspension” will have their application submitted to the Academic Policies Council for review. The Council will make a readmission decision before students are allowed to register for classes.

---

# GENERAL REGULATIONS

---

## Classification of Students

Students at Averett University are classified academically as freshmen, sophomores, juniors, and seniors, based on the number of semester hours earned (see table). They also are classified as full-time or part-time. Full-time students are those who are registered for at least 12 hours in a regular semester or 6 hours in a summer session. Students also are classified as either degree-seeking or special students.

<b>Academic Classification</b>	<b>Semester Hours Earned</b>
Freshmen	0 – 29
Sophomore	30 – 59
Junior	60 – 89
Senior	90 or more

## Transfer Credit

### Transfer Students

Students who wish to transfer to Averett from another college must have transcripts of all previous college work sent to the Averett University Admissions Office. In order to receive transfer credit for courses completed before matriculating at Averett, a final, official transcript should be received by the end of the first semester of enrollment at Averett. Courses will not be transferred to Averett University while a student is on academic suspension at a previous college.

Students may not enroll at Averett University during the term(s) in which they are on academic suspension at another college.

Averett University will transfer courses for which a grade of C or higher was received, provided such courses are applicable to the Averett University curriculum and the other college is accredited by a regional accrediting agency. For those students who have earned the associate's degree, Averett will accept in transfer all courses which were credited by the transferring institution toward the student's degree.

The one exception to this policy is that Averett does not transfer grades of D in College Composition I or II (or their equivalents). Any student who holds an associate's degree with a D in College Composition I and/or II (or their equivalents) must take ENG 111 and/or ENG 112 at Averett.

Students who transfer from a two-year college must earn 60 hours at a four-year college in order to receive a baccalaureate degree. Thus, if a student transfers 60 hours to Averett from a two-year college, he/she must complete the remainder of his/her work at a four-year college.

Transfer courses in the student's intended major are subject to the approval of the department. If the transfer student selects a minor, he/she must complete a minimum of 6 semester hours in the minor field at Averett.

A student's grade point average for graduation requirements is based only on work taken at Averett University. When computing grade point averages for determination of honors for graduation or membership in Alpha Chi, grades on all college work are included.

### **Transfer of Credit from Other Institutions (after enrolling at Averett)**

After matriculation at Averett, all students who wish to receive credit for courses taken at another accredited institution must have written approval granted **in advance** by the Registrar. The written approval must be in the student's file in the Registrar's Office before credit will be given for those courses. Students must earn a grade of C or better in order to receive transfer credit for any course taken at another institution. Grades on courses taken at another institution will not be calculated into the student's grade point average at Averett. Thus, a course taken elsewhere will neither raise nor lower the student's grade point average. **Transfer credit may not be used to replace any grade previously earned at Averett.**

When the student has earned 90 hours, approval for work to be transferred from another institution will not be granted except in extenuating circumstances. The last 30 hours must be taken at Averett.

### **Academic Advising**

Upon acceptance to Averett, a student is assigned an academic advisor by the Registrar. If he or she has decided upon a major, a member of the faculty of that department will advise the student. If she or he has not decided upon a major, an advisor will be assigned who can provide general academic guidance.

The primary role of the academic advisor is to **guide and assist** the student in planning the program of study in order to meet requirements for graduation. Before registering for classes each semester, the student must make an appointment with his/her advisor to plan the class schedule. **Nevertheless, it is the student's responsibility to be familiar with and to fulfill all requirements for graduation.**

### **Registration**

Registration for classes is held several times during the year. The exact dates and deadlines are published on the Averett University website. Students are responsible for knowing and adhering to the published dates and deadlines. A student will not be permitted to register for a term after the add/drop period has ended.

### **Adding a Course**

Following registration a student may add courses until the date posted on the website. The student's academic advisor must approve the student's registration in PowerCampus Self-Service before it becomes part of his/her schedule. Students may add classes through PowerCampus Self-Service.

### **Withdrawing From a Course**

Following registration, a student may drop a course during the add/drop period for fall or spring semester without a tuition penalty. Students may drop classes through PowerCampus Self-Service. The student's academic advisor must approve the student's registration in PowerCampus Self-Service before it is removed from his/her schedule. Following the Add/Drop date, the student will lose a percentage of tuition as outlined on page 227 of this catalog.

If a student drops a course during the drop/add period (the first week of the fall or spring semester or the first day of a summer session), the course will not appear on the student's permanent record. After the drop/add period, a student may withdraw from a class until the last day of classes. If a student withdraws after the drop/add period, but within the first four weeks of the semester (first week in a summer session), the student will receive a grade of W. After the first four weeks, the instructor will assign a grade of WP if the student is passing the course (which will not affect the GPA), or WF if the student is failing the course. A WF will be averaged into the GPA as an F. The academic advisor will be notified of this action. If extenuating circumstances exist that necessitate a student's withdrawal from the University, the withdrawal must be initiated with the Dean of Student 's.

A student who stops attending class and does not officially withdraw from the course according to the guidelines described above will receive a grade of F in the course. Students are responsible for making sure the appropriate paperwork is turned in to the Registrar's Office.

### **Pass/Fail Option**

Any student may take as many as five courses on a Pass/Fail basis. These courses must be used as free electives. Courses used to satisfy the requirements for General Education, teaching licensure, the major, or the minor may not be taken on a Pass/Fail basis. A student who elects to take a course Pass/Fail must indicate that choice in the Registrar's Office no later than the end of the first week of classes in the fall or spring semester and no later than the third day of a summer session. A student may not revoke the Pass/Fail option after the above-named deadlines.

In computation of grade point averages, courses taken on Pass/Fail are disregarded so that one's grade point average cannot be affected by the mark received on these courses.

### **Course Load**

The normal academic load in the fall or spring semester is 15 to 18 semester hours. A student must enroll for at least 12 semester hours to qualify as a full-time student. Course loads in excess of 18 semester hours must be approved by the Registrar. A maximum academic load for a four-week summer session is 6 semester hours. Students who are on academic probation are limited to a maximum of 14 semester hours during the fall or spring semester and to 4 semester hours during the summer terms.

### **Summer Classes**

Averett offers traditional, online, and independent study classes, beginning in May and continuing through July. The normal course load for a student is 3-6 semester hours during each of the sessions.

For more information on the summer sessions, see the online schedule or contact the Vice President for Academic Affairs or the Registrar.

### **Credit by Non-Traditional Means**

Averett University allows students to gain academic credit by following a number of avenues other than the traditional college class experience.

### **CLEP**

College credit may be earned through both the general examinations and the subject examinations of the College Level Examination Program. The five general examinations cover the areas of English composition, mathematics, natural sciences, history, and humanities.

The five general examinations, the Averett equivalent course, the number of semester hours awarded and the acceptable scores are listed below. Averett University follows the American Council on Education guidelines in awarding credit for the CLEP examinations.

<u>General Examination</u>	<u>Averett Equivalent</u>	<u>Hours</u>	<u>Acceptable Score</u>
College Composition	English 111* (with essay)	3	50
Humanities	Fine Arts	6	50
Mathematics	Math 103	3	50
Natural Sciences	Natural Sciences **	8	50
Social Studies & History	History 101 & 102	6	50

Each subject examination is equal to 3 or 6 hours credit (depending on whether the material is designed to measure a one-course or a two-course sequence). In the subject examinations, credit is awarded only in those areas applicable to the Averett University curriculum.

Any student who completes a degree at Averett must complete the last 30 semester hours of class work at this institution, which means that 90 semester hours may be accumulated through credit by examination, CLEP, or transfer.

\*The English Department requires the Multiple Choice with Essay Test. The CLEP subject exam, College Composition modular, will also be accepted for credit for English 111 & 112.

\*\*Will satisfy the Natural Science general education requirement.

### **Credit by Examination**

For credit by examination other than CLEP or Advanced Placement Tests, the student must consult the individual department. If the department approves an examination, it will design challenge examinations related to the specific course requested. The examination must be approved by every member of the department. For credit by examination, a \$25 non-refundable, administrative fee will be assessed. If credit is awarded, the student will pay one-half the prevailing tuition rate. The administrative fee will be deducted from the tuition charge.

### **Military Credit**

Averett grants credit for military service based on the recommendations of the American Council on Education. This credit is evaluated on the basis of senior college credit.

### **Non-Collegiate Learning Experience**

Averett University may grant credit for coursework taken under the auspices of certain businesses and industries provided those courses are recommended for credit by the American Council on Education. Students may wish to develop a portfolio demonstrating their prior learning to be evaluated to determine if credit will be granted.

### **Transcripts**

The University maintains a permanent academic record on each student who enters Averett, a certified copy of which is available upon written request to the Registrar's Office. The fee for a transcript is \$7. Paper request forms can be found in the Registrar's Office or at the AU Central Desk. In-person request fees must be paid in cash or by check/money order at the time the request is turned in. Requests are also taken via the National Clearinghouse Website at [www.getmytranscript.com](http://www.getmytranscript.com). All major credit cards are accepted through the National Clearinghouse Website.

Neither grade reports nor transcripts will be issued to students until all charges have been paid, including tuition, library fines, and bookstore charges.

Transcripts from other institutions cannot be released to students nor forwarded to any other institution.

### **Access to Student Records**

#### **Parental Access to Student Records**

Averett University assumes all traditional undergraduate students to be dependent on their parents; therefore, parents have access to student grades, schedules, transcripts, housing records, judicial records, and directory information upon their written request, including a signature.

A student who wishes to be treated as an independent must apply for independent status by completing and filing the appropriate form with the Registrar's Office. Upon submission of the completed form, the student's grades and records will be available only to him/her.

Parents of students who have declared themselves as independent may gain access to student records and grades only by demonstrating to the University that the student is considered a dependent under the IRS code.

All graduate and non-traditional students will be treated as independent. Non-traditional students are students 23 years of age or older.

### **State and Federal Access to Student Records**

As of January 3, 2012, the U.S. Department of Education's Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA) regulations expand the circumstances under which your education records and personally identifiable information (PII) contained in such records — including your Social Security Number, grades, or other private information — may be accessed without your consent. First, the U.S. Comptroller General, the U.S. Attorney General, the U.S. Secretary of Education, or state and local education authorities ("Federal and State Authorities") may allow access to your records and PII without your consent to any third party designated by a Federal or State Authority to evaluate a federal- or state-supported education program. The evaluation may relate to any program that is "principally engaged in the provision of education," such as early childhood education and job training, as well as any program that is administered by an education agency or institution. Second, Federal and State Authorities may allow access to your education records and PII without your consent to researchers performing certain types of studies, in certain cases even when we object to or do not request such research. Federal and State Authorities must obtain certain use-restriction and data security promises from the entities that they authorize to receive your PII, but the Authorities need not maintain direct control over such entities. In addition, in connection with Statewide Longitudinal Data Systems, State Authorities may collect, compile, permanently retain, and share without your consent PII from your education records, and they may track your participation in education and other programs by linking such PII to other personal information about you that they obtain from other Federal or State data sources, including workforce development, unemployment insurance, child welfare, juvenile justice, military service, and migrant student records systems.

### **Non-traditional Education**

Averett attempts to create a learning environment accessible to all citizens who feel they can benefit by attending the University. This environment is created by offering courses to students of all ages, on campus and off campus, using a variety of delivery systems.

#### **Graduate and Professional Studies (GPS)**

This non-traditional program, designed for working adults, offers courses of study leading to the Master of Business Administration, Master of Education (accelerated, not offered in all locations), Bachelor of Business Administration, Bachelor of Science in Criminal Justice, Bachelor of Science in Nursing, Bachelor of Applied Science in Leadership, and Associate of Business Administration degrees. Courses are offered at sites throughout the Commonwealth of Virginia, including Northern Virginia, Richmond, the Tidewater area, and Southern Virginia. These programs are described in detail in the Graduate and Professional Studies catalog.

#### **Individually Designed Education for Adult Learners (IDEAL)**

The IDEAL Program provides adult students an alternative experience to the traditional classroom setting. The program can meet the needs of students whose busy lifestyles or geographic location prohibit attending classes in an on-ground structured environment by offering degrees through distance learning and independent study. The IDEAL program is explained in detail on page 48.

---

## **INDIVIDUALLY DESIGNED EDUCATION FOR ADULT LEARNERS (IDEAL)**

---

The *Individually Designed Education for Adult Learners Program (IDEAL)* provides adult students an alternative experience to the traditional classroom setting. The IDEAL Program can meet the needs of students whose busy lifestyles or geographic location prohibit attending classes in an on-ground structured environment.

### **Independent Study and Online Courses**

Students in the IDEAL Program will complete course work through the completion of semester-based independent study and online courses. **Independent study** courses involve a one-on-one academic experience with faculty. Students communicate directly with faculty through various means including face-to-face, telephone, e-mail, or Averett's learning management system. **Online** courses provide the student an opportunity to engage with other students in a virtual environment. Students not only benefit from the expertise of the faculty, but also from the diverse experiences of their online classmates. Both of these formats give students the freedom to complete course work at the time and place that is most convenient for their schedules.

### **Programs**

IDEAL offers six major curriculum areas: Business Administration: Management Science; Computer Information Systems; Criminal Justice; Sociology; Physical Education: Sport Management; and the Bachelor of Applied Science degree. Other majors may be arranged based on availability of courses and the flexibility of the student's schedule.

### **Student Services**

Averett University recognizes the importance of counseling and professional assistance for student success. For students enrolled in the IDEAL Program, this is of particular importance. Students are assigned an advisor who helps develop the degree plan. This advisor acts as the primary point of contact for the student when dealing with non-academic issues and course enrollment.

### **Credit Transfer**

Averett University will accept in transfer course work and credit from regionally accredited sources. Course credit will be applied to the student's transcript upon enrollment in a degree program and will be accepted at the undergraduate level as applicable. Military credit is accepted from Military Training Courses, Occupational Specialty, and Service Colleges. Application of military credit to core curriculum requirements may be limited.

### **Cost**

See page 224 for a list of tuition and fees for the IDEAL Program.

### **Scholarships**

In recognition of the service that the military provides to this nation, Averett participates in the Yellow Ribbon Program and offers scholarship opportunities for earlier GI Bill Chapters. A special scholarship is also offered for Department of Defense civilian employees, state National Guard employees, and their family members, which provides a 25% tuition reduction for IDEAL students enrolled on a full-time basis.

## **Tuition Assistance**

Averett University accepts tuition assistance from all military services. Tuition costs have been carefully examined to ensure that the maximum benefit is accorded to the service member.

## **Independent Study/Online Course Registration for Traditional Students**

If an academic advisor deems it necessary for a traditional student to take an IDEAL independent study or online course, the following process must take place:

1. Student completes and signs the Request for Independent Study/Online form. The reason for taking the course outside the classroom must be included. (Forms are located in the IDEAL Offices.)
2. Student submits form to his/her advisor and department chair for approval and signature.
3. Student brings the fully executed form to the IDEAL offices for registration and course information.

Please note there is an additional per-credit-hour fee assessed for IDEAL independent study and online courses.

---

# DEGREE PROGRAMS AND COURSES

---

## Degree Requirements

Listed in this section are the requirements for each major offered at Averett. Any adjustment in these requirements must be approved by the Department Chair and the Vice President for Academic Affairs. The requirements described here are in addition to the General Education requirements listed on page 19 of this catalog. A student may, however, meet some of the General Education requirements automatically through the completion of the selected area of concentration.

Some programs have special admission requirements. Admission to the University does not guarantee admission to any specific degree program.

## Courses

Course numbers indicate the general level at which the course is taught. Courses at the 300- and 400-levels are designed primarily for juniors and seniors. Credit for courses appears in the parentheses and is indicated in semester hours.

A comma between course numbers means that the first course is a prerequisite to the second but that credit may be received for the first semester without taking the second semester.

Generally, the credit indicates the number of hours the class meets each week. For a three semester hour course, Monday, Wednesday, and Friday classes meet for 55 minutes each session; Tuesday and Thursday classes meet for 1 hour and 25 minutes each session.

The University reserves the right to add courses or to omit courses as necessary. The official schedule of classes is posted on the university website ([www.averett.edu](http://www.averett.edu)) prior to the beginning of each semester. Click on My Averett, then PowerCampus Self-Service).

## Special Studies and Independent Studies

### Special Studies

From time to time special courses are offered which make available to students areas of study not included in the regular course offerings. The department which offers the course gives it a title which is used in the official schedule of classes and on student records. Because content will vary, special studies courses may be repeated for credit.

Course Number	Course Title	Semester Hours	Course Open to:
199 and 299	Special Studies	(1-3)	Freshmen, sophomores, juniors, and seniors
399 and 499	Special Studies	(1-3)	Juniors and seniors only

### Independent Studies

If an academic advisor deems it necessary for a traditional student to take an IDEAL independent study or online course, the following process must take place:

1. Student completes and signs the Request for Independent Study/Online form. The reason for taking the course outside the classroom must be included. (Forms are located in the IDEAL Offices.)
2. Student submits form to his/her advisor and department chair for approval and signature.
3. Student brings the fully executed form to the IDEAL offices for registration and course information.

Please note there is an additional per-credit-hour fee assessed for IDEAL independent study and online courses.

---

## **AERONAUTICS (AV)**

---

Hank Dempsey, Chair  
Travis Williams

The Department of Aeronautics prepares graduates who are academically, ethically, and professionally prepared to accept the relevant leadership challenges of the current and future aviation industry.

The Department of Aeronautics offers a highly challenging and rigorous undergraduate degree in the Bachelor of Arts (B.A.) and Bachelor of Science (B.S.) in Aerospace Management with fields of concentration in Aviation Business and Flight Operations. The Program also offers a joint major in Aerospace Management and Criminal Justice. The Program includes at least 30 hours of general education courses to ensure that a student is professionally well-rounded.

In addition, the Department of Aeronautics offers flight courses for academic credit to all interested Averett University students who are not on University or other academic disciplinary action, and meet departmental requirements and policies. The Flight Center offers training for the following Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) certificates: private, commercial and flight instructor pilot, as well as training for the FAA ratings for instrument, multi-engine, instrument instructor and multi-engine instructor. A student seeking an FAA certificate or rating through the Department of Aeronautics must successfully complete the courses pertinent to the desired certification at the Flight Center prior to graduation.

### **Policies**

Safety is a preeminent concern of the Department of Aeronautics and the Federal Aviation Administration. The FAA also specifically mandates high grade and attendance standards that must be met by students in all ground and flight courses. Aviation professionals also have the highest behavioral and medical standards in any industry. The Department of Aeronautics reflects its commitment to these high professional standards within the aviation industry. The department faculty and staff insist that all students conduct themselves in a responsible and professional manner.

All students are required to study and be well prepared prior to all academic and flight classes. Consequently, students must maintain a minimum annual grade point average in courses in the major. This departmental requirement is in addition to other University academic policies.

Students enrolled in the Aeronautics program must earn a C in all required Aeronautics classes within his/her concentration. If a student has a D, F, or WF in a required Aeronautics course, the student may not progress in the concentration. One consequence is that the student will have to repeat that course when it is offered as a regularly scheduled course on the semester schedule.

Any student who does not conform to these high expectations may be placed on probation or suspension, or be administratively withdrawn or dismissed from the major, if in the judgment of the Chair, such action is believed to be necessary.

### **Drug and Alcohol Prevention Program**

While in the Aerospace Management Program, students will be part of the Drug and Alcohol Prevention Program. As in the aerospace industry "no tolerance" environment, the department's goal is to use education and deterrence to assure a safe and secure training environment.

The program is similar to mandatory drug and alcohol testing conducted in the industry. All students enrolled in the Aerospace Management Program are subject to random or "for cause" drug testing during their enrollment. Additional drug and alcohol testing will be done for several reasons. Tests can be ordered as an

initial screening, directed at an individual based on his/her behavior, speech, odor or other characteristics, inconclusive test results, or be done as a result of an aviation-related accident or incident. Any confirmed use of illegal drugs or chronic abuse of alcohol is cause for immediate suspension from any safety or security sensitive courses.

Drug, alcohol, and other legal convictions, or positive drug and alcohol test results, or results from certain judicial or University administrative actions are considered serious problems by the Federal government and the aviation industry. These can severely and adversely impact the student trying to obtain FAA certificates or a mandatory security background clearance in order to obtain professional employment in the aviation industry.

**Facilities**

The Department of Aeronautics is located on the main campus and offers academic instruction and advising. The Flight Center is located at Danville Regional Airport, a short distance from campus. Students should be prepared to provide their own transportation to and from the Flight Center.

**Requirements for a Major in Aerospace Management**

Students enrolled in the Department of Aeronautics program must complete 120 credits as outlined in the appropriate curriculum prior to graduation. Sixty credits must be completed at a senior institution with the last 30 credits from Averett University.

Deviation from the recommended program may be made only with a written request from the student and with the written approval of the appropriate departmental chair.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

**Core Requirements for All Concentrations in Aerospace Management:**

	Semester Hours
AV 102, Introduction to the Aerospace Industry.....	3
AV 202, Aerospace Safety.....	3
AV 216, National Airspace System.....	3
AV 316, Aerospace Transportation .....	3
AV 401, Airport Management .....	<u>3</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>15</b>

**Concentration in Aviation Business**

For the concentration in Aviation Business, the student is required to take the Aerospace core requirements, 15 credits of Aerospace electives (selected from the following list and special courses), and the 30 credits in Business Administration listed below. This concentration requires 60 credits in Aerospace and Business Administration courses.

	Semester Hours
AV 265, Aerospace Accident Investigation .....	3
AV 275, General Aviation Management .....	3
AV 285, Aviation Security Operations.....	3
AV 331, Airline Management .....	3
AV 365, Human Factors in the Aerospace Industry .....	3
AV 425, Airport Planning and Design.....	3
AV 472, Internship in the Aerospace Industry .....	1-12
AV 475, Aviation Management Topics .....	3

AV 485, Advanced Aircraft Systems .....	2
Total	15

**Required Business Administration Courses:**

BSA 206, Business Communication.....	3
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I .....	3
BSA 325, Cost Accounting.....	3
BSA 305, Principles of Management .....	3
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing.....	3
BSA elective courses .....	3
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software.....	3
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics .....	3
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics .....	3
ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics.....	3
Total	30

**Concentration in Flight Operations**

Averett University flight training is conducted under the provisions of Federal Aviation Regulations Parts 141 and 61. All flight instructors have the appropriate FAA certificates and experience.

The student also is required to earn at least an FAA Commercial Pilot Certificate with an Instrument rating. A student must further complete either Option A – Flight Instructor Certificate or Option B – Multi-Engine Rating. Qualified students enrolled in this concentration will also be able to select any or all of the other flight courses as electives.

All flight courses may begin and end at any time during the academic semester and may not coincide with the beginning and ending dates of the published semester schedule. Students who begin a flight course late in the semester should be prepared to complete that flight course during the next published semester.

Flight fees are in addition to the regular university tuition. The flight rates and charges are based on a reasonable number of hours required to meet the minimum hours contained in the specific FAA-approved flight training syllabus. Additional flight and ground training charges may be required for students not making satisfactory progress or due to other factors such as weather, illness, weight restriction, maintenance, selection of different training aircraft, etc. The costs for all additional flight and ground training are in addition to the regular flight course fees. Fees are assessed also for taking the FAA Knowledge and Practical tests.

**Transfer of Flight Training**

The Department of Aeronautics welcomes transfer students from other colleges and universities, and every effort is made to transfer the maximum number of credits subject to Federal Aviation Regulations and University policies. It is the responsibility of the student to initiate a review process of transfer flight training with the Chief Flight Instructor. Advanced standing for flight training may be granted only after the student is enrolled, and after the Chief Flight Instructor completes the evaluation process, which will include a logbook review and proficiency evaluation flights.

Transfer students may receive college credit for previous flight and ground training at the discretion of the department chair.

Students enrolled in any flight courses should not expect to take any flight training for credit outside the Department of Aeronautics facilities after enrollment at Averett University.

**Medical Examinations**

Students seeking admission to flight training must be examined by an FAA-designated aviation medical examiner and have an FAA medical certificate prior to the start of flight training. The Department of Aeronautics strongly recommends that the student initially obtain an FAA Class I medical certificate to assure

that the student meets the professional pilot medical standards prior to undertaking flight training. The FAA medical examinations should be done far enough in advance of entering Averett University to assure that all potential problems or questions are resolved.

**Non-Owners Aircraft Insurance Liability Coverage**

In order to assure adequate individual and family needs are met through insurance coverage, Averett University requires all flight students to acquire non-owners aircraft rental insurance after obtaining their FAA Private Pilot certificate.

**Flight Operations Requirements**

In addition to the general education requirements and the Aeronautics core requirements, students are required to take 21 credits of flight courses and either Option A or Option B below.

	Semester Hours
AV108, Private Pilot Ground Specifics	2
AV109, Private Pilot Ground Test Prep	1
AV 112, Private Pilot Ground School .....	3
AV 113, Private Pilot Flight I .....	1
AV 114, Private Pilot Flight II.....	1
AV208, Instrument Ground School Specifics .....	2
AV209, Instrument Ground School Test Prep.....	1
AV 210, Instrument Ground School .....	3
AV 220, Instrument Flight I .....	1
AV 221, Instrument Flight II .....	1
AV 300, Commercial Ground School.....	3
AV 320A, Commercial Flight I .....	5
AV 320B, Commercial Flight I .....	5
AV 321, Commercial Flight II.....	<u>1</u>
Total	15

**Available Options in the Flight Operations Concentration:**

**Option A:**

AV 441, Flight Instructor Ground School .....	3
AV 440, Flight Instructor Flight .....	1
AV 457, Flight Instructor Practicum (P/F) .....	<u>2</u>
Total	6

**Option B:**

AV 443, Multi-Engine Ground School.....	1
AV 442, Multi-Engine Flight.....	<u>1</u>
Total	2

**Option C:**

AV 444, Instrument Flight Instructor Ground School .....	2
AV 445, Instrument Flight Instructor Flight.....	1
AV 457, Flight Instructor Practicum (P/NP) .....	<u>2</u>
Total	5

**Option D:**

AV 446, Multi-Engine Flight Instructor Flight .....	3
---	---

**Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice Program**

Students must take a minimum of 12 credits of Criminal Justice courses. These 12 credits may include those courses specified in the degree requirements listed below.

A Sociology or Criminal Justice Research Project is required. This is a substantial research paper involving original research. CRJ 440, SOC 445, CRJ 445, or CRJ 488 will meet these requirements. An independent study with guidance by a full-time department faculty member with the goal of producing an original quantitative or qualitative research paper also will meet this requirement.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
AV 102, Introduction to the Aerospace Industry.....	3
AV108, Private Pilot Ground Specifics .....	2
AV109, Private Pilot Ground Test Prep .....	1
AV 112, Private Pilot Ground School. ....	3
AV 113, Private Pilot Flight I.....	1
AV 114, Private Pilot Flight II.....	1
AV 202, Aerospace Safety.....	3
\ AV208, Instrument Ground School Specifics .....	2
AV209, Instrument Ground School Test Prep.....	1
AV 210, Instrument Ground School .....	3
AV 220, Instrument Flight I .....	1
AV 221, Instrument Flight II .....	1
AV 300, Commercial Ground School.....	3
AV 316, Aerospace Transportation .....	3
AV 320A, Commercial Flight I .....	5
AV 320B, Commercial Flight I .....	5
AV 321, Commercial Flight II.....	1
AV 401, Airport Management .....	<u>3</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>30</b>

**Plus Option A:**

AV 440, Flight Instructor Flight .....	1
AV 441, Flight Instructor Ground School .....	3
AV 457, Flight Instructor Practicum .....	<u>2</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>6</b>

**Or Option B:**

AV 442, Multi-Engine Flight.....	1
AV 443, Multi-Engine Ground School.....	<u>1</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>2</b>

**Plus Criminal Justice Requirements:**

SOC 216, Criminology or CRJ 301, Criminal Justice .....	3
SOC 470, Research Methods .....	3
CRJ 440, Seminar in Criminal Justice or CRJ 445, Criminal Justice Internship or CRJ 302, Criminal Procedure .....	3
SOC/CRJ Electives .....	<u>15</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>24</b>

**Courses of Instruction in Aeronautics**

**102 Introduction to the Aerospace Industry**

**(3)**

This course provides a broad survey of all aspects of the aerospace industry including its history and development.

**103 Astronomy and Lab**

(4)

An introduction to the current state of astronomy, both the fundamentals of astronomical knowledge and the advances. The subjects of discussion include a grand tour of the heavens, light, matter and energy, the telescope, gravity and motion, stars, black holes, the Milky Way, and galaxies.

**108 Private Pilot Ground Specifics**

(2)

This course provides additional academic ground training for the Private Pilot Certificate. Aeronautical topics include complete coverage of the POH (Pilots Operating Handbook), an in-depth examination of the A/FD (Airport Facility Directory), aircraft systems, performance, flight planning, and weight and balance. E6-B and electronic computer usage will also be covered. Selections from the Pilots Handbook of Aeronautical Knowledge, Airplane Flying Handbook, and the AIM will supplement as needed. Again, there are hundreds of facts to learn making this course information intensive. Students will bring all relevant books, guides, and calculators to each class meeting.

**109 Private Pilot Ground Test Prep**

(1)

This course provides academic ground training for the Private Pilot Certificate by studying the Test Prep Private Pilot book. It is the intention of this course to cover every question (nearly 1000) in the Test Prep book and concentrate on any test questions which present difficulty to any class member. This course will result in a sign-off by the Instructor to each student who achieves at least an 85 on the Final and has demonstrated competence on other tests during the semester and is otherwise prepared to take the FAA Written Exam. After students take the FAA Written Exam, they will give a copy of the test results to their professor and to the chief pilot before the end of that semester. Students will bring all relevant texts, books, plotter, and calculators to each class. Students who take this course are encouraged to meet two hours a week with aviation tutors. Also, students will use the Private Pilot Prepware, which is available online and complete test sections after they are covered in class.

**112 Private Pilot Ground School**

(3)

Academic ground training for the Private Pilot Certificate. Aeronautical topics include principles of flight, FAA regulations, visual flight rules, aircraft systems and performance, meteorology, navigation, aviation physiology and flight planning. Students must attain a passing score on the course completion examination and the FAA Private Pilot Knowledge test.

**113 Private Pilot Flight I**

(1)

Introduction to dual flight instruction, takeoffs and landings, airport operations, emergency procedures, and solo flights. Students must successfully meet all FAA flight proficiency requirements. Prerequisites: FAA Student Pilot Certificate and FAA Medical Class III certificate or higher medical certificate.

**114 Private Pilot Flight II**

(1)

Dual flight instruction, solo and cross-country flights, flight maneuvers, navigation, emergency operations, and review of FAA Private Pilot requirements. Successful award of FAA Private Pilot certificate is required for completion of this course. Prerequisites: FAA Student Pilot Certificate and FAA Medical Class III medical certificate or higher medical certificate, FAA Private Pilot Knowledge test passed.

**115 Weather and Climate and Lab**

(4)

A study of basic concepts and processes of atmospheric phenomena. The earth's atmospheric composition, wind, pressure, temperature, moisture, clouds, air masses, fronts, thunderstorms, icing, fog, and jet streams are included. Weather data studied include constant pressure maps, surface weather observations, surface maps, and other related weather reports. Prerequisite: AV210.

**202 Aerospace Safety**

(3)

This course explores the historical roots of aviation safety, the role of attitudes on safety procedures, safety legislation, organizations, and safety planning. It examines in depth the roles of the National Transportation

Safety Board and the Federal Aviation Administration in accident prevention and investigation including aviation accident analysis, federal and state legislation, safety programs, accident reports, sources of accidents, and safety trends.

### **203 Part 135/121 Operations**

**(3)**

Part 135 involves operators who are involved in fractional, charter, and freight operations. Most students will be involved in this aspect of the aviation industry for their first work experience in the industry. Part 121 operations are primarily related to airline operators. The course will cover the regulations involved in these operations and operational considerations such as initial training, ongoing training, upgrade training, emergency training and hazmat operations. The objective of the course will be to equip the student with a working knowledge of the 135/121 work environment.

### **208 Instrument Ground School Specifics**

**(2)**

This course provides additional academic ground training for the instrument rating. Information that should be standard knowledge, but is not included in the ground school course due to time constraints will now be introduced. Subjects covered include: IFR Operations in the National Airspace System, Takeoffs, and Departures, Enroute Operations, Arrivals, Approaches, System Improvement Plans, Human Factors, Aerodynamic Factors, Flight Instruments, Navigation Systems, Attitude Instrument Flying, Emergency Operations, Meteorology, Regulations, and the AIM. Again, there are hundreds of facts to learn making this course information intensive. Students will bring all pertinent texts, books, guides, and calculators to each class meeting.

### **209 Instrument Ground School Test Prep**

**(1)**

This course provides test preparation for the Instrument Pilot rating by studying the Test Prep Instrument Rating book. It is the intention of this course to cover every question (nearly 1000) in the Test Prep book and concentrate on any test questions which present difficulty to any class member. This course will result in a sign-off by the instructor to each student who achieves at least an 85 on the final and has demonstrated competence on other tests during the semester and is otherwise prepared to take the FAA Written Exam. After students take the FAA Written Exam, they will give a cop of the test results to their professor and to the chief pilot before the end of that semester. Students will bring all relevant texts, books, plotter, and calculators to every class. Students who take this course are encouraged to meet two hours a week with aviation tutors. Also, students will use the Instrument Test Prepware which is available online and complete test sections after they are covered in class.

### **210 Instrument Ground School**

**(3)**

Academic instruction for the Instrument Rating. Principles of instrument flight, air traffic control, IFR procedures, analyses of weather information, IFR planning, emergency procedures and pilot decisions. Student must attain a passing score on the course completion examination and the FAA Instrument Knowledge test. Prerequisite: FAA Private Pilot Knowledge test passed.

### **211 Federal Aviation Regulations Explained**

**(3)**

As the aviation industry expands, so does the necessity for more regulation from the FAA. Aviation professionals need the tools and experience to interpret the current and proposed FARs. (Federal Aviation Regulations) This course will give the student the skills to locate, interpret and comply; or not comply with a given FAR. Areas of study will include: parts 1, 61, 91 (including subpart K of part 91; fractional operations), 141 (flight training and flight schools), 135 (passenger and freight carrier operations), and NTSB part 830 (accident/incident operations). Attention will be given to the role of the TSA versus the FAA; search and seizure incidents/procedures and the FARs that govern them. This is a 3 credit course; students taking this course must have completed the private pilot ground school before taking this course.

### **216 National Airspace System**

**(3)**

The evolution, current state, and future of the National Airspace System with an emphasis on its current and future impact on the domestic and international aviation industry. Defines the Federal Aviation Administration's role in the operation, maintenance, and planned modernization of Air Traffic Control facilities, airways and navigational aids, landing aids, and airports. The users of the system, their needs, and issues with the system's operation and planned modernization are examined.

- 220 Instrument Flight I (1)**  
Advanced dual flight instruction, solo and advanced cross-country navigation, and emergency operations. Prerequisites: FAA Private Pilot Certificate and FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate.
- 221 Instrument Flight II (1)**  
Advanced flight instruction and cross-country navigation. Successful award of FAA Instrument rating is required for completion of this course. Prerequisites: FAA Private Pilot Certificate; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate; FAA Instrument Knowledge test passed.
- 265 Aerospace Accident Investigation (3)**  
A study of aerospace accident investigation as performed by the National Transportation Safety Board, Federal Aviation Administration, and the International Civil Aviation Organization. It includes field investigation techniques and laboratory methods for accident reconstruction, the analysis of flight accidents and incidents using time and event correlation of cockpit voice and flight data recorders, and air traffic control tapes.
- 275 General Aviation Management (3)**  
This course examines the organization of the general aviation industry including management of aircraft maintenance and flight line operations and pertinent Federal regulations. This course also includes an in-depth examination of corporate and business flight departments including aircraft and equipment evaluation, maintenance, flight operations, administration and financial considerations.
- 285 Aviation Security Operations (3)**  
This course critically examines the nature of aerospace security with US and international civil aviation and analyzes the legal and regulatory regimen that applies to it. Students will study programmatic strategies and management approaches to address the changing challenges of air and ground security in the industry.
- 300 Commercial Ground School (3)**  
Academic ground training for the Commercial Pilot certificate. Topics include airplane performance, VFR cross-country planning, FARs applicable to commercial pilot operations, operation of advanced systems appropriate to complex airplanes and aircrew physiology. Student must attain a passing score on the course completion examination and the FAA Commercial Pilot Knowledge test. Prerequisite: FAA Instrument Knowledge test passed.
- 312 Advanced Aerodynamics (3)**  
This course provides aerodynamics concepts for small propeller driven aircraft, turbo-prop and jet engine swept wing aircraft. Subjects taught include Basic Aerodynamics, Airplane Performance, High Speed Aerodynamics, Stability and Control, Operating Strength Limitations, and Specific Problems of Flying.
- 316 Aerospace Transportation (3)**  
This is a survey course of the development of the air transportation industry leading to the current airline and general aviation industry strategies including mergers, consolidation, and acquisition. An examination of future airline strategies will be studied. Prerequisites: AV202 and AV244.
- 320A and 320B Commercial Flight I (1)**  
Dual flight instruction, solo and cross-country flights, commercial flight maneuvers, and emergency operations. Prerequisites: FAA Private Pilot Certificate with Instrument rating and FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate.
- 321 Commercial Flight II (1)**  
Complex aircraft flight training, commercial flight maneuvers, and night flights. Successful award of FAA Commercial Pilot certificate is required for completion of this course. Prerequisites: FAA Private Pilot Certificate and Instrument rating; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate; FAA Commercial Pilot Knowledge test passed.

- 331 Airline Management (3)**  
 An introduction to the administration aspects of airline operation and management. The course includes the administrative organizations, economics of airline management, operational structures, and Federal regulatory requirements. This course also includes a study of the geographic, economic, social, and political environments of international aviation. The issues considered are the globalization of the marketplace, technology transfer, and legal and political implications on the industry including bilateral route agreements and treaties.
- 365 Human Factors in the Aerospace Industry (3)**  
 This course is an overview of the human role in aircraft accident prevention, including the issues and problems involved in aircraft accidents and incidents. The course includes the analysis of the complex decision-making process leading up to an accident or incident.
- 401 Airport Management (3)**  
 A study of modern airports, including the roles, functions, and status in the national air transportation system; sponsorship and management alternatives; airport development, operations, and business matters; and discussion of current and emerging public airport issues. Prerequisite: junior or senior standing and completion of all other AV core courses.
- 425 Airport Planning and Design (3)**  
 This course introduces students to the requirements, issues and processes involved with airport planning. Sources of aviation data, forecasting methodologies, the airport master planning process and environmental issues and requirements are studied. It also examines the analysis and application of Federal Aviation Administration standards for airport design with an emphasis on the airside components. Other topics include airport capacity calculations; movement area geometry; pavement, runway, and taxiway design; approach and departure gradients; terminal facilities; and heliports.
- 440 Flight Instructor Flight (1)**  
 Flight instruction to qualify FAA Commercial and Instrument rated pilots for FAA Flight Instructor Certificate. Successful award of FAA Flight Instructor Certificate is required for completion of this course. Prerequisites: FAA Commercial Pilot Certificate with Instrument Rating; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate; FAA Flight Instructor Knowledge test passed.
- 441 Flight Instructor Ground School (3)**  
 Academic ground training for Flight Instructor Certificate. Topics include principles of learning and communication, instructional methodologies, and instructional technology. Student must attain a passing score on the course completion examination and the FAA Flight Instructor Knowledge test. Prerequisites: FAA Commercial Pilot Certificate with Instrument Rating; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate or permission of department chair.
- 442 Multi-Engine Flight (1)**  
 Introduction to multi-engine operation procedures, engine-out procedures, emergency procedures, and maximum performance. Successful award of FAA Multi-Engine Airplane rating is required for completion of this course. Requirements: FAA Commercial Pilot Certificate with Instrument Rating; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate.
- 443 Multi-Engine Ground School (1)**  
 Academic ground instruction for Multi-Engine Rating. Aeronautical topics include understanding of multi-engine aircraft performance and systems integration. Prerequisites: FAA Commercial Pilot Certificate with Instrument rating; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate or permission of department chair.
- 444 Instrument Flight Instructor Ground School (2)**  
 Academic instruction for Flight or Ground Instructor Instrument rating. Topics include teaching methodologies involved with students learning all instrument flight procedures. Student must attain a passing score on the course completion examination and the FAA written examination. Prerequisites: FAA Certified Flight

Instructor Certificate; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate or permission of the instructor.

**445 Instrument Flight Instructor Flight (1)**

Flight training to prepare FAA Certified Flight Instructors to develop analytical skills and abilities to instruct students in all instrument procedures. Successful award of FAA Certified Flight Instructor – Instrument rating is required for completion of this course. Prerequisites: FAA Flight Instructor – Airplane Certificate; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate; FAA Flight Instructor Instrument Knowledge test passed or permission of the instructor.

**446 Multi-Engine Flight Instructor Flight (3)**

Training for pilots to become multi-engine flight instructors by analyzing student procedures and maneuvers in multi-engine aircraft and flight training devices. Successful award of FAA Multi-Engine Instructor rating is required for completion of this course. Prerequisites: FAA Commercial Pilot Certificate with Multi-Engine Rating, and FAA Flight Instructor Certificate; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate.

**457 Flight Instructor Practicum (P/F) (2)**

The qualified student is provided an initial practical experience as a flight instructor intern in planning and/or conducting flight training or working on the administrative processes under the supervision of the Chief Flight Instructor or his/her designee. Prerequisites: FAA Flight Instructor – Airplane Certificate; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate or permission of department chair.

**472 Internship in the Aerospace Industry (1-12)**

The internship program offers advanced students an opportunity to apply and practice the concepts and principles learned in the classroom that are related to the student's program of study. The student must be prepared to offset additional travel and living expenses, and a competitive application and selection process may be involved. Each student must provide a detailed written professional analysis of the experience and make an oral presentation to departmental faculty upon completion. Prerequisite: Cumulative grade point average of 2.0 and approval by the department chair.

**475 Aviation Management Topics (3)**

An overview of aviation management topics related to management within the areas of schedule carriers, fixed base operations (FBO's), cargo operations, corporate aviation, and charter/instruction services. Topics to be emphasized will depend upon the students' interests and needs. Prerequisite: AV 316

**485 Advanced Aircraft Systems (2)**

Provides the student with an understanding of systems employed on technologically advanced, sophisticated aircraft. Prerequisite: Commercial Flight Certificate or permission of department chair.

---

## ART (ART)

---

Diane P. Kendrick, Chair

Robert C. Marsh

The University offers a liberal arts program with a range of studio work as well as basic study in art history for the student interested in a Bachelor of Arts degree or Bachelor of Arts degree with Teaching Licensure.

The Bachelor of Arts degree prepares students for continued study or potential positions in galleries, commercial art, or in community arts organizations.

Students in the Bachelor of Arts program are encouraged to build a balanced background in the visual arts rather than to concentrate in a single studio area.

Students who are art majors will be required to attend two portfolio assessments while enrolled in the program. The first will take place after the student has completed twelve to fifteen hours of studio work near the end of the sophomore year. The second portfolio assessment will take place the fall semester of the senior year. Senior Art Majors present a senior show on campus. This is a requirement and a part of our capstone course, Senior Seminar. If you are Minorng in Art History, you will do a presentation on a particular period or artist.

All art majors are required to exhibit in the annual student show which exhibits work from studio courses.

Students must attain at least a 2.0 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

### Requirements for a Major in Art

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ART 103, The Visual Arts .....	3
ART 110, Basic Drawing .....	3
ART 120, Basic Color and Design .....	3
ART 130, Three-Dimensional Design.....	3
Art History (select from: ART 201, 205, 305, 306, 405) .....	9
<b>Studio Courses</b>	
ART 223, Painting or ART 310, Drawing .....	3
ART 283, General Crafts or ART 330, Sculpture.....	3
ART 340, Graphics.....	3
<b>Advanced Studio</b> (select from the following).....	9
ART 223, Painting	
ART 270, Applied Design or ART 351, Applied Three-Dimensional Design	
ART 283, General Crafts or ART 383, Advanced Crafts	
ART 310, Drawing	
ART 323, Advanced Painting	
ART 330, Sculpture or ART 430, Advanced Sculpture	
ART 362, Pottery or ART 462, Advanced Pottery	
ART 440, Advanced Graphics	
ART 450, Special Studies in Art	
ART 490, Independent Study	
ART 400, Senior Seminar.....	3

Total 42

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Art**

Freshman Year:

- ART 103, Visual Arts
- ART 110, Basic Drawing
- ART 120, Basic Color and Design

Sophomore Year:

- ART 130, Three-Dimensional Design
- ART 201, Art History (or 205)
- ART 223, Painting (or 310)

Junior Year:

- ART Recommended Elective
- ART 283, General Crafts (or 330)
- ART 305, Art History (or 306)
- ART Recommended Elective

Senior Year:

- ART 305, Art History (or 306 or 405)
- ART 340, Graphics (or 440)
- ART Recommended Elective
- ART 400, Senior Seminar

**Requirements for a Major in Visual Arts with Teaching Licensure Grades PK-12**

	Semester Hours
ART 103, The Visual Arts.....	3
ART 110, Basic Drawing.....	3
ART 120, Basic Color and Design .....	3
ART 130, Three-Dimensional Design .....	3
ART 201, Art History: Ancient Through Medieval .....	3
ART 205, Art History: Medieval Through Renaissance .....	3
ART 223, Painting .....	3
ART 283, General Crafts .....	3
ART 300, Methods in Art Education I (professional course).....	3
ART 301, Methods in Art Education II (practicum).....	3
ART 305, Art History: Baroque Through Romanticism <b>or</b>	
ART 306, Realism Through Modern <b>or</b>	
ART 405, Non-Western Art .....	3
ART 310, Drawing .....	3
ART 330, Sculpture .....	3
ART 340, Graphics .....	3
ART 362, Pottery .....	3
ART 400, Senior Seminar.....	<u>3</u>
	Total 48

Teaching Licensure in Visual Arts includes all grade levels (PK-12). The other General Education and Professional Education requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for teaching licensure may be found on pages 151-153.

## **Sample Four-Year Sequence for Visual Arts with Teaching Licensure**

### Freshman Year:

ART 103, Visual Arts  
ART 110, Basic Drawing  
ART 120, Basic Color and Design  
TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication

### Sophomore Year:

ART 130, Three-Dimensional Design  
ART 201, Art History: Ancient Through Medieval  
ART 223, Painting  
ED 290, Foundations of Education  
HIS 201, U.S. History I (or 202)  
HTH 220, Health and Fitness for the 21st Century  
PE Fitness Course  
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology

### Junior Year:

ART 205, Art History: Medieval Through Renaissance  
ART 283, General Crafts  
ART 300, Methods in Art Education I  
ART 305, Art History: Baroque Through Romanticism (or 306)  
ART 310, Drawing  
ART 330, Sculpture  
ED 322, Education Psychology  
ED 334, Content Area Reading and Language Development  
ED 378, Curriculum in Grades PK-6  
ED 379, Teaching Assistant: Grades PK-6

### Senior Year:

ART 301, Methods in Art Education II  
ART 340, Graphics  
ART 362, Pottery  
ART 400, Senior Seminar  
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education  
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum  
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education  
ED 489, Directed Teaching/Seminar in Secondary/PK-12 Education

## **Minor**

A student may choose to minor either in Studio Art or Art History. The following are the requirements for a minor in Studio Art: ART 103, 110, 120, 130, and 6 additional hours selected from ART 223, 270, 283, 310, 330, 340, 351, or 362, for a total of 18 semester hours.

Courses for a minor in Art History are: ART 103 and 400 and 12 hours selected from ART 201, 205, 305, 306, and 405 for a total of 18 semester hours. A student may not minor in studio art or art history if he/she is an art major.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

## **Courses of Instruction in Art**

### **103 The Visual Arts**

**(3)**

An introduction to images and structures created by mankind, investigations into how the eye sees, what is visually stimulating, materials and approaches used in art, and the cultural concepts found in the creation and appreciation of works of art. This course satisfies 3 semester hours of the Fine Arts requirement for General Education.

### **110 Basic Drawing**

**(3)**

A study of the fundamentals of drawing in which approaches, techniques, and materials are investigated. Six studio hours each week.

### **120 Basic Color and Design**

**(3)**

A study of the fundamental concepts of composition and color in two-dimensional structuring. Six studio hours each week.

### **130 Three-Dimensional Design**

**(3)**

An introduction to fundamental concepts and various materials in three-dimensional design. Six studio hours each week. Prerequisite or Corequisite: ART 120.

### **201 Art History: Ancient Through Medieval**

**(3)**

A survey of painting, sculpture, and architecture from the pre-classical civilization through the Early Christian period in Western Europe. This course satisfies 3 semester hours of the Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Three lecture hours each week. Prerequisite: ART 103.

### **205 Art History: Medieval Through Renaissance**

**(3)**

A survey of painting, sculpture, and architecture in Western Europe from the early Middle Ages through the Northern Renaissance. This course satisfies 3 semester hours of the Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Prerequisite: ART 103.

### **206 Art History**

**(3)**

A survey of paintings, sculptures, and architecture in a historical dimension from ancient times through the twentieth century. Study focuses on an intellectual and practical approach for the student to examine art objects and know how they relate to the culture from which they came. Visits to art facilities and museums may be part of this course.

### **210 Introductory Studio Techniques**

**(1-3)**

An introduction to studio work for the student interested in, but not majoring in art. Studio work will concentrate on one specific art area each time the course is offered. Drawing and design, painting, crafts, ceramics, or graphics will be covered on an alternating basis. Each area may be repeated for a maximum of 3 semester hours credit. No more than 12 semester hours of Art 210 may be credited toward a degree. Two studio hours per semester hour credit. Not applicable toward Art major.

### **223 Painting**

**(3)**

A study of the fundamentals of various techniques and media used in painting processes. Six studio hours each week. Prerequisites for Art majors: ART 110, 120. Non-art majors: No prerequisites.

- 270 Applied Design (3)**  
An analysis of color and composition emphasizing projects in applied two-dimensional design, such as lay-out advertising, fabric design, and commercial reproduction techniques. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisites: ART 110, 120.
- 283 General Crafts (3)**  
An introduction to various craft media such as metal, glass, and fiber. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisites for Art majors: ART 110, 120, 130. Non-art majors: No prerequisites.
- 300 Methods in Art Education I (3)**  
A detailed study of methods, materials and art lesson planning, which includes art Standards of Learning (SOLs), for various age levels from elementary to secondary school. Three hours each week. Prerequisite: completion of 24 hours toward Art major.
- 301 Methods in Art Education II (3)**  
An opportunity for prospective art teachers to explore teaching strategies and use materials in art appropriate for the child in kindergarten through grade 6, including implementation of art SOLs and SOLs used in the public schools. Three hours each week. Prerequisite: ART 300 and completion of 24 hours toward Art major.
- 305 Art History: Baroque Through Romanticism (3)**  
A survey of painting, sculpture, and architecture in Western Europe during the seventeenth, eighteenth, and early nineteenth centuries. This course satisfies 3 semester hours of Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Three lecture hours each week. Prerequisite: ART 103.
- 306 Art History: Realism Through Modern (3)**  
A survey of the various art movements in Europe and America from the early nineteenth century through the present time. This course satisfies 3 semester hours of the Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Three lecture hours each week. Prerequisite: ART 103.
- 310 Drawing (3)**  
A detailed study of drawing techniques including figure-drawing and drawing as a finished art medium. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisites for Art majors: ART 110, 120. Non-majors: ART 110.
- 323 Advanced Painting (3)**  
A detailed study of painting with concentration in one specific paint medium. Presentation of finished work stressed. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisite: ART 223.
- 330 Sculpture (3)**  
An introduction to various materials and approaches used in sculpture. Six studio hours each week. Art major prerequisites: ART 110, 120, 130. Non-art majors: No prerequisites.
- 340 Graphics (3)**  
An introduction to basic studies in graphic processes and printing techniques, including relief, intaglio, lithography, serigraphy, and calligraphy. Six hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit but must be in a different print medium. Prerequisites for art majors: ART 110, 120, 130. Non-art majors: No prerequisites.
- 351 Applied Three-Dimensional Design (3)**  
A study of the fundamentals of applied three-dimensional design in areas such as packaging and functional objects planned for mass production. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisites: ART 110, 120, 130. Non-art majors: No prerequisites.

- 362 Pottery (3)**  
An introduction to clay, including hand building and wheel throwing methods. Six studio hours each week. Prerequisites for Art majors: ART 110, 120, 130. Non-art majors: No prerequisites.
- 383 Advanced Crafts (3)**  
A detailed study in craft media including mixed media and more complicated processes. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisite: ART 283 with study in same craft medium.
- 400 Senior Seminar (3)**  
A detailed study involving both individual projects and group discussions. Two discussion hours each week plus individual work. Prerequisite: Senior standing and completion of 24 hours toward the Art major. Art History minor: 12 hours of Art.
- 405 Non-Western Art (3)**  
A survey of the painting, sculpture and architecture of Asia, South and Central America, and Africa. This course satisfies 3 semester hours in the General Education requirements for Fine Arts. Three lecture hours each week. Prerequisite: ART 103.
- 430 Advanced Sculpture (3)**  
A detailed study of sculptural processes exploring more complicated techniques and greater scale. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisites: ART 130 and 330.
- 440 Advanced Graphics (3)**  
A detailed study in graphics with a concentration in one specific print medium. Includes presentation of finished work and editioning of prints. Six studio hours each week. Prerequisite: ART 340, with study in same print medium.
- 462 Advanced Pottery (3)**  
A detailed study in pottery production methods, glaze mixing, and kiln and shop management. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisite: ART 362.

---

## ATHLETIC TRAINING

---

Carrie Hendricks, Director  
 Richard Ferguson  
 Barbara Kushubar

Melanie Lewis  
 Hsiu-Chen Liu

Averett University’s athletic training curriculum is designed to prepare students for careers in athletic training. This curriculum stresses a strong liberal arts and science foundation with clinical and problem-solving development. The major requires a pre-professional phase where students will be introduced to the clinical experiences that will be required in the curriculum.

The Averett University athletic training curriculum emphasizes clinical instruction which utilizes different clinical sites on and off campus including the Averett University athletic training room, sports medicine/physical therapy clinics and medical doctors’ offices. These settings will expose the student athletic trainer to different health professionals including certified athletic trainers, physical therapists, exercise physiologists, physical therapy assistants, and medical doctors. These diverse locations allow students to gain valuable experiences in a variety of athletic training settings.

The program is accredited by the Commission on Accreditation of Athletic Training Education (CAATE).

### Requirements for a Major in Athletic Training

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BIO 101*, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 204*, Human Anatomy and Physiology I .....	4
BIO 205*, Human Anatomy and Physiology II .....	4
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems .....	3
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety .....	3
HTH 320, Nutrition and Sports Performance .....	3
PE 209, Introduction to Athletic Training .....	3
PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses .....	3
PE 315, Physiology of Activity .....	3
PE 320, Kinesiology or PE 425, Biomechanics.....	3
PE 360, Sports Medicine I and Lab .....	4
PE 365, Sport Psychology .....	3
PE 370, Therapeutic Exercise .....	3
PE 409, Advanced Athletic Training .....	2
PE 421, Sports Medicine II and Lab .....	4
PE 428, Graded Exercise Testing .....	3
PE 435, Therapeutic Modalities.....	3
PE 438, Administration of Athletic Training Programs .....	3
PE 444, Research Methods in Physical Education .....	3
PE 448, Prevention and Acute Care of Athletic Injuries .....	1
PE 449, Therapeutic Modalities and Pharmacology.....	1
PE 450, Assessment and Evaluation of Athletic Injuries and Pathologies .....	1
PE 451, Therapeutic Exercise for Athletic Training.....	1
PE 452, Administration/Psychosocial/Nutrition Issues in Athletic Training .....	1
<b>Total</b>	<b>66</b>

\*These courses satisfy general education science requirements.

A minimum grade point average of 2.5 is required in the Athletic Training Program. Students must also complete a minimum of 800 clinical hours once accepted into the athletic training program. These clinical hours must be obtained under the supervision of an Approved Clinical Instructor, Clinical Supervisor, or allied health professional who is approved by the program director.

### **Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Athletic Training**

#### Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems  
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety  
PE 209, Introduction to Athletic Training

#### Sophomore Year:

BIO 204, Human Anatomy and Physiology I  
BIO 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology II  
PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses  
PE 315, Physiology of Activity  
PE 435, Therapeutic Modalities  
PE 448, Prevention and Acute Care of Athletic Injuries

#### Junior Year:

HTH 320, Nutrition and Sports Performance  
PE 320, Kinesiology **or**  
PE 425, Biomechanics  
PE 360, Sports Medicine I and Lab  
PE 365, Sports Psychology  
PE 421, Sports Medicine II and Lab  
PE 444, Research Methods  
PE 449, Therapeutic Modalities and Pharmacology  
PE 450, Assessment and Evaluation of Athletic Injuries and Pathologies

#### Senior Year:

PE 370, Therapeutic Exercise  
PE 409, Advanced Athletic Training  
PE 428, Graded Exercise Testing  
PE 438, Administration of Athletic Training Programs  
PE 451, Therapeutic Exercise for Athletic Training  
PE 452, Administration/Psychosocial/Nutrition Issues in Athletic Training

### **Admission to Athletic Training Program**

The athletic training program is a very competitive and selective major. Students wishing to major in athletic training must meet all of the admission standards prior to being interviewed by the selection committee. Students will be selected into the program based on the number of student athletic trainer positions available, their academic achievements, and the quality of their essay and interview. The application to be accepted into the athletic training curriculum at Averett University will be submitted in the fall semester of a prospective student's sophomore year. There is a pre-professional phase in which students must meet certain requirements (listed below) in order to be allowed into the program. Students should contact the program director to get details regarding the application process.

Transfer students must meet the same requirements for acceptance. The transferred coursework must be equivalent to the Averett University curriculum and must meet all transfer acceptance requirements as set forth by the Averett University Registrar's office. The observation hours should be attained under a certified athletic trainer. These students will be considered on an individual basis with special circumstances given proper evaluation.

## **Requirements for Admission to the Athletic Training Program**

1. Read and sign technical standards of acceptance, submit a written application and attach résumé;
2. Complete at least 80 hours of observation under Clinical Supervisor;
3. Complete Averett University student observation skill sheet;
4. Have a cumulative GPA of 2.5 or higher;
5. Submit essay to Program Director;
6. Hold and maintain current First Aid/ CPR certifications;
7. Complete Physical Examination;
8. Complete the Hepatitis B Immunization or sign a declination form;
9. Complete Observation Skill Sheet;
10. Have Clinical Supervisor complete Student Evaluation.

The Program Director must receive all materials no later than November 1st or the previous weekday if November 1st falls on the weekend or a holiday.

These courses must be completed prior to admission to the student athletic training program. The student must earn a grade of C or better in each of these courses:

HTH 200, First Aid/ Safety  
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Issues  
PE 209, Introduction to Athletic Training

Students who meet the above criteria in the application process will be interviewed by the members of the athletic training selection committee. The interviews will begin approximately two weeks after November 1st. The students will then be selected based on the number of student athletic trainer positions available and their performances in their coursework, interview and essay.

Students interested in athletic training should contact the program director.

## **Technical Standards of Acceptance**

The Athletic Training Program at Averett University is a rigorous and intense program that places specific requirements and demands on the students enrolled in the program. An objective of this program is to prepare graduates to enter a variety of employment settings and to render care to a wide spectrum of individuals engaged in physical activity.

The technical standards set forth by the Athletic Training Program establish the essential qualities considered necessary for students admitted to this program to achieve the knowledge, skills, and competencies of an entry-level athletic trainer, as well as meet the expectations of the program's accrediting agency, the Commission on Accreditation of Athletic Training Education (CAATE).

Compliance with the program's technical standards does not guarantee a student's eligibility for the NATABOC certification exam.

Candidates for selection to the Athletic Training Program must demonstrate the following:

1. The mental capacity to assimilate, analyze, synthesize, and integrate concepts and problem solve to formulate assessment and therapeutic judgments and to be able to distinguish deviations from the norm.
2. Sufficient postural and neuromuscular control, sensory function, and coordination to perform appropriate physical examinations using accepted techniques; and accurately, safely and efficiently use equipment and materials during the assessment and treatment of patients.
3. The ability to communicate effectively and sensitively with patients and colleagues, including individuals from different cultural and social backgrounds. This includes, but is not limited to, the ability to establish rapport with patients and communicate judgments and treatment information effectively. Students must be able to understand and speak the English language at a level consistent with competent professional practice.
4. The ability to record the physical examination results and a treatment plan clearly and accurately.
5. The capacity to maintain composure and continue to function well during periods of high stress.
6. The perseverance, diligence, and commitment to complete the athletic training education program as outlined and sequenced.
7. Flexibility and the ability to adjust to changing situations and uncertainty in clinical situations.
8. Effective skills and appropriate demeanor and rapport that relate to professional education and quality patient care.

Candidates for selection to the athletic training program will be required to verify that they understand and meet these technical standards or that they believe that, with certain accommodations, they can meet the standards. In the event a student is unable to fulfill these technical standards, with or without reasonable accommodation, the student will not be admitted to the program.

The Athletic Training Technical Standards Committee will evaluate a student who states he/she could meet the program's technical standards with accommodation and confirm that the stated condition qualifies as a disability under applicable laws.

If a student states he/she can meet the technical standards with accommodation, then the University will determine whether it agrees that the student can meet the technical standards with reasonable accommodation; this includes a review of whether the accommodations requested are reasonable, taking into account whether accommodations would jeopardize clinician/patient safety, or the educational process of the student or the institution, including all coursework, clinical experiences and internships deemed essential to graduation.

## **Courses of Instruction in Athletic Training**

### **BIO 101 Introduction to Biology and Lab (4)**

This course is an introduction to the chemistry and metabolism of living organisms. Study of the scientific method, principles of ecology and genetics, the structural and physiological features of plant and animal cells and tissues and the principles of animal classification and evolutionary relationships will be included. Laboratory exercises designed to underscore these principles will accompany lecture material.

### **BIO 204, 205 Human Anatomy and Physiology and Lab I, II (4,4)**

A detailed study of the structure and function of the human body, its organs, and systems. BIO 204 includes the levels of organization found in the body, metabolism, integumentary system, skeletal system, muscular system, and nervous system. BIO 205 includes the endocrine system, cardiovascular system, respiratory system, digestive system, urinary system, fluid and electrolyte balance, and reproductive system. Lab included. Prerequisites: BIO101 and 103, or BIO 101 with a grade of C or better, or permission of instructor.

### **HTH 110 Contemporary Health Problems (3)**

A course dealing with the contemporary health problems confronting today's educators, with consideration of such areas as the use and abuse of drugs, changing sexual mores, overpopulation, ecology, and mental health. Offered each semester.

- HTH 200 First Aid and Safety (3)**  
 A study of the American Red Cross standard first aid course (for which certification is provided) plus additional information on emergency medical care and theory. Emphasis on developing an understanding of safety. Includes practical skills employed to care for injured persons as well as life support techniques. Offered each semester.
- HTH 320 Nutrition and Sports Performance (3)**  
 A course designed to teach nutrition and its effects upon athletic performance. Students will learn about foods, the diabetic athlete, steroids, and eating disorders that affect athletes. Students will also learn pre- and post-game meals, myths and facts. Offered Fall semester.
- PE 209 Introduction to Athletic Training (3)**  
 An introductory course in the care, recognition, and management of sports-related injuries. The student will examine the responsibilities of the athletic trainer, physical educator, and coach within an athletic training program. Students will gain clinical experiences related to the health care of the athlete. Offered Fall semester.
- PE 280 Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses (3)**  
 A study of the prevention of athletic injuries and illnesses. The student will examine methods to prevent trauma or conditions that adversely affect the health or performance of the athlete. Offered Spring semester.
- PE 315 Physiology of Activity (3)**  
 A study of the physiological effects of exercise and application of these effects to physical education. Offered each semester.
- PE 320 Kinesiology (3)**  
 A study of the science of human movement. Offered Spring semester.
- PE 360 Sports Medicine I and Lab (4)**  
 A study of the process of evaluation, identification and rehabilitative techniques for sports-related injuries as they pertain to the lower extremities of the body. The lab will utilize practical and hands-on instruction of evaluation, identification and rehabilitative techniques for sports related injuries and conditions as they pertain to the lower extremities and trunk. Prerequisites: BIO 204 or 205, or permission of instructor.
- PE 365 Sport Psychology (3)**  
 The study of psychological assessment techniques and intervention strategies in an effort to help individuals to achieve their optimal performance in physical activities. Areas of study include such topics as: Motivation and Performance, Personality and Behavior, Social and Cultural Aspects of Sport, Aggression, Attentional Focus, Self-Confidence, Anxiety and Arousal, and Coaching Behavior/Leadership Style. Offered each semester.
- PE 370 Therapeutic Exercise (3)**  
 A study of exercise principles and how they apply to injury rehabilitation. Students will learn how the body reacts to injury and healing and how exercise affects the healing phase. Students will learn how and when to apply various phases of rehabilitation as well as how to apply isometric, isotonic and isokinetic exercises. Emphasis is also on immediate, short, and long-term rehabilitation goals. Offered Spring semester.
- PE 409 Advanced Athletic Training (2)**  
 A course in which senior level athletic training students will gain experience and knowledge in contemporary aspects of athletic training. These issues may include, but are not limited to, orthotic and padding fabrication, pharmacology, general medical conditions, research methodology and job search preparation. Students will begin formally preparing to take the National Athletic Trainer Association – Board of Certification’s examination during this course. The course may also include site visitations to university hospitals in order to view anatomy labs, sports medicine facilities and resource centers. Prerequisite: Senior-level standing. Offered Fall semester

**PE 421 Sports Medicine II and Lab (4)**  
A study of the process of evaluation, identification and rehabilitative techniques for sports-related injuries as they pertain to the upper extremities of the body. The course will utilize practical and hands-on instruction of evaluation, identification, and rehabilitative techniques for sports-related injuries and conditions as they pertain to the upper extremities and trunk. Offered Spring semester.

**PE 428 Graded Exercise Testing (3)**  
A study of individual physiological needs to include special populations such as those with cardiovascular disease, respiratory illness, hypertension, etc. The student, upon completion of this course, will have learned how to develop programs of exercise and life-style modification. Offered Spring semester.

**PE 435 Therapeutic Modalities (3)**  
A course that involves a study of therapeutic modalities in a sports medicine setting. Emphasis is on the role of therapeutic modalities in pain management, the physiologic basis for use, clinical applications, and specific techniques of application. The student will learn how modalities play a role in injury rehabilitation. Offered Spring semester.

**PE438 Administration of Athletic Training (3)**  
A course that includes the organizing and administering of the training room and staff. Students will learn how to write résumés, purchase supplies, prepare a budget, and budget their time. Students will discover employment opportunities and ways to market their skills. Offered Fall semester.

**PE 444 Research Methods in Physical Education (3)**  
A course designed to introduce students to research in all the sport sciences and to afford them the opportunity to interpret refereed articles. Topics such as fitness testing and test construction will be investigated as well as research design methods, more advanced statistical analysis and survey research methods. Single subject design methods will be examined also. Offered Spring semester.

**PE 448 Prevention and Acute Care of Athletic Injuries (1)**  
Clinical instruction includes acute care of athletic injuries and illness. Risk management and injury prevention skills will also be discussed and demonstrated in a clinical setting. Students will learn hands-on techniques for equipment fitting and other athletic related testing. Offered each semester.

**PE 449 Therapeutic Modalities and Pharmacology (1)**  
Clinical instruction on the use of therapeutic modalities and pharmacology in an athletic training room/sports medicine setting. The emphasis will be placed on how modalities are used to control pain, inflammation and muscle firing in the rehabilitation process. Proper athlete/patient set-up and equipment utilization will be taught and evaluated. Proper education to the sports medicine population in the use and dispensing of pharmacological agents. Practical application will be the emphasis during this practicum experience. Offered each semester.

**PE 450 Assessment and Evaluation of Athletic Injuries and Pathologies (1)**  
This course addresses a wide range of evaluation and assessment techniques used in athletic training. Topics covered will range from general medical conditions to athletic-related injuries. Emphasis will be placed on obtaining a complete history and hands-on use of evaluation skills learned. Offered each semester.

**PE 451 Therapeutic Exercise for Athletic Training (1)**  
Clinical instruction on the use of therapeutic exercise principles and how they are applied in the rehabilitative setting. Exercise progressions will be discussed and demonstrated as well as the physiological effects of exercise. The student will learn hands-on techniques as well as proper utilization of various rehabilitative equipment. The student will be exposed to practical situations involving different rehabilitation protocols. Offered each semester.

**PE 452 Administration/Psychosocial/Nutrition Issues in Athletic Training (1)**  
Clinical instruction in administrative, psychosocial and nutritional issues in the athletic and clinical setting. This practicum setting will emphasize instruction, real life situation analysis of administration, nutrition and

psychosocial athletic training and sports medicine issues. The students will be exposed to real life clinical scenarios where they must utilize and develop problem solving and clinical skills in order to make the proper recommendations to the athlete and clinical subject. Offered each semester.

---

## BIOLOGICAL AND PHYSICAL SCIENCES (BIO, CH, PSC)

---

James S. Caldwell, Co-Chair  
Laura Meder, Co-Chair  
Jimmy Turner

Deborah M. DeMarey

A student who chooses a major in Biological and Physical Sciences may elect either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree. The student may choose from six concentrations: **Biomedical Sciences**, consisting of 35 semester hours in Biology and 16 semester hours in Chemistry/Physics; **Environmental Studies**, consisting of 39 semester hours in Biology courses and 16 semester hours in Chemistry; **Biology/Chemistry**, consisting of 20 semester hours in Biology, 20 semester hours in Chemistry, 8 semester hours in General College Physics, and 6 hours in Mathematics; **Medical Technology; Radiologic Technology;** and **Biology with Teaching Licensure (6-12)**. Alternatively, a student desiring to major in Biological and Physical Sciences, but who has career goals not consistent with any of the six concentrations, may consult with the chair of the department and design a course of study with those goals in mind. The course of study must be approved by the Biological and Physical Sciences faculty. This plan should be submitted as early as possible since some courses are not offered each year.

A degree in Biological and Physical Sciences will prepare the student for career opportunities in graduate study, professional schools, teaching, or in scientific research with government agencies, academic institutions or in various health fields. It is our goal to provide the best possible foundation upon which the student can build in the chosen area of concentration.

Students in all concentrations must attain a minimum grade point average of 2.5 for all major courses taken at Averett University in order to graduate. These major courses include all required for the degree, as well as all taken as electives in Biological and Physical Sciences.

Students in all concentrations must pass a comprehensive examination as a graduation requirement. The subject matter for the exam will encompass all core required courses for the degree; students must have at least junior standing to take the exam. Students not passing the exam will be given an opportunity to repeat it. The exam will be administered by the faculty and will be given once each semester. Passing grades are set by the faculty. Given the timing of the exam, all core courses should be completed before the senior year.

Any student who does not pass the comprehensive examination or who fails to meet the minimum grade point average of 2.5 may remain in the program until these criteria are met, providing the minimum requirements of the University are maintained.

## Concentration in Biology: Biomedical Sciences

This concentration prepares the student for further education in most professional programs (medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine, etc.), allied health programs (physician assistant, nursing, physical therapy, occupational therapy, etc.) and graduate programs in the biomedical sciences. This concentration is also suitable for students desiring careers in biomedical research in academic or commercial labs.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 103, General Zoology .....	4
BIO 203, Genetics.....	4
BIO 301, Microbiology.....	4
BIO 360, Cellular and Molecular Biology.....	4
BIO 461, Topics in Biomedical Sciences .....	3
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II.....	8

The student will take 12 hours from the following courses:

	Semester Hours
BIO 204, Human Anatomy and Physiology I.....	4
BIO 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology II .....	4
BIO 302, Immunology .....	4
BIO 303, Human Pathology/Medical Terminology .....	4
BIO 313, Pharmacology .....	4
BIO 399, Biology travel course .....	4

The student will take 8 hours from the following courses:

CH 305, 306, Organic Chemistry I, II .....	8
CH 401, Biochemistry .....	4
PSC 201, 202, General College Physics I, II .....	8
Total	51

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Biology: Biomedical Sciences

Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
BIO 103, General Zoology  
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II

Sophomore Year:

BIO 203, Genetics  
BIO 200 or higher level Recommended Elective  
BIO 301, Microbiology  
CH, PSC Recommended Elective

Junior Year:

BIO/CH Recommended Elective  
BIO 360, Cellular and Molecular Biology

Senior Year:

BIO 461, Topics in Biomedical Sciences  
CH Recommended Elective  
CH/PSC Recommended Elective

## Concentration in Biology: Environmental Studies

This concentration prepares the student for careers in local, state and federal governmental agencies, as well as careers in field biology. Students may also pursue further education in graduate programs in the environmental sciences or organismal biology.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 102, General Botany .....	4
BIO 103, General Zoology .....	4
BIO 203, Genetics <b>or</b>	
BIO 301, Microbiology .....	4
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II.....	8
BIO 215, Environmental Science .....	4
BIO 330, General Ecology.....	4
BIO 342, Environmental Policy and Law <b>or</b>	
BIO 462, Topics in Environmental Biology .....	3
CH 206, Biological Chemistry <b>AND</b>	
CH330, Environmental Chemistry <b>or</b>	
CH305, 306, Organic Chemistry I, II .....	8

The student will take 2 **hours** from the following courses:

BIO 399, Biology travel course .....	
BIO 400, Field Experience in Biological and Physical Sciences .....	
BIO 465, Biological Research .....	

The student will take 8 **hours** from the following courses:

BIO 304, Wetlands Ecosystems.....	4
BIO 309, Natural History of Virginia.....	4
BIO 311, Coastal Ecosystems.....	4
BIO 314, Environmental Sustainability.....	4
Total	55

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Biology: Environmental Studies

Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
 BIO 102, General Botany  
 BIO 103, General Zoology  
 CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II

Sophomore Year:

BIO 203, Genetics **or**  
     BIO 301, Microbiology  
 BIO 215, Environmental Science  
 CH 206, Biological Chemistry **or**  
     CH305, Organic Chemistry I

Junior Year:

BIO 330, General Ecology  
 CH306, Organic Chemistry II **or**  
     CH 330, Environmental Chemistry

Senior Year:

- BIO 342, Environmental Policy and Law **or**
- BIO 462, Topics in Environmental Biology
- BIO 300- or 400-level Recommended Elective
- BIO 300- or 400-level Recommended Elective
- BIO 400, Field Experience in Biological and Physical Sciences **or**
- BIO 465, Biological Research OR BIO 399, travel course

**Concentration in Biology: Biology/Chemistry**

This concentration prepares the student to pursue further education in pharmacy programs, other professional programs in the biomedical sciences and graduate programs in biochemistry. This concentration is also appropriate preparation for careers in laboratory research and testing in academic and commercial biochemistry labs.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 103, General Zoology .....	4
BIO 204, 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology I, II .....	8
BIO 301, Microbiology.....	4
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II.....	8
CH 301, Organic Chemistry I and Lab .....	4
CH 302, Organic Chemistry II and Lab.....	4
CH 401, Biochemistry .....	4
MTH 160, Statistics .....	3
MTH 201, Calculus I .....	3
PSC 201, 202, General College Physics I, II.....	8
Total	54

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Biology: Biology/Chemistry**

Freshman Year:

- BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
- BIO 103, General Zoology
- CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II
- Prerequisite math, if necessary (MTH 103, 151)

Sophomore Year:

- BIO 204, 25, Human Anatomy and Physiology I, II
- CH 305, Organic Chemistry I and Lab
- CH 306, Organic Chemistry II and Lab
- MTH 160, Statistics

Junior Year:

- BIO 301, Microbiology
- MTH 201, Calculus I
- PSC 201, 202, General College Physics I, II

Senior Year:

- CH 401, Biochemistry

## Concentration in Biology: Medical Technology

This concentration will prepare the student for a career in clinical labs in hospitals, doctor's offices, etc. The University offers a Bachelor of Science degree with a major in Medical Technology through an affiliation with Augusta Health, Fishersville, Virginia. Students may also have the opportunity to attend other accredited hospital programs. The program is designed to follow the standard procedures for the Bachelor of Science degree in Medical Technology—three years of college work and one year of clinical instruction and practice at a teaching hospital.

Although the University maintains the above affiliations with Augusta Health, admission to the clinical year is not guaranteed by the University. Each student is responsible for applying and gaining admission to the clinical year program at an accredited teaching hospital. Faculty in the Department of Biology will provide assistance to students seeking a clinical year affiliation.

The University will grant the equivalent of one year of college credit (30 semester hours) for the clinical period if the student is admitted to the program in an approved teaching hospital and satisfactorily completes the required work. During the fall semester of the senior year, the student must register for MT 400, Clinical Experience, and will pay a \$5.00 lab fee. This course carries no credit, nor is tuition charged for it.

In addition to the general education requirements, a student must complete the courses listed below prior to the clinical year. Additional courses may be required for admission by specific teaching hospitals. The program is approved by the Board of Registry of Medical Technology and the American Society of Clinical Pathologists.

	Semester Hours
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 103, General Zoology .....	4
BIO 204, 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology I, II .....	8
BIO 301, Microbiology.....	4
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II.....	8
CH 305, Organic Chemistry I and Lab .....	4
CH 306, Organic Chemistry II and Lab.....	4
Clinical experience (at hospital lab) .....	30
MT 400, Clinical Experience.....	<u>0</u>
Total	66

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Biology: Medical Technology

#### Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
BIO 103, General Zoology  
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II

#### Sophomore Year:

BIO 204, 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology I, II  
BIO 301, Microbiology

#### Junior Year:

CH 305, Organic Chemistry I and Lab  
CH 306, Organic Chemistry II and Lab

#### Senior Year:

Clinical experience (at hospital lab)  
MT 400, Clinical Experience

## Concentration in Biology: Radiologic Technology

For the student who is a Certified Radiologic Technologist, i.e., who has successfully passed the Technician's Registry Examination in Radiologic Technology, Averett offers a Bachelor of Science degree in Biology: Radiologic Technology. The University will allow up to 56 semester hours of elective credit to a student who has completed a hospital-based program in Radiologic Technology. Community college credits in Radiologic Technology will be transferred in the same manner that other community college credits are transferred.

In addition to general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 103, General Zoology .....	4
BIO 461, Topics in Biomedical Sciences .....	3
Biology Elective (300-400 level).....	8
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics .....	3
Total	22

## Sample Two-Year Course Sequence for Biology: Radiologic Technology

Junior Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
BIO 103, General Zoology  
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics

Senior Year:

BIO 300- or 400-level Elective  
BIO 300- or 400-level Elective  
BIO 461, Topics in Biomedical Sciences

## Concentration in Biology with Teaching Licensure: Grades 6-12

	Semester Hours
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 102, General Botany .....	4
BIO 103, General Zoology .....	4
BIO 203, Genetics.....	4
BIO 204, Human Anatomy and Physiology I.....	4
BIO 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology II .....	4
BIO 301, Microbiology.....	4
BIO 330, General Ecology.....	4
BIO 360, Cellular and Molecular Biology.....	4
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II.....	8
CH 305, 306, Organic Chemistry & Lab I, II.....	8
PSC 201, General College Physics I.....	4
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics .....	3
MTH 171, Applied Calculus or MTH 201, Calculus I .....	3
Total	62

The other General Education and Professional Education requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for teaching licensure in Biology may be found on page 151-153.

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Biology with Teaching Licensure

### Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
BIO 102, General Botany  
BIO 103, General Zoology  
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II  
MTH 171, Applied Calculus or MTH 201, Calculus I  
TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications

### Sophomore Year:

BIO 203, Genetics  
BIO 301, Microbiology  
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software  
ED 290, Foundations of Education (second semester)  
HIS 201 or 202, American History I or II  
HTH 220, Health and Fitness for the 21st Century  
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics  
PSC 201, General College Physics I  
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology

### Junior Year:

BIO 204, Human Anatomy and Physiology I  
BIO 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology II  
BIO 360, Cellular and Molecular Biology  
CH 305, 306, Organic Chemistry & Lab I, II  
ED 322, Educational Psychology  
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum  
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education  
PE Fitness Course

### Senior Year:

BIO 330, General Ecology  
BIO 300+ Elective  
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education  
ED 489, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education

## Minor

A student electing a minor in Biological and Physical Sciences will complete at least 18 hours, including at least 10 hours at the 300-400 level for which the prerequisites have been met. Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

## Courses of Instruction in Biological and Physical Sciences

### **BIO 101 Introduction to Biology and Lab (4)**

This course is an introduction to the chemistry and metabolism of living organisms. Study of the scientific method, principles of ecology and genetics, the structural and physiological features of plant and animal cells and tissues and the principles of animal classification and evolutionary relationships will be included. Laboratory exercises designed to underscore these principles will accompany lecture material.

### **BIO 102 General Botany and Lab (4)**

A survey of the plant kingdom with emphasis placed on morphology, physiology, taxonomic relationships including ecological and evolutionary principles. Field trips are taken, and plants and trees on the campus are studied. Prerequisite: BIO 101.

**BIO 103      General Zoology and Lab      (4)**  
A survey of the animal kingdom with emphasis placed on morphology, physiology, taxonomic relationships including ecological and evolutionary principles. Laboratory included. Prerequisite: BIO 101.

**BIO 104      Human Ecology      (4)**  
An introduction to the terminology, methodology, and worldview of biological science and the principles of ecology through a consideration of the impact of modern technology on the environment. Human Ecology is a biology course primarily for the nonscientist.

BIO 200      Medical Terminology      (1)  
This course is designed to provide the student an understanding of terminology used in the medical field. This course is designed to be taken in conjunction with BIO316, Human Pathology. Students wishing to take only this course without the corequisite must have the instructor's permission.

**BIO 203      Genetics and Lab      (4)**  
A study of the structure and function of DNA. The structure of genes and how they are used and regulated will be stressed, as well as the role of DNA as the foundation of heredity. Problem solving using classical Mendelian patterns of inheritance and variations on these patterns will be performed. Other topics include biotechnology, population genetics and the role of genetics in disease. Molecular genetic techniques and their applications in biotechnology will be stressed in the laboratory portion of the course. Prerequisites: BIO 101 and one other BIO course, or permission of instructor.

**BIO 204, 205   Human Anatomy and Physiology and Lab I, II      (4,4)**  
A detailed study of the structure and function of the human body, its organs, and systems. BIO 204 includes the levels of organization found in the body, metabolism, integumentary system, skeletal system, muscular system, and nervous system. BIO 205 includes the endocrine system, cardiovascular system, respiratory system, digestive system, urinary system, fluid and electrolyte balance, and reproductive system. Lab included. Prerequisites: BIO 101 with a grade of C or better, or BIO 101 **and** BIO 103, or permission of instructor.

**BIO 215      Environmental Science and Lab      (4)**  
The study of the interdependency and interconnectedness related to power (fossil fuel, nuclear, solar, and other alternatives). Air and water pollution, waste generation and disposal, wetlands, soils, and chemicals and water and sewage treatment methods will be discussed. Laboratory exercises related to these topics will be conducted.

**BIO 301      Microbiology and Lab      (4)**  
A study of the structure, classification, and function of micro-organisms as related to public health, industrial processes, and their roles in nature. Basic techniques are introduced in the laboratory, including isolation and identification of representative organisms. Prerequisites: BIO 101 with a grade of C or better, or BIO 101 **and** one other BIO course, or permission of instructor.

**BIO 302      Immunology and Lab      (4)**  
A study of the biological, chemical and genetic basis of the human immune response to various diseases. Critical reading of classical and current scientific literature will be stressed in the laboratory portion of the course. Prerequisites: BIO 101 and 103 and either BIO 203 or 301, or permission of instructor.

**BIO 303      Human Pathology/Medical Terminology      (4)**  
This course encompasses a study of the mechanisms underlying disease processes and their treatments in the human body. Causes of and clinical changes produced by diseases, as well as the body's response will be discussed in detail. Principles and methods of treatment will also be examined. This course will focus on non-infectious diseases, since a study of pathogens and the diseases they cause takes place in other courses. A study of medical terminology will comprise a large part of the laboratory portion of the course. Prerequisites: BIO 101 and one of the following courses: BIO 103, BIO 204, BO 205, BIO 301, or permission of instructor.

**BIO 304      Wetlands Ecosystems and Lab      (4)**

This course explores the ecology and biodiversity of inland and coastal wetland communities. Students will explore the biological and physical structure of major wetland types world-wide, with an emphasis being placed on the mid-Atlantic and Piedmont regions of the United States. Lectures focus on an interdisciplinary approach to understanding community composition and environmental fragility. Field experiences to mountain streams, piedmont lakes, eastern swamps, and coastal salt-marsh ecosystems will allow students an opportunity to conduct environmental monitoring, species identification, and to investigate ecological interactions. Prerequisites: BIO 101 and BIO 102 or BIO 103 or permission of instructor.

**BIO309      Natural History of Virginia      (4)**

A study of the plants and animals of Virginia and the surrounding regions. We will investigate the ecosystems, habitats, and biological diversity of Virginia, Western North Carolina, and West Virginia. This course is designed as a survey course to give the student insight into the natural richness of this region. Prerequisites: BIO 101 and permission of instructor.

**BIO311      Coastal Ecosystems      (4)**

A study of coastal ecological communities of the mid-Atlantic region of North America. We will investigate ecosystems, habitats, and biological diversity from the northern-most regions of North America to its southern most extent. Particular emphasis will be given to the mid-Atlantic region and the National seashores that have been designated as national treasures. This course is designed as a survey course to give the student insight into the natural richness of this region. Students will learn field sampling techniques, construct predictive models, and analyze case studies to obtain a greater sense of the complexities of these ever changing regions. Prerequisites: BIO 101, BIO 330, or permission of instructor. BIO 330 may be taken as a co-requisite.

**BIO313      Pharmacology      (4)**

This course introduces the basic concepts of pharmaceuticals, pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, and pharmacotherapeutics. The process of clinical calculations is introduced, as well as the major drug classifications. Students will additionally practice application of knowledge to patients. Drugs by body system and disease will be explored. Prerequisites: BIO 101; BIO 204, 205; CH 103 or CH 101 & 102; MTH 103 or permission of instructor.

**BIO314      Environmental Sustainability      (4)**

A study of the interrelationships toward a sustainable future. Learn to be better decision makers in the allocation and conservation of natural resources. Learn from the past, monitor the present, and make better decisions to affect positive change for the future. Prerequisites: BIO 101, BIO 330, or permission of instructor.

**BIO315      Research Methods in the Biological Sciences      (2)**

**This course provides students with a thorough understanding of biological research from hypothesis development and testing, research design, interpreting data, and understanding biological studies. These skills are required to be successful in research post-graduation or in graduate or professional school.**

**BIO316      Human Pathology      (3)**

**This course is designed to provide the student an understanding of the mechanisms underlying disease processes and their treatments in the human body. Causes and clinical changes produced by diseases, as well as the body's response will be discussed in detail. Principles and methods of treatment will also be examined. This course will focus on non-infectious diseases, since a study of pathogens and the diseases they cause takes place in other courses.**

**BIO 330      General Ecology and Lab      (4)**

A study of the interrelationships between plant and animal communities and their environment. Lab included. Prerequisites: BIO 101, 102, and 103, or permission of instructor.

**BIO 342      Environmental Policy and Law (Same as POS 342)      (3)**

A survey of environmental laws and regulations in the United States: who makes the laws and why, and who enforces the laws and how. Consideration will be given to the experience of other countries and to alternative paradigms of environmental protection.

**BIO 360 Cellular and Molecular Biology and Lab (4)**

The study of biological processes of the cell. Cell structure and basic housekeeping processes that all cells perform will be studied, as well as cell signaling and selected specialized cellular processes. Differences between the prokaryotic and the eukaryotic cell will be emphasized. Molecular biological techniques will be emphasized in the laboratory portion of the course. Prerequisites: BIO 101, 103, 203, CH 101 and 102, or permission of instructor.

**BIO400 Field Experience in Biological and Physical Sciences (1-4)**

An opportunity for students to gain practical experience in some area of biological or physical sciences. These may include (but are not limited to) medical, environmental, research or clinical lab settings. Students will take an active role in obtaining the internship. The project and details must be approved as appropriate by departmental faculty. The course will carry between 1 and 4 credits (to be determined by the department), depending on the nature and requirements of the project. Prerequisites: Biological and physical science majors with at least 75 semester hours credit and at least a 2.5 GPA. Depending on the site and nature of the project, there may be other requirements that the student must meet. Permission of instructor required.

**BIO415 Principles of Biochemistry (3)**

The overall goal of this course is for the student to gain a basic working knowledge of biochemical concepts necessary for further study in biochemistry at either the graduate or professional school level.



**CH 330 Environmental Chemistry and Lab (4)**  
A study of the sources, reactions, transport, effects and fates of chemical species in water, soil and air. A variety of techniques are used to illustrate these factors in lecture and laboratory, including sampling, analysis, computer modeling, bioassay and development of an environmental impact study. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102, 206, BIO 101, and BIO 102 or 103, or permission of instructor. Alternate years or on demand.

**CH 401 Biochemistry and Lab (4)**  
A study of the relationship between biology and organic chemistry. Topics include biomolecules (synthesis, structure, and function), intermediary metabolism, and the function of cell components. Laboratory work will accompany lectures. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102, 305, 306, BIO 101, 103, or permission of instructor. Alternate years or on demand.

**MT 400 Clinical Experience (0)**  
An opportunity for clinical experience in a hospital laboratory. Students who are enrolled at an approved hospital laboratory must register for this course in the fall semester of their senior year. The purpose of this registration is to assure communication with the student. No credit is awarded nor is any tuition charged. There is a fee.

**PSC 101 Survey of Physical Science and Lab (4)**  
A course designed to acquaint students with objectives, content, materials, scientific methods, and logic. Laboratory work oriented toward the development of practical science units and experiments.

**PSC 201, 202 General College Physics and Lab I, II (4,4)**  
A course which includes laboratory applications dealing with the concepts of mechanics, electricity, wave motion, sound, optics, and heat. Also includes a brief introduction to modern physics in areas of electronic processes, atomic theory, solid state, super-conductivity, and biophysics. Prerequisites: MTH 103, MTH 104, or permission of instructor.

---

## **BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (BSA)**

---

Peggy Wright, Chair  
Meaghan Byrne  
Brian Turner  
Chin-Chyuan Tai

The mission of the traditional Business Administration Department of Averett University is to offer students a broad-based and student-focused, business education grounded in the University's liberal arts tradition that provides students with a solid foundation in pursuing their careers, in furthering their education and in contributing to a rapidly changing global economy. Through courses of instruction, the department is dedicated to providing quality business programs by enhancing students' knowledge and helping them develop their full potential in communication, critical thinking, and problem solving skills.

The department provides programs for business students to succeed in profit, nonprofit, and government organizations or to enter graduate programs. Students may earn a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree with two or more concentrations in Business Administration by completing all requirements for all concentrations. However, only two concentrations within the major will be noted on the student's transcript. A minor in Business Administration is also available.

Students with a major in Business Administration must have 120 semester hours for graduation and must also achieve a 2.0 GPA for all courses in the major. The 2.0 may not include more than two grades of D. Business students are required to take business core courses in order to obtain common body knowledge. Then, business students may take concentration courses in selected specialty areas such as accounting, management science, or marketing management.

□

All students majoring in Business Administration must satisfactorily complete Mathematics 171, its equivalent, or a higher numbered math course, and Introduction to Statistics (MTH160). Students must also complete CSS113, Microcomputers and Application Software, or demonstrate proficiency with word processing, spreadsheet, and database programs.

To be eligible for graduation, all business seniors in the spring semester are required to participate in the Major Field Achievement Test (MFAT) in Business. The test is used as a tool to assess the quality of the program and the students' learning outcomes for improvement purposes.

## Core Requirements for All Concentrations in Business Administration

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

### Core Requirements

	Semester Hours
BSA 206, Business Communications .....	3
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I .....	3
BSA 305, Principles of Management .....	3
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing .....	3
BSA 325, Managerial and Cost Accounting .....	3
BSA 366, Production and Operations Management .....	3
BSA 370, Principles of Finance .....	3
BSA 434, Business Law .....	3
BSA493, Entrepreneurship .....	3
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics .....	3
ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics.....	<u>3</u>
Total	33

### Requirements for Business Administration: Accounting

In addition to the general education requirements and business “core” courses, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
Common Core Courses .....	33
BSA 320, Taxation of Individuals .....	3
BSA 343, Intermediate Accounting I .....	3
BSA 344, Intermediate Accounting II .....	3
BSA 345, Intermediate Accounting III .....	3
BSA 416, Taxation of Corporations and Other Business Entities .....	3
BSA 420, Auditing .....	3
BSA 422, Advanced Accounting .....	<u>3</u>
Total	54

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Business Administration: Accounting

Freshman Year:

CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

Sophomore Year:

BSA 206, Business Communications  
 BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I  
 ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics  
 ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics  
 MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics  
 MTH 171, Applied Calculus

Junior Year:

- BSA 305, Principles of Management
- BSA 310, Principles of Marketing
- BSA 320, Taxation of Individuals
- BSA 325, Managerial and Cost Accounting
- BSA 343, Intermediate Accounting I
- BSA 344, Intermediate Accounting II
- BSA 370, Principles of Finance

Senior Year:

- BSA 345, Intermediate Accounting III
- BSA 366, Production and Operations Management
- BSA 416, Taxation of Corporations and Other Business Entities
- BSA 420, Auditing
- BSA 422, Advanced Accounting
- BSA 434, Business Law
- BSA493, Entrepreneurship

**Requirements for Business Administration: Management Science**

In addition to the general education requirements and business “core” courses, the following courses are required:

	Semester hours
Common Core Courses .....	33
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership .....	3
BSA 354, Human Resources Management.....	3
BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making .....	3
BSA 444, Management Strategy .....	3
BSA 456, Business Forecasting.....	3
BSA 480, International Business .....	3
BSA449 or BSA elective... ..	3
	Total 54

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Business Administration: Management Science**

Freshman Year:

- CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

Sophomore Year:

- BSA 206, Business Communications
- BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I
- ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics
- ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics
- MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics
- MTH 171, Applied Calculus

Junior Year:

- BSA 305, Principles of Management
- BSA 310, Principles of Marketing
- BSA 325, Managerial and Cost Accounting
- BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership
- BSA 370, Principles of Finance
- BSA366, Production and Operations Management

Senior Year:

BSA 354, Human Resources Management

BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making

BSA 434, Business Law

BSA 444, Management Strategy

BSA449 or BSA elective

BSA 456, Business Forecasting

BSA 480, International Business

BSA 493, Entrepreneurship

**Requirements for Business Administration: Marketing Management**

The Business Administration: Marketing Management program is designed to assist students in their preparation for pursuing careers in areas such as selling, advertising and promotion, customer service or marketing management as well as for pursuing graduate study. This curriculum will provide the student opportunities to develop abilities that are necessary to pursue marketing or related careers in public and private sectors.

In addition to the general education requirements and business “core” courses, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours	
Common Core Courses .....	33	
BSA 352, Sales Management .....	3	
BSA 359, Marketing Research and Planning .....	3	
.....BSA 414, Social Marketing		3
BSA 418, Marketing Management .....	3	
BSA 419, Buyer Behavior .....	3	
BSA 444, Management Strategy .....	3	
BSA 480, International Business .....	3	
Total	54	

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Business Administration: Marketing Management**

Freshman Year:

CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

Sophomore Year:

BSA 206, Business Communications

BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I

ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics

ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics

MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics

MTH 171, Applied Calculus

Junior Year:

BSA 305, Principles of Management

BSA 310, Principles of Marketing

BSA 325, Managerial and Cost Accounting

BSA 419, Buyer Behavior

BSA 352, Sales Management

BSA 370, Principles of Finance

Senior Year:

BSA 359, Marketing Research and Planning  
BSA 366, Production and Operations Management

BSA 418, Marketing Management  
BSA 419, Social Marketing  
BSA 434, Business Law  
BSA 444, Management Strategy  
BSA 480, International Business  
BSA 493, Entrepreneurship

**Minor**

Students electing a minor in Business Administration must complete 18 semester hours as follows: BSA 221, plus 15 hours of BSA courses numbered 300 or higher. Up to two ECO courses numbered 200 or higher may be substituted for 6 hours of the aforementioned BSA courses numbered 300 or higher.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

**Courses of Instruction in Business Administration**

**206 Business Communications (3)**

This course is designed to improve written and oral communication skills within the context of the business environment. Students will learn to prepare various business letters, reports, and other forms of written communication. Decision-making and problem-solving techniques are emphasized through an introduction to case study methods. Students are introduced to electronic presentation media and encouraged to use other technological means to communicate with the professor and with each other. Prerequisite: ENG111 or permission of instructor.

**221 Principles of Accounting I (3)**

An introduction to elementary accounting concepts and procedures used in the accounting cycle and preparation of financial statements in accordance with Generally Accepted Accounting Procedures (GAAP) for business entities. Theoretical and “real world” treatment of financial statement elements and their impact on business decisions will be discussed in detail. Prerequisite: Sophomore standing or permission from the instructor.

**270 Personal Finance (3)**

The course will provide a comprehensive coverage of personal financial planning in the areas of cash management, career planning, management of consumer credit, effective decisions about housing and consumer purchases, legal protection, insurance, investment options, retirement and estate planning. Prerequisite: Sophomore standing or permission of the instructor.

**305 Principles of Management (3)**

This course introduces management and managerial functions. The subject matter is concepts, principles, policies, and practices necessary to accomplish managerial tasks. The theory of management, the application of theory to managerial situations, and the basic classification theory of the principles of management are emphasized. Prerequisites: BSA221 and BSA206 or permission from the instructor

**310 Principles of Marketing (3)**

Upon completion of this course, students will understand: the environment of marketing and consumer behavior; distribution; pricing; and promotion. They will acquire, demonstrate, and apply knowledge and theory of marketing techniques, both domestically and internationally, and will be able to demonstrate understanding and appropriate utilization of the principles, methods, and problems involved in the marketing and distribution of goods and services to both industrial and ultimate consumers. They will recognize present-day problems and policies connected with the sale and distribution of products, including the legal, social, and ethical issues in marketing. Prerequisite: BSA206 or permission from the instructor.

- 320 Taxation of Individuals (3)**  
An analysis of federal income tax law and its application to individuals. Includes income, exclusions, deductions, gains, losses, itemized deductions, depreciation, passive income including rents, investment income, tax credits and tax computations. Prerequisite: BSA221.
- 325 Managerial and Cost Accounting (3)**  
A study of accounting principles applied to planning, controlling and decision making at the operations level of management. Topics in cost accounting such as costs systems, analysis and behavior, and cost-volume-profit relationships will be covered. Other topics such as budgeting, decision-making techniques and capital budgeting and investment analysis will be discussed as well. Prerequisites: BSA221.
- 326 Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership (3)**  
A study of how people operate in organizations, how the structure of the organization can affect their performance and the key elements to organizational leadership. Case studies illustrating concepts regarding human behavior and development in individual, group and complex organizational settings will be used. Different leadership styles and approaches and their impact on organizational behavior will be studied also. Prerequisites: BSA305 or permission of the instructor.
- 343 Intermediate Accounting I (3)**  
The course presents the basic assumptions that underlie modern accounting in relation to the principles, procedures and methods that are applied in the preparation of financial statements and the role of accounting as an information system. The course examines the environment and structure of financial accounting, the accounting process, the proper presentation of financial statements and disclosures and income measurement and profitability analysis. International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) are integrated by topic throughout the course as well. Prerequisite: BSA221
- 344 Intermediate Accounting II (3)**  
The course continues to build on the basic assumptions that underlie modern accounting in relation to the principles, procedures, and methods that are applied in the preparation of financial statements as covered in Intermediate I. The course also examines in detail economic resources including inventories, operational assets and investments. Current liabilities, bonds, and long term debt will be discussed at length. International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) are integrated by topic throughout the course as well. Prerequisites: BSA221 and BSA343
- 345 Intermediate Accounting III (3)**  
The course continues to build on the basic assumptions that underlie modern accounting in relation to the principles, procedures, and methods that are applied in the preparation of financial statements as covered in Intermediate I and Intermediate II. The course also examines in detail complex liability and equity transactions including leases, income and deferred taxes, retirement benefits, common and preferred stock transactions, dividends and share based compensation (grants, options). The topic of how to address changes in accounting principles and errors is addressed and also the Statement of Cash Flow is covered in great detail in the final chapter. International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) are integrated by topic throughout the course as well. Prerequisites: BSA221, BSA343, and BSA344 or permission of instructor.
- 352 Sales Management (3)**  
The purpose of this course is to enable the student to understand critical management issues in the field of sales management. This will be accomplished, in part, through an applied managerial approach. Applications will aid in understanding the complexity of decision-making and will also aid in sharpening critical thinking skills. Emphasis will be on the roles and techniques of sales managers, as well as their impact on the organization, the employee, and society. Prerequisites: BSA310 or permission of instructor.
- 354 Human Resources Management (3)**

This course studies the direction of organizational systems that ensures human talent is used effectively and efficiently in reaching organizational goals. All organizations, both large and small, require employees to be recruited, selected, assessed, trained, and managed. They will be compensated, and in most cases, provided with benefits. These issues and the legal environment as it relates to our human resources, provide the framework for this constantly evolving course. Prerequisites: BSA305 or permission of instructor..

**359 Marketing Research and Planning (3)**

The purpose of marketing research is to help organizations make better marketing decisions. This class involves the exploration and hands-on application of a variety of marketing research techniques with the goal of collecting data in an efficient and effective manner. Emphasis on process-related issues with a focus on matching the information sought with an appropriate research method. Students will design, plan, execute, and evaluate a basic marketing research study. Prerequisites: BSA310, and MTH160 or permission of instructor.

**366 Production and Operations Management (3)**

This course will study both the quantitative techniques of operations research and decision science as well as the concepts and techniques related to the design, planning, control, and improvement of manufacturing and service operations. Analytical methods for solving management problems, construction of mathematical models and advanced quantitative decision techniques will be used for solving operational problems in manufacturing and service operations. The focus of this course will be on the application and interpretation of these analytical techniques and solutions. Prerequisites: MTH160 and BSA305

**370 Principles of Finance (3)**

This course provides a basic knowledge of the finance discipline, including the different ways that businesses can be formed, the types of financial markets available, and how capital investments and funding decisions are determined in a way to maximize a firm's value. Topics include a review of the time value of money; valuation techniques, such as net present value and internal rate of return; financial ration analysis; weighted average cost of capital; and divided policies. Prerequisites: BSA221, BSA325 or permission of instructor.

**400 Accounting Information Systems (3)**

A solid understanding of accounting information systems (AIS) is necessary to work efficiently in a business environment. This course is designed to help students understand basic AIS concepts including documentation, usage, modification, integration, report generation and internal control for these systems. The use of spreadsheets, word processors and packaged accounting software will be used during the course. This course will be taught in seminar format. Lecturing is not a major focus. Each student will be expected to research a number of topics on his or her own in order to complete assignments. Prerequisites: BSA221 and BSA343

**402 Quantitative Decision Making (3)**

An analysis of problems, quantification of data, and presentation of results, using the more advanced quantitative techniques for decision making. Included are quantitative model building, decision theories, inventory control models, forecasting models, Markov analysis, and linear programming and its application. Prerequisites: BSA366 and MTH160 or permission from instructor.

**414 Social Marketing (3)**

Social Marketing utilizes concepts from commercial marketing to influence social action. Specifically, Social Marketing provides students with the principles and techniques specific to practitioners and agencies with missions to enhance public health, prevent injuries, protect the environment, and motivate community involvement. Prerequisites: BSA310

**416 Taxation of Corporations and Other Business Entities (3)**

The course will cover federal income tax laws relating to Corporations and other entities. Topics will include formation, operation, and dissolution of corporations as well as compliance and planning issues. Issues relating to S Corporations, Partnerships, and to a lesser extent, other business entities such as trusts and estates, will also be discussed. Prerequisites: BSA221, BSA343, and BSA320 or permission of the instructor

**418 Marketing Management (3)**

This is the core course in marketing and it gives students a chance to apply marketing concepts in a variety of ways. The student must begin the class with a good foundation in the principles of marketing. The class will consist of a simulation, cases, and readings that will provide a practical approach to analyzing, planning, and implementing marketing strategy. Prerequisites: BSA221, BSA310, and MTH160

**419 Buyer Behavior**

The purpose of this course is to enable the student to understand critical management issues in the field of consumer behavior. This will be accomplished, in part, through a case method approach. Case study will aid in understanding the complexity of decision-making and will also aid in sharpening critical thinking skills. Emphasis will be on evaluating consumer behavior from the perspectives of the individual consumer, the organization, and society. Prerequisites: BSA310

**420 Auditing (3)**

The course presents a study of the world of auditing and other attest services using the conceptual, theoretical, and practical approach. The course introduces the student to the concept of being judgmental in conclusions in addition to using analytical and quantitative approaches to audit and other attest engagement issues. The balance sheet approach and cycle approaches are both discussed. Prerequisites: BSA221 and BSA343 or permission of instructor.

**421 Governmental and Not-for-Profit Accounting (3)**

An examination of the accounting process peculiar to government agencies—the methods, systems, and procedures involved in appropriating funds from the general fund, encumbered funds, unencumbered funds, and specialty funds, as well as the preparation of financial statements of governmental units. The processes and financial statements unique to not-for-profit organizations will be covered as well. Prerequisites: BSA221, BSA 343, BSA344, and BSA345 or permission of the instructor

**422 Advanced Accounting (3)**

An application of the fundamentals of accounting to complex transactions ranging from partnership organization and operation, liquidation, joint ventures, segment reporting, bankruptcy, corporate reorganization and consolidation. Prerequisites: BSA221, BSA 343, and BSA344 or permission of the instructor

- 425 Certified Public Accountant Problems (3)**  
A review of the general and specialized accounting problems and related fields which constitute the subject matter of the CPA examination, specifically, practical problems, auditing, business law, and accounting theory. Prerequisites: BSA 343 and 420.
- 429 Accounting Theory and Problems (3)**  
A critical examination and analysis of accounting principles with emphasis on the determination of cost, income, valuation, and statement presentation. Prerequisites: Senior status and permission of instructor.
- 434 Business Law (3)**  
A study of the fundamentals of legal applications in the framework of business, laws of contracts, negotiable instruments, property, agency, and bankruptcy. Prerequisites: BSA305 or permission of instructor.
- 444 Management Strategy (3)**  
A study of the application of business problem-solving and decision-making across the functional areas of business. Case studies and business simulations are used to explore the sources and varieties of complex problems confronting contemporary businesses. The focus of this course is on the business entity in its various environments. Prerequisites: BSA221, BSA305, and BSA310 or permission of instructor.
- 445 Seminar in Managerial Skills Development (3)**  
Develop personal, interpersonal, and group skills. The student develops, then demonstrates competency in each area through skills assessments, learning the skills, and coaching in each set of skills. Prerequisites: Senior status and BSA 305, 326, and permission of instructor.
- 449 Internship (1-12)**  
An opportunity to integrate the knowledge and skills gained in the classroom with an actual work experience. For each credit hour earned, the student spends a minimum of 45 hours of approved work experience with a cooperating organization. Each student develops, in cooperation with his instructor and workplace supervisor, a learning contract for the work experience and for the academic project associated with this course. Available with permission of instructor and a 2.0 cumulative grade point average. Graded Pass/Fail only.
- 456 Business Forecasting (3)**  
Forecasting is the process of estimation in unknown situations. This course considers theory of forecasting, choice among methods, and practical use of the methods. Specific methods are grouped into time series, causal, qualitative or judgment-based. Time series includes moving average and smoothing methods. Causal methods include linear and multiple regression as well as autoregressive integrated moving average (ARIMA; e.g., Box-Jenkins) methods. Judgmental methods (e.g., Delphi) are suited to situations lacking historical data and/or where expertise is available. Prerequisites: BSA221, MTH160, BSA366 or permission from instructor.
- 480 International Business (3)**  
An introduction to the global aspects of international business. This course integrates the basic concepts and skills of global finance, marketing, operations, trade, and management in an international environment. Students are expected to consider the impact of environmental issues, sociological-cultural factors, legal-political factors, economic factors, and the application of various techniques developed to meet these challenges. Prerequisites: BSA221, BSA305, BSA310 or permission of instructor.
- 492 Federal Taxation and Financial Planning (3)**  
A study of the tax consequences that attach to many common business transactions. The course demonstrates how different tax liabilities may occur to nearly identical economic events. It covers the basic rules governing tax law by constantly emphasizing practical results. Prerequisite: Permission of instructor.
- 493 Entrepreneurship with Focus on Small Business (3)**  
The goal of the course is to prepare the student to start-up a brand-new small business venture, from the initial idea for the business, through the completion of a comprehensive business plan. By working with this comprehensive process, learning will occur in evaluating various options on what business to start up; and on how best to enter that business so that there is a reasonable chance of success in the longer run. The learning is

achieved from active listening and participation in classroom lectures and discussions, from reading periodicals, from reading and discussing the textbook materials, from taking two quizzes and a final essay exam, and from participation in a Project Team business planning project to start a hypothetical new business. Prerequisites: BSA221, BSA305, BSA310, and BSA370 or permission of instructor.

---

## COMMUNICATION STUDIES/JOURNALISM

---

David E. Hoffman

Susan L. Huckstep

The purpose of this major is to prepare students as generalists in mass media. Students will be trained for both print and broadcast media professions, and the courses will incorporate both theory and practice. Emphasis in most courses will be upon writing. Students who complete the degree will be eligible for jobs in a variety of settings including newspaper offices, television and radio broadcast facilities, and organizations requiring writing, desktop publishing, and public relations skills. Students may also choose to enter graduate school.

Students must attain at least a 2.5 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

### Requirements for a Major in Communication Studies/Journalism

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

Core Courses	Semester Hours
COM/TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication .....	3
COM 201, Persuasion .....	3
COM 202, Mass Communication .....	3
COM/JR 440, Internship .....	3
JR 110, Introduction to Media .....	3
JR 152, Student Publications: Newspaper .....	3*
JR 330, Media Law and Ethics .....	<u>3</u>
Total	21

\*JR 152 is a one-credit hour class. Students must complete at least three semesters.

### Requirements for a Concentration in Communication Studies

In addition to the core requirements, the following Communication Studies related courses are required for students wishing to concentrate in Communication Studies:

Related courses	Semester Hours
COM/TH 300, Public Speaking .....	3
COM 301, Communications Theory .....	3
COM 302, Rhetorical Discourse and Society .....	3
COM 303/JR 303, Digital Media .....	3
9 hours of Communication Studies electives 200 level or above .....	<u>9</u>
Total	21

## Requirements for a Concentration in Journalism

In addition to the core requirements, the following Journalism courses are required for students wishing to concentrate in Journalism:

Related courses .....	Semester Hours
JR 115, News and Feature Writing .....	3
JR 225, Editorial and Current Affairs .....	3
JR 230, Editing and Layout .....	3
JR 303, Digital Media .....	3
JR 310, Broadcasting .....	3
Select 6 hours from any Journalism course 200 level or above.....	6
	Total <u>21</u>
	Total <u>42</u>

## Requirements for a Minor in Communication Studies

The following courses are required for the Communication Studies minor:

Minor Courses	Semester Hours
COM/TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication .....	3
COM 201, Persuasion .....	3
COM 301, Communications Theory .....	3
COM/TH 300, Public Speaking .....	3
6 hours of Communication Studies electives 200 level or above .....	6
	Total 18

## Requirements for a Minor in Journalism

The following courses are required for the minor in Journalism:

Minor Courses	Semester Hours
JR 110, Introduction to Media .....	3
JR 115, News and Feature Writing .....	3
JR 152, Student Publications: Newspaper .....	3*
JR 225, Editorial and Current Affairs .....	3
JR 230, Editing and Layout .....	3
Select a minimum of 6 semester hours from the following courses or from any special studies courses offered.	
JR 210, Photography	
JR 220, Public Relations	
JR 310, Broadcasting	
JR 411, Magazine Article Writing	
JR 440, Internship .....	6
	Total 21

\*JR 152 is a one-credit hour class. Students must complete at least three semesters.

Students must attain at least a 2.5 grade point average in the minor.

NOTE: To be admitted to Journalism courses numbered 300 or higher, students must have a grade of C or better in both ENG 111 and JR 115, and they must submit a portfolio of work completed in JR 115 and/or work completed for JR 152 or a professional publication. Students may also be admitted to 300-400 level courses with special permission from the instructor.

## Teaching Licensure Endorsement in Journalism

Students seeking teaching licensure must have a primary license in another field to which an endorsement in Journalism may be added.

For an added endorsement in Journalism, students must complete all requirements for the minor.

## Courses of Instruction in Communication Studies/Journalism

### **COM/TH 103 Introduction to Human Communication (3)**

The study of communication forms and contexts, including intrapersonal, interpersonal, and public. Emphasis on development of individual communicative competency in such areas as listening, reasoning, interviewing, small group, and nonverbal communication. Completion of ENG 111 is recommended as prerequisite.

### **COM 201 Persuasion (3)**

Course that focuses on persuasion theory, research and ethics. Students will learn the theories and practices of persuasion. They will be able to create and critically evaluate persuasive messages, understanding the role persuasive messages play in our culture.

### **COM 202 Mass Communication (3)**

Study of the characteristics of mass media and their social significance. Students will gain an understanding of the theories of mass communication, the media's power to influence our thoughts and actions, and learn how to apply these theories as media consumers and communications professionals.

### **COM 203 Organizational Communication (3)**

Focuses on the role of communication in creating effective organization. Emphasis is on organizational communication theory and practices that enable organizations to create/recreate their identities. Students will gain an understanding of organizational change, leadership, culture, and conflict.

### **COM 204 Interpersonal Communication (3)**

Focuses on the theory and practice of creating effective communication in interpersonal relationships. Includes an examination of the impact of technology on interpersonal relationships. Students will gain an understanding of the issues that affect interpersonal communication including ethics, perception, language, and listening, and acquire the skills that will enhance their own interpersonal communication competence.

### **COM 205 Small Group and Team Communication (3)**

Focuses on the theory and practice of creating effective communication in small groups/teams. Students will gain skills for leadership in small groups/teams as well as be able to analyze and recommend changes to group processes.

### **COM/JR 220 Public Relations (3)**

A course designed to give students the opportunity to combine theory and practice in developing public relations skills. Its purpose is to introduce students to the field of public relations through a study of the historical background and current image of public relations, and the laws and ethics of public relations. Students will learn the basics of writing for public relations and will put together graphic materials such as annual reports, brochures, and manuals. Alternate years.

### **COM/TH 300 Public Speaking (3)**

A course designed to build self-confidence in the student and to acquaint the student with the structural elements of various forms of public discourse working toward logical, coherent, and easy communication.

### **COM 301 Communication Theory (3)**

Students will explore the field's key communication theories as well as gain an understanding of the process of inquiry, theory development and evaluation. Students will learn to evaluate communication theories and apply these theories to their lives and careers. Students will also gain a foundational understanding of the issue of

epistemology, ontology, and axiology and their relationship to theory. Prerequisite: TH103/COM103; completion of one of the following, COM 202, 203, 204, or 205 is recommended.

**COM304 Rhetoric in Popular Culture (3)**

This course surveys the trends in the development of rhetorical theory and practice in the evolution from ancient Greece to the media-saturated, popular culture of today. Students will gain an understanding of message construction and effectiveness with particular emphasis on analyzing arguments presented by the media. Prerequisite: COM201

**COM/JR 303 Digital Media (3)**

This course will give students the opportunity to learn more about the societal impact of digital media and how the internet has changed the world. Though the students learn to better understand these special types of media, they will also develop and support an online blog dealing with a special interest, write for various online sites, develop online sources, edit visual and audio components to be posted on the internet, look at opportunities for careers in digital media, and study the legal and ethical issues of digital media.

**COM/JR 440 Internship (3)**

An opportunity for working and training with media. Students will perform assigned duties in a communications organization approved by the college and the department. Direction and evaluation will be a joint responsibility of the college instructor and the work supervisor. Prerequisites: 18 hours of Journalism courses, junior or senior status, 2.0 cumulative grade point average, and permission of instructor.

**JR 110 Introduction to Media (3)**

A course that deals with the historical, social, legal, and economic development of the mass media including newspapers, magazines, television, cable and satellite communication, radio, advertising, and public relations.

**JR 115 News and Feature Writing (3)**

A foundation writing course in which students are introduced to journalistic style, interviewing techniques, news writing, feature writing, and investigative reporting.

**JR 152 Student Publications: Newspaper (1-6)**

An opportunity for students to work on the university newspaper while receiving credit. A maximum of six semester hours of credit may be earned, with no more than one hour earned per semester. Students will have the opportunity to carry out all tasks necessary for putting together a student newspaper.

**JR 210 Photography (3)**

A basic study of 35mm photography which includes instruction in camera-handling, developing and printing black and white negatives, composition, lighting, and print manipulation. Students must provide a single lens reflex camera and materials. Permission of instructor. Lab fee charges. Alternate years.

**JR 225 Editorial and Current Affairs (3)**

A course in which the emphasis is on opinion writing (editorials, columns, criticism [e.g., movie reviews, book reviews, music reviews]). Students are introduced to research techniques required of opinion writers in the mass media, which include keeping up with current events. Students are required to keep up with current affairs on the campus, in the community, in the state and nation, and in the world. Prerequisite: JR 115.

**JR 230 Editing and Layout (3)**

An opportunity to develop graphic creativity by learning the basic elements of page layout and design, by learning how to write ancillary copy (e.g., headlines, captions and subheads), and by learning the major parts of desktop publishing by using Aldus Pagemaker and/or other desktop publishing programs. Students in this class get hands-on experience in layout by working with The Chanticleer, the student newspaper. Prerequisite: JR 115.

**JR 303 Digital Media (3)**

This course will give students the opportunity to learn more about the societal impact of digital media and how the internet has changed the world. Though the students learn to better understand these special types of media,

they will also develop and support an online blog dealing with a special interest, write for various online sites, develop online sources, edit visual and audio components to be posted on the internet, look at opportunities for careers in digital media, and study the legal and ethical issues of digital media.

**JR 310 Broadcasting**

**(3)**

A course which introduces students to basic news and script writing for radio and television. The exercise of news judgment and preparation of scripts for broadcast will be key elements of the course. In addition, this course will provide hands-on experience in writing and taping news and feature items, commercials, promotions, and public service.

**JR 330 Media Law and Ethics**

**(3)**

Students will study various key federal and state cases relating to print and broadcast media. They will use a law library for research. In addition to learning the rights of journalists, students will also be taught the responsibilities of the media in modern society, and they will deal with ethical issues related to the mass media. Alternate years.

**JR 411 Magazine Article Writing**

**(3)**

An opportunity for students to write and market nonfiction articles for general periodicals. Magazine analysis, writing style development, and manuscript preparation are areas which will be covered. Alternate years.

---

## COMPUTER AND INFORMATION SCIENCE (CSS)

---

Steven R. Lemery

Sergey Samoilenko, Chair

Averett offers Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Science degrees in two majors, Computer Science and Computer Information Systems. In addition, Averett offers minors in Computer Science and in Computer Information Systems to complement any major.

The purpose of courses in this department is to train students in the techniques, theory, and applications of computer science and information systems as well as in specific programming languages and computer systems. The two majors give students sufficient training to pursue any of the following:

1. A career in the public or private sector in a computer-related position.
2. Additional education at the graduate level in the areas of computer science, business, management information systems, and other quantitative fields.

The Computer Science Department believes the strengths of its programs are a direct result of its dedicated students, abundant and modern computer facilities and laboratories, small classes which allow good student-faculty relationships, personal attention from a faculty that places emphasis on quality teaching, and a faculty that is interested in and constantly aware of individual progress.

Students must attain at least a 2.0 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

### Requirements for a Major in Computer Science:

In addition to the General Education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I .....	4
CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II .....	4
CSS 231, Programming in C++ .....	4
CSS 333, Data Structures .....	3
CSS 361, Topics in Computer Science I .....	3
CSS 372, Networks and Internets .....	3
CSS 381, Architecture and Assembly Language .....	3
CSS 411, Modeling and Simulation .....	3
CSS Elective at the 300-400 level .....	3
MTH160, Introduction to Statistics .....	3
MTH 201, 202, 301, Calculus I, II, III .....	9
MTH 211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics .....	3
MTH Elective at the 300-400 level .....	3
Total	48

A student without previous computer experience would normally be expected to begin with CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software.

Suggested Electives: other computer science courses, courses in all areas of the sciences, mathematics, accounting and other business courses, and economics.

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Computer Science

#### Freshman Year:

- CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I
- CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II
- MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics
- MTH 201, 202, Calculus, I, II

#### Sophomore Year:

- CSS 231, Programming in C++
- CSS 331, Data Structures
- MTH 211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics
- MTH 301, Calculus III

#### Junior Year:

- CSS 361, Topics in Computer Science I
- CSS 372, Networks and Internets
- MTH Elective at 300-400 level

#### Senior Year:

- CSS 381, Programming in Assembly and Machine Language
- CSS 411, Modeling and Simulation
- CSS Elective at 300-400 level

### Minor in Computer Science

The department offers a minor for those students desiring a strong support area for their major. The following courses are required for the minor in Computer Science:

	Semester Hours
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software .....	3
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I .....	4
CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II .....	4
CSS 231, Programming in C++ .....	4
CSS Electives (2) at the 300-400 level .....	<u>6</u>
Total	21

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

## Requirements for a Major in Computer Information Systems

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BSA 206, Business Communication (pre-requisite course) .....	3
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I .....	3
BSA 305, Principles of Management .....	3
BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making .....	3
BSA 434, Business Law .....	3
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software .....	3
CSS 114, Web Authoring and Office Applications .....	3
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I .....	4
CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II .....	4
CSS 271, Topics in Operating Systems .....	3
CSS 351, System Administration .....	3
CSS 372, Networks and Internets .....	3
CSS 375, Principles of Databases .....	3
CSS 401, Project in Computer Science .....	1
CSS Elective at 200 – 400 level .....	3
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics .....	3
MTH 171, Applied Calculus or MTH 201 Calculus I .....	3
Total	51

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Computer Information Systems

#### Freshman Year:

CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software  
 CSS 114, Web Authoring and Office Applications  
 MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics  
 MTH 171, Applied Calculus

#### Sophomore Year:

BSA 206, Business Communication  
 BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I  
 BSA 305, Principles of Management  
 CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I  
 CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II

#### Junior Year:

BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making  
 CSS 271, Topics in Operating Systems  
 CSS 372, Networks and Internets  
 CSS elective 200-400 level

#### Senior Year:

BSA 434, Business Law  
 CSS 351, System Administration  
 CSS 375, Principles of Databases

## Minor in Computer Information Systems

The following courses are required for a minor in Computer Information Systems:

	Semester Hours
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software .....	3
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I .....	4
CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II .....	4
CSS 305, Concepts of Information Systems .....	3
CSS 361, Topics in Computer Science I .....	3
CSS 372, Networks and Internets .....	3
CSS 445, Internship .....	<u>3</u>
Total	23

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

## Human-Computer Interaction Program

Averett University offers a Human-Interaction Program (HCI) program for students choosing as their primary major either art, computer science, computer information systems, or psychology. The program is administered by the department of psychology in consultation with an advisory committee comprised of faculty members drawn from each of the contributing departments. The program is described on page 140.

## Teaching Endorsement

An endorsement in Computer Science may be added to another primary teaching area upon the successful completion of selected courses. In addition to the General Education requirements, the requirements for the endorsement are:

	Semester Hours
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software .....	3
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I .....	4
CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II .....	4
CSS 231, Programming in C++ .....	4
CSS 251, Introduction to COBOL Programming .....	4
CSS 305, Concepts of Information Systems .....	3
CSS 333, Data Structures .....	3
CSS 361, Topics in Computer Science I .....	3
CSS 372, Networks and Internets .....	3
CSS 411, Modeling and Simulation .....	3
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum .....	2
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education .....	3
Two of the following: MTH 103, MTH 151, MTH 111, MTH 112, MTH 171, MTH 201, or any higher-numbered Math course .....	<u>6</u>
Total	45

## Courses of Instruction in Computer and Information Science

### 113 Microcomputers and Application Software

(3)

An introduction to computers and software application packages. Topics include hardware, DOS, windows, an introduction to the Internet, word processors, spreadsheets, databases, and presentations. No previous computer experience required.

- 114 Web Authoring and Office Applications (3)**  
Intermediate and advanced topics in office application software and authoring for the web. Topics include HTML, Java Script, style sheets, macros, user interface issues in databases, and linking databases with web pages. Prerequisite: CSS 113.
- 211 Introduction to Programming I (4)**  
A first course in programming. In addition to coding, debugging, and designing programs, topics include fundamentals of object-oriented design, design of user interfaces, loops, branching, static lists, sorting and searching, data types, and creating data files. Prerequisites or corequisites: MTH 103 or equivalent and, CSS 113 or equivalent.
- 212 Introduction to Programming II (4)**  
A continuation of CSS 211 emphasizing advanced programming techniques and theory. Topics include graphics, sorting, accessing database files, object linking and embedding, dynamic link libraries, and dynamic lists. Prerequisite: CSS 211.
- 231 Programming in C++ (4)**  
An extensive study of object-oriented programming using the C++ language. In addition to fundamentals of programming in C++, topics include pointers, linked lists, classes and data abstraction, and recursion. Prerequisites: CSS 212 or equivalent. Alternate years.
- 235 Programming in Java (4)**  
An extensive study of object-oriented programming using the Java language. In addition to the fundamentals of Java, topics include programming for the web, designing user interfaces, and client/server programming.
- 251 Introduction to COBOL Programming (4)**  
A first course in computer programming using the COBOL language. In addition to designing, coding, and debugging programs, topics include loops, branches, lists, sorts, searches, and structured programming. Prerequisite: MTH 103 or equivalent. Alternate years.
- 271 Topics in Operating Systems (3)**  
Installation, use, and structure of modern operating systems. Operating systems covered include operating systems in the Windows and UNIX families. Topics include kernel structure, driver structure, command line interfaces, memory management, file systems, and virtual machines. Prerequisites: CSS 211 or higher.
- 305 Concepts of Information Systems (3)**  
A course designed to cover the basics of computer information systems, including transaction processing, decision support, and management information systems. Other topics include hardware and data storage options, software applications, databases, user support, networks and the Internet, security, the systems development life cycle, and social and ethical issues in the computer industry. Prerequisites: CSS 113, 211.
- 333 Data Structures (3)**  
A study of advanced concepts in the area of data structures. Topics include trees, lists, files, stacks, queues, heaps, program correctness, complexity analysis, and algorithmic design. Prerequisite: CSS 235 or equivalent. Alternate years.
- 351 System Administration (3)**  
Maintenance, setup, and troubleshooting issues for servers and networks. Server operating systems will include Windows and UNIX families. Topics include file services, web services, print services, database services, and client setup. Prerequisite: CSS 211 or higher.
- 361, 362 Topics in Computer Science I, II (3,3)**  
An advanced study of selected topics in computer science such as operating systems, information systems, data base management systems, algorithms, systems design, artificial intelligence, networks and communications, and digital electronics. Prerequisite: CSS 212 or 251. Alternate years.

**372 Networks and Internets (3)**

A study of physical and logical aspects of local and wide area networks. Topics include the OSI model, network topologies, communication protocols, media, hardware, and issues of network administration. Prerequisites: CSS 212 or equivalent. Alternate years.

**375 Principles of Databases (3)**

A study of the design of databases, focusing on relational database design. Topics include data modeling, normalization, queries, SQL syntax, constraints, security and recovery, and large-scale databases. Hierarchical, Network, and Object-Oriented designs are also introduced. Prerequisite: CSS 113 or 211.

**381 Architecture and Assembly Language (3)**

An introduction to programming in assembler and machine language. Topics include register manipulations, addressing techniques, interrupt routines, string processing, binary arithmetic, bit manipulations, and internal data storage such as hexadecimal and two's complement. Prerequisites: CSS 212 or 231. Alternate years.

**401 Project in Computer Science (1)**

A capstone experience for students to tie together topics that extend across courses. The student will prepare a paper and an oral presentation. Topics that may be pursued include topics in the history of computing, societal effects of information technology, and the writing of user manuals for software. This course is designed for students to work independently. Prerequisite: Senior status.

**411 Modeling and Simulation (3)**

A capstone course in modeling and simulation using previously studied languages and including at least one major programming project. Topics include a survey of simulations, iterated function systems, cellular automata, predator-prey models, random number generation, and random distributions and applications. Prerequisites: CSS 212 or 231 and, MTH 301 or consent of instructor. Alternate years.

**445 Internship (1-6)**

A supervised work experience that requires the student to apply computer skills in a professional environment. For each credit hour earned, the student spends a minimum of 45 hours of approved work experience with a cooperating organization. Graded on a Pass/Fail basis only. Prerequisite: Permission of instructor and a 2.0 cumulative grade point average.

---

## **CRIMINAL JUSTICE (CRJ)**

---

Laura L. Hartman, Co-Chair  
Steven Wray, Co-Chair

Adrienne Brune

Averett offers a four-year Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice designed to give the student a broad-based professional preparation for his/her chosen career.

Students who have completed an Associate Degree in criminal justice (or equivalent) from another accredited college may choose to pursue a Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice in a 2+2 program. The 60 hours required for this degree are designed to give the student a well-balanced educational experience and to provide professional development for his/her chosen career. Descriptions for Sociology courses may be found in the Sociology section of this catalog on page 204.

A major in Sociology/Criminal Justice allows students to prepare for entry into any of hundreds of jobs available today. The curriculum provides an excellent background for becoming a police officer, crime scene investigator, probation and parole officer, or special agent for the FBI and other agencies. This major is a solid background for law school.

Students examine the areas of criminal law, prisons, court processes and procedures, the Constitution, and police procedures. An internship in one of the criminal justice agencies or departments allows students to experience for themselves what professionals do in these occupations.

A four-year program in Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice is also available to Averett students. This degree program is designed to qualify students for direct entry into careers in Criminal Justice that require pilot skills. Such careers include drug enforcement agents, government criminal justice agencies and FAA Investigators. The outline of the program requirements is found in the Aeronautics section of this catalog, beginning on page 50. Descriptions of the courses in Aeronautics begin on page 51 of this catalog; descriptions of the Sociology courses are found in the Sociology section of this catalog, beginning on page 204.

Students must attain at least a 2.0 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

### **Sociology/Criminal Justice (4-year Program)**

The Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice as a four-year program at Averett University requires courses in Sociology and in Criminal Justice.

Criminal Justice is a growth area in the contemporary job market. Averett's program allows students to prepare themselves for entry into any of hundreds of criminal justice occupations available today. The curriculum provides an excellent background for becoming a lawyer, police officer, crime scene investigator, probation and parole officer, or special agent for the F.B.I. and other agencies. The curriculum in Criminal Justice offers the opportunity to examine the areas of criminal law, prisons, court processes and procedures, the Constitution, and police procedures. An internship in one of the criminal justice agencies or departments allows students to experience for themselves what professionals do in these occupations.

## Requirements for a Major in Sociology/Criminal Justice (4-year Program)

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CRJ 301, Criminal Justice <b>or</b> SOC 216, Criminology .....	3
CRJ 387, Criminal Law .....	3
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics .....	3
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology.....	3
SOC 470, Research Methods .....	3
Sociology or Criminal Justice electives.....	<u>21</u>
Total	36

A Sociology or Criminal Justice Research Project is required. This is a substantial research paper involving original research. CRJ 440, CRJ 445, CRJ 488 or SOC 445 will meet these requirements. Also, an independent study with guidance by a full-time department faculty member with the goal of producing an original quantitative or qualitative research paper will meet this requirement.

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Sociology/Criminal Justice (4-year Program)

Freshman Year:

SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology

Sophomore Year:

MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics

CRJ 301, Criminal Justice **or**

SOC 216, Criminology

SOC or CRJ Elective

SOC or CRJ Elective

Junior Year:

CRJ 387, Criminal Law

SOC or CRJ Elective

SOC or CRJ Elective

Senior Year:

SOC or CRJ Elective

SOC or CRJ Elective

SOC or CRJ Elective

SOC 470, Research Methods

### Sociology/Criminal Justice (2+2 Program)

The Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice may be elected by students who have completed an associate's degree from another accredited college prior to enrolling at Averett. The program in Sociology/Criminal Justice is designed for the student who wishes to pursue a career in criminal justice, law enforcement, or criminal law. A student electing this option must complete the requirements listed below either through transfer credit or courses taken at Averett. Students must have at least 60 senior college hours and at least 120 total hours in order to graduate. The final 30 hours must be completed at Averett.

## Requirements for a Major in Sociology/Criminal Justice (2+2 Program):

	Semester Hours
CRJ 387, Criminal Law .....	3
CRJ 440, Senior Seminar <b>or</b> CRJ 445, Internship <b>or</b> CRJ/SOC 488, Criminal Procedure .....	3
CRJ or SOC Electives .....	18
ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research .....	3
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature.....	3
Fine Arts (any which meet General Education requirements).....	6
MTH 103, Principles of Mathematics.....	3
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics .....	3
Religion or Philosophy Elective .....	3
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology.....	3
SOC 470, Research Methods.....	3
Other electives to equal at least 60 senior college hours .....	<u>varies</u>
Total	51

A Sociology or Criminal Justice Research Project is required. This is a substantial research paper involving original research. CRJ 440, CRJ 445, CRJ 488 or SOC 445 will meet these requirements. Also, an independent study with guidance by a full-time department faculty member with the goal of producing an original quantitative or qualitative research paper will meet this requirement.

## Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice Program

The Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice is a four-year program at Averett University and requires courses in Aeronautics and Criminal Justice. Specific course requirements for the program may be found in the Aeronautics section of this catalog, page 50.

## Criminal Justice/Sociology IDEAL Programs

These degree programs are offered via distance learning (IDEAL) and are available to adult learners in the military, police departments, and corrections facilities. The courses are delivered electronically with contact hours where practical and feasible.

**Requirements for a Bachelor of Arts in these fields** are the same except that the student is required to take MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics, and no other mathematics course. In addition, the student must complete the intermediate level of proficiency (second year) in any foreign language.

## Major Requirements for Sociology/Criminal Justice (IDEAL) Program

In addition to the general education courses, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CRJ 301, Criminal Justice .....	3
CRJ 304/SOC 304, Police in America .....	3
CRJ 340/SOC 340, Juvenile Delinquency and Justice .....	3
CRJ 375/SOC 375, Corrections .....	3
CRJ 387, Criminal Law .....	3
CRJ 407, Courts and Trials.....	3
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology.....	3
SOC 216, Criminology .....	3
SOC 317, American Minorities .....	3
SOC 470, Research Methods.....	3

Electives (select four courses from the following)	
CRJ 329/SOC 329, Drugs and Substance Abuse	
CRJ 352, Criminal Investigation	
CRJ 445, Criminal Justice Internship	
CRJ 488, Criminal Procedure	
PSY 200, Effective Behavior	
PSY 219, Social Psychology <b>or</b>	
SOC 309, Society and the Individual	
SOC 306, Marriage and the Family .....	<u>12</u>
	Total 42

**Major Requirements for Sociology/Criminal Justice (IDEAL) Program for Law Enforcement Professionals**

In addition to the general education courses, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CRJ 301, Criminal Justice .....	3
CRJ 304/SOC 304, Police in America.....	3
CRJ 340/SOC 340, Juvenile Delinquency and Justice .....	3
CRJ 375/SOC 375, Corrections .....	3
CRJ 387, Criminal Law .....	3
CRJ 407, Courts and Trials.....	3
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology.....	3
SOC 216, Criminology .....	3
SOC 317, American Minorities .....	3
SOC 470, Research Methods .....	3
Electives (select four courses from the following)	
BSA 305, Principles of Management	
CRJ 329/SOC 329, Drugs and Substance Abuse	
CRJ 352, Criminal Investigation,	
CRJ 445, Criminal Justice Internship	
CRJ 488, Criminal Procedure	
PSY 200, Effective Behavior,	
POS 215, American National Government,	
PSY 219, Social Psychology	
SOC 306, Marriage and the Family	
SOC 309, Society and the Individual .....	<u>12-13</u>
	Total 42-43

**Major Requirements for Sociology/Criminal Justice (IDEAL) Program for Corrections Professionals** (officers presently working in the field of corrections)

In addition to the general education courses, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CRJ 301, Criminal Justice .....	3
CRJ 303/SOC 303, Community Corrections.....	3
CRJ 340/SOC 340, Juvenile Delinquency and Justice .....	3
CRJ 375/SOC 375, Corrections .....	3
CRJ 387, Criminal Law .....	3
CRJ 407, Courts and Trials.....	3
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology.....	3
SOC 216, Criminology .....	3
SOC 317, American Minorities .....	3

SOC 470, Research Methods .....	3
Electives (select four courses from the following)	
BSA 305, Principles of Management <b>or</b>	
SOC 309, Society and the Individual	
CRJ 329/SOC 329, Drugs and Substance Abuse	
CRJ 445, Criminal Justice Internship	
PSY 219, Social Psychology	
PSY 200, Effective Behavior	
PSY 305, Abnormal Psychology	
SOC 306, Marriage and the Family .....	<u>12</u>
Total	42

## Minor

Students electing a minor in Criminal Justice must complete 18 semester hours, including CRJ 301 or SOC 216, and 15 hours of Criminal Justice electives.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

## Courses of Instruction in Criminal Justice

- 105 Crime Scene Investigation (3)**  
 Crime scene investigation methods are examined. Evidence about time of death, cause of death, and infliction of wounds is applied to cases. Autopsy evidence, poisons, body identification, firearms and blood spatter analysis is investigated. Offered spring semesters.
- 301 Criminal Justice (3)**  
 An overview of the criminal justice system in the United States. Emphasis is placed on the profession of police officer and the problems encountered in crime scene analysis, police discretion, and relationships with the larger society. The workings of the courts are examined with reference to the roles of the attorneys, judges, and defendants. The basic problems of the prison system and possible alternatives are explored. Prerequisite: Sophomore status or above. Offered spring semesters.
- 303 Community Corrections (3)**  
 An examination of the different community-based correction alternatives outside of jails and prisons. Emphasis is placed on probation and parole. Also examined are current treatment programs such as electric monitoring, house arrest, day-treatment, boot camp, and fines.
- 304 Police in America (3)**  
 A course that examines the role of the police in American society. Topics include the history of the police, development of different police agencies, police discretion, police administration, police organizations, deadly force, and community policing. Offered fall semesters.
- 329 Drugs and Substance Abuse (Same as SOC 329) (3)**  
 An examination of drugs and substance abuse in American society. The student will examine the social, physical, and mental effects that drugs have on the user, as well as the impact they have on the family and society. Major issues include addiction, recovery, treatment, rehabilitation, and relapse prevention. Offered spring semesters.
- 340 Juvenile Delinquency and Justice (Same as SOC 340) (3)**  
 An examination of the causes of juvenile delinquency, sociological theory, and the responses of the legal system. The extent of juvenile delinquency, the organization of police, judicial, and correctional response to juvenile offenders, the legal developments in statutory and case law, and the future of this system are examined. Offered fall semesters.

- 352 Criminal Investigation (3)**  
An overview of criminal investigation techniques with an emphasis on crime scene investigation and crime laboratory developments. Recent developments in the field include DNA research, trace physical evidence, fingerprint developments, and specific crime analysis techniques. Prerequisite: Sophomore status or above. Offered fall semesters.
- 375 Corrections (Same as SOC 375) (3)**  
A survey of prisons, jails, and correction alternatives in the United States. Topics include federal, state, and local correctional facilities, sentencing, the prison experience, community correctional programs, probation and parole. Prerequisite: SOC 101. Offered alternate years.
- 387 Criminal Law (3)**  
An examination of the elements of criminal laws and the defenses associated with them. Specific crimes of murder, burglary, robbery, rape, traffic offenses, larceny, embezzlement, arson, and other crimes are discussed. Basic criminal procedure questions of search and seizure are examined. The new changes and trends in criminal law are discussed. Offered fall semesters.
- 407 Courts and Trials (3)**  
A detailed examination of the courtroom procedures and the roles and responsibilities of the judge, the prosecutor, defendant, and police officer. Topics discussed include the structure of the courts, the steps in prosecution, the trial, and sentencing. Prerequisite: Sophomore status or above. Offered alternate years.
- 440 Senior Seminar (3)**  
A capstone course for the major. The student will complete a project combining theory, research, and evaluation methods on a selected topic in the major. A portion of the course will be devoted to career development. Prerequisite or corequisite: SOC 470. Offered spring semesters.
- 445 Criminal Justice Internship (3)**  
A supervised work experience in a setting that requires the student to observe and participate in one field of criminal justice. The student uses the knowledge and skills acquired in the classroom and applies them within a criminal justice agency. Prerequisite: 2.0 cumulative grade point average and permission of instructor. Offered each semester, including summer.
- 488 Criminal Procedure (3)**  
A course that examines the main criminal procedure law and search and seizure issues in modern criminal justice. The major procedures and laws that relate to upholding the criminal justice system, including the U. S. Constitution and federal and state legislation are examined. Court cases and legal analysis are applied to the reading of appellate court decisions. Offered spring semesters.

---

## EARLY CHILDHOOD EDUCATION

---

The Governor of the Commonwealth of Virginia unveiled a program to improve early childhood education in Virginia. State approved child care centers must demonstrate that 50% of the teaching staff at these centers will have four-year baccalaureate degrees. To meet that need, Averett has entered into an articulation agreement with Danville Community College to help these child care teachers earn their degrees.

Averett offers a Bachelor of Applied Science degree in Early Childhood Education. Only students who have completed an Associate of Applied Science degree in Early Childhood Education from Danville Community College will be accepted into this program. A prescribed number of courses at DCC will be supplemented by one of five potential areas of concentration: Business, Health/Physical Education, Humanities, Social Sciences, and Spanish. Each of those areas requires 18 semester hours to be taken at Averett. In addition, students will complete a core of education-related courses taught on Averett's main campus and some general education requirements for a total of 60 hours from Averett.

Students must have earned at least a 2.5 GPA at DCC to be admitted to this program at Averett. In order to graduate with the BAS, students must maintain a minimum GPA of 2.0 at Averett. Interested students should contact the Director of Teacher Education.

### Requirements for a B.A.S in Early Childhood Education

Students must fulfill Averett University's general education requirements, some of which may be fulfilled at DCC. Area 4, Science and Mathematics, must be met with:

MTH 111, Theory of Modern Math I ..... 3  
 BIO 101 or PSC 101, Introduction to Biology and Lab or Survey of Physical Science ..... 3

Students must have completed the A.A.S. in Early Childhood Education degree from Danville Community College.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required, including work at DCC:

	Semester Hours
CHD/ED courses from DCC.....	29-32
HTH200, First Aid/CPR .....	3
ED180, Earth Science .....	2
ED290, Foundations of Education.....	3
ED322, Educational Psychology .....	3
ED350/351, Reading/Lang Development.....	3
PSY309, Personality Theory.....	3
Related Concentration (see below).....	<u>18</u>
<b>Total Hours Required for BAS Degree</b>	<b>120</b>

## CONCENTRATIONS

Students choose one of the following concentrations to complete the B.A.S degree.

### Business

BSA 206, Business Communications .....	3
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I .....	3
BSA 305, Principles of Management .....	3
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing.....	3
BSA 353, Entrepreneurship .....	3
BSA 370, Principles of Finance.....	3

### Health/Physical Education

HTH 220, Health/Fitness 21st Cent .....	4
PE 203, Introduction to Physical Education .....	3
PE 303, Elementary School PE.....	3
PE 351, Adapted Physical Education .....	3
PE 415, Motor Learning .....	3
PE Activity course .....	2

### Humanities

MUS 103, Introduction to Music Literature .....	3
ART 103, The Visual Arts.....	(3)
ART 110, Basic Drawing.....	3
IDS 290, Creative Expression.....	3
ENG 412, Creative Writing .....	3
ENG 444, Literature for Children and Adolescents .....	3
TH 105, Introduction to the Theatre .....	(3)
TH 205, Creative Dramatics .....	3

### Social Science

PSY 200, Effective Behavior.....	3
PSY 323, Learning.....	3
PSY 466, Psychological Measurements .....	3
SOC 102, Social Problems.....	3
SOC 317, American Minorities .....	3
SOC 332, Gender Roles.....	3

### Spanish

SPA 101, Beginning Spanish I (taken as general education course).....	(4)
SPA 102, Beginning Spanish II .....	4
SPA 201, Intermediate Spanish I.....	3
SPA 202, Intermediate Spanish II.....	3
SPA 211, Spoken Spanish .....	1
SPA 221, Conversation & Listening.....	4
SPA 222, Advanced Writing and Grammar .....	3

---

## **ECONOMICS (ECO)**

---

Chin-Chyuan Tai

Courses in Economics are required by several departments as part of their majors. A minor is available in Economics.

### **Courses of Instruction in Economics**

**201 Principles of Microeconomics (3)**  
A study of demand and supply analysis, demand and supply elasticity, production theory, cost theory, market structures, business decision on the price and output, shortcomings and remedies of market mechanism, factor income, and income distribution.

**202 Principles of Macroeconomics (3)**  
A study of topics such as basic functions of economics system, scarcity and choice, inflation and unemployment, national income accounting, aggregate demand and aggregate supply, macroeconomic equilibrium, aggregate expenditures, income and expenditures equilibrium, fiscal policy, money and banking, monetary policy, international trade, income distribution, and economic growth.

**210 Consumer Economics (3)**  
A course designed as a practical elective which covers, in part, the consumer's function and responsibilities in the economy, budgets, consumer credit, business influence on consumers, tips on better buying, insurance, investments and aids for consumers. Not open to first year students.

**300 Money and Banking (3)**  
A study of functions of money, financial institutions and markets, interest rate theories, expectation theory and efficient market hypothesis, economic analysis of financial structure, banking industry and regulations, financial crises, the Fed and the effect of monetary policy change on economic stability and growth.  
Prerequisites: Business "pre-core" courses and BSA 222.

**403 Applied Economics (3)**  
The major purpose of this course is to study the application of microeconomic theory and the tools of decision science to examine how a business firm can achieve its objectives most efficiently. The covered topics include: the scope of applied economics; optimization techniques; demand analysis, estimation, and forecasting; production and cost analysis; cost theory and estimation; market structures and pricing practices, and regulations. Pre-requisites: ECO201, ECO202, MTH160, and MTH171

**404 International Trade (3)**  
This course introduces major theories of international trade and uses them to address trade policy issues. Topics covered include: specialization and gains from trade, the role of increased globalization on a nation's competitiveness; gains from trade; trade and capital movements; welfare effects of growth and income transfers; economic integration; tariffs and non-tariff barriers to trade; political economy of tariffs; balance of payment problems; determinants of exchange rates; and exchange rate policies. Pre-requisites: ECO201 and ECO202

The minor is comprised of the following courses:

ECO201 Principles of Microeconomics	(3)
ECO202 Principles of Macroeconomics	(3)
MTH160 Introduction to Statistics	(3)
MTH171 Applied Calculus or MTH201 Calculus I	(3)
ECO300 Money and Banking	(3)
ECO403 Applied Economics	(3)
ECO404 International Trade	(3)
 TOTAL	 (21)

---

## ENGLISH (ENG)

---

Jennifer Hughes, Chair  
Mark Muneal  
Catherine O. Clark  
Antoinette M. Gazda

David E. Hoffman  
Charles Wuest

The English Department offers a Bachelor of Arts degree to students who complete a minimum of 42 semester hours in English. Religion, theatre arts and speech, French, and history are recommended as related fields of study. The selection of required and suggested courses insures that students completing a major in English are proficient in their use of written language, have good analytical skills, are careful readers, and have a strong background in the major texts and movements. While many of Averett's English majors elect to teach in secondary schools, others pursue advanced degrees in law, business, and graduate schools, and many go into journalism or business-related fields such as public relations or advertising.

Students must attain at least a 2.5 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

### Requirements for a Major in English:

In addition to general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research .....	3
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature.....	3
ENG 201, Major British Authors through 18th Century <b>or</b> ENG 202 Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries <b>AND</b> ENG 205, Survey of American Literature to 1860 <b>or</b> ENG 206, Survey of American Literature 1860-1970 <b>AND</b>	
One additional 200-level survey course.....	9
ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English .....	3
ENG 405, Modern Literature.....	3
ENG 414, Shakespeare .....	3
ENG 439, Literary Criticism, Analysis, and Interpretation.....	3
ENG 496, Capstone Course in Literary Study.....	3
English electives at 300-400 level .....	6

One course from the following:

ENG 320, English Novel in the 18th and 19th Centuries	
ENG 323, Restoration and 18th Century Literature	
ENG 401, Romantic Poetry and Prose <b>or</b> ENG 402, Victorian Poetry and Prose .....	3

One course from either of the following:

ENG 413, Chaucer <b>or</b> ENG 443, Literature of the English Renaissance .....	3
--	---

Total 42

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for English

Freshman Year:

ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research (fall)  
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature (spring)

Sophomore Year:

- ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century (fall) **or**
- ENG205, Survey of American Literature to 1860 (fall)
- \*ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries (spring) **or**
- ENG 206, Survey of American Literature 1860-1970 (spring) **or**
- ENG 220, World Literature (spring)
- ENG 300 or 400-level course (one in fall or spring)

\*One American and one British survey each are required plus one additional 200-level survey course.

Junior Year:

- ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English (fall)
- ENG 405, Modern Literature (spring)
- ENG 414, Shakespeare (fall)
- ENG 300-level Elective

Senior Year:

- ENG 439, Literary Criticism, Analysis, and Interpretation (fall)
- ENG 496, Capstone Course in Literary Study (spring)
- ENG 300 or 400-level Elective (fall or spring)

### Requirements for a Major in English with Teaching Licensure

In addition to general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research .....	3
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature.....	3
ENG 201, Major British Authors through 18th Century <b>or</b>	
ENG 202 Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries <b>AND</b>	
ENG 205, Survey of American Literature to 1860 <b>or</b>	
ENG 206, Survey of American Literature 1860-1970 <b>AND</b>	
One additional 200-level survey course.....	9
ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English .....	3
ENG 405, Modern Literature.....	3
ENG 412, Creative Writing .....	3
ENG 414, Shakespeare .....	3
ENG 421, Teaching Composition.....	3
ENG 439, Literary Criticism, Analysis, and Interpretation.....	3
ENG 496, Capstone Course in Literary Study.....	3
English electives at 300-400 level .....	6

One course from the following:

- ENG 320, English Novel in the 18th and 19th Centuries
  - ENG 323, Restoration and 18th Century Literature
  - ENG 401, Romantic Poetry and Prose or
  - ENG 402, Victorian Poetry and Prose .....
- 3

One course from either of the following:

- ENG 413, Chaucer **or**
  - ENG 443, Literature of the English Renaissance .....
- 3

Total 48

The other General Education and Professional Education requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for teaching licensure in English are explained in detail on page 151-153.

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for English with Teaching Licensure

### Freshman Year:

CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software  
ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research (fall)  
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature (spring)  
HTH 220, Health and Fitness for the 21st Century  
TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications

### Sophomore Year:

ED 290, Foundations of Education  
ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century (fall) **or**  
ENG205, Survey of American Literature to 1860 (fall)  
\*ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries (spring) **or**  
ENG 206, Survey of American Literature 1860-1970 (spring) **or**  
ENG 220, World Literature (spring)  
HIS 201, United States History I **or**  
HIS 202, United States History II  
PE Fitness Course  
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology

\*One American and one British survey each are required plus one additional 200-level survey course.

### Junior Year:

ED 322, Educational Psychology  
ED 334, Content Reading and Language Development  
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum  
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education  
ENG 320, The English Novel in the 18th and 19th Centuries (fall) **or**  
ENG 323, Restoration and 18th Century Literature (fall) **or**  
ENG 401, Romantic Poetry and Prose (fall) **or**  
ENG 402, Victorian Poetry and Prose (fall)  
ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English  
ENG 405, Modern Literature (spring)  
ENG 412, Creative Writing (fall)  
ENG 413, Chaucer (spring) **or**  
ENG 443, Literature of the English Renaissance (spring)  
ENG 421, Teaching Composition (spring)  
PE Fitness Course

### Senior Year:

ENG 414, Shakespeare (fall)  
ENG 439, Literary Criticism, Analysis, and Interpretation (fall)  
ENG 444, Literature for Children and Adolescents (fall) preK-6 only  
ENG 496, Capstone Course in Literary Study (spring)  
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education  
ED 489, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education

## English/Theatre

Course requirements for the English/Theatre major are outlined on pages 211-213 of this catalog.

## Communication Studies/Journalism

Course requirements for the Communication Studies/Journalism major are outlined on pages 87-88 of this catalog.

### Minor

Students electing a minor in English must complete 18 hours in English numbered 112 or higher; at least 9 of those hours must be at the 300-400 level.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

## Courses of Instruction in English

- 100 Fundamentals of English (3)**  
A course designed to reinforce and further develop the student's composition skills. Class instruction as well as individual lab practice will be included. Credits are neither computed in grade point average nor used to satisfy graduation requirements.
- 111 Introduction to Writing and Research (3)**  
A review of usage, punctuation, and paragraph development. Emphasis on effective written communication, especially in short (1-3 page) essays. Includes some critical study of prose fiction. Frequent in-class and out-of-class writing practice. Instruction in use of library for research and in various stages of assembling research material. Students must pass with a grade of C or better. Required of freshmen.
- 112 Introduction to Literature (3)**  
The reading of fiction, poetry, and drama, both classic and contemporary. Emphasis on genre study, literary terminology, and critical analysis. Includes further practice in use of research materials and preparation of a term paper on a literary topic. Students must pass with a grade of C or better. Prerequisite: ENG 111.
- 201 Major British Authors, through 18th Century (3)**  
A study of English literature as represented by the principal writers from the author of Beowulf through the eighteenth century. Stress on interpretation and critical analysis. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112.
- 202 Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries (3)**  
A study of English literature as represented by the principal writers of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. Stress on interpretation and critical analysis. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112.
- 205 Survey of American Literature to 1860 (3)**  
A study of the major authors of the romantic movement in American writing. Background of American romanticism as it developed in the early years of nineteenth century. Concentration on major works of Poe, Hawthorne, Melville, Emerson, Thoreau, and Whitman. Prerequisites: ENG 111 and 112.
- 206 Survey of American Literature 1860-1970 (3)**  
A study of major authors in America during the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries. Attention to realistic and naturalistic movements in American literature. Emphasis on Twain, Dickinson, James, Crane, Frost, Hemingway, and Faulkner. Prerequisites: ENG 111 and 112.
- 210 Oral Interpretation of Literature (Same as TH 210) (3)**  
A course designed to introduce the student to the oral communication of various forms of literature and to instruct the student in techniques of oral delivery. Regular performance in an informal atmosphere with constructive criticism by the instructor and fellow students makes up a major part of the course.

**220 World Literature (3)**  
A survey of major writers (excluding British and American) of the western world from the ancient Greeks to the beginnings of the twentieth century. Students will also be familiarized with the literary and cultural backgrounds of the works in question. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112.

**242 African-American Literature (3)**  
The goal of this course is to examine some of the major works produced by a variety of African-American writers starting from before the days of the republic up to the present. The course will help students appreciate the significance of some of the major literary texts that have influenced the history of our land and our culture. It is also important for students to recognize the relationship between major writers and the historical periods from which they arose. They will also think critically about these works and their importance both to their times and our own. They will leave with an appreciation of the subject and a familiarity with major African-American authors, their themes, and techniques.

**307 War in Literature (3)**  
English 307-SL, a service learning course entitled War in Literature, is a study of the (primarily American) literature inspired by war. The course readings for the class include various genres of literature – poetry, fiction, graphic novels, novels, and films, and the subject matter for the course ranges from Indian captivity narratives and the story of Geronimo (“The Great Patriot Warrior”) to the more extensively documented wars (e.g. the Revolutionary War, Civil War, WWI and WWII, the Korean War and Vietnam War) and the recent Wars in Iraq and Afghanistan. Prerequisites: ENG111 and 112.

**316 Mythology (3)**  
A systematic treatment of basic Greek and Roman tales of gods and heroes, with a study of parallel myths in other ancient religions. The use of mythological themes in the arts, ancient and modern, including vase paintings, painting, sculpture, opera and other musical forms, epic and drama. Attention to the nature and role of myth in any society. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112. Does not satisfy the General Education requirement in English.

**317 Southern Literature (3)**  
A course which gives students an overview of the rich literature, unique culture and regional traditions of the South. Although students will be introduced to 17th, 18th, and 19th century Southern literature, a major part of the study will be devoted to 20th century writers, including the Fugitive/Agrarian Vanderbilt writers, and more contemporary writers such as William Faulkner, Eudora Welty, Reynolds Price, Zora Neale Hurston, Clyde Edgerton, Lee Smith, and Harry Crews, among others. Prerequisites: English 111, 112.

**320 The English Novel in the 18th and 19th Centuries (3)**  
A review and analysis of novels of Fielding, Austen, Dickens, Eliot, Hardy, and others. The evolution of the novel from earlier types of fiction, its development, variety, and usual features from 1740 to 1900. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.

**323 Restoration and 18th Century Literature (3)**  
A study of major authors from 1660 to 1798, with emphasis on Dryden, Restoration Comedy, Pope, Addison and Steele, Swift, Johnson, and the beginnings of the English novel. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.

**349 Internship (3)**  
An opportunity for students to work in the Averett University Learning Center. The student’s responsibilities will include working with the Director of the Learning Center to set up conferences with students needing assistance with writing and literary study, working with individual students and with small groups of students on writing skills and literary analysis, and helping students work with tutorial programs on the computers in the Learning Center. The student will be under the direct supervision of the Director of the Learning Center and will confer regularly with a faculty member in the Department of English. The minimum number of clock hours of work in the Learning Center is 80. This course is available only to students who have completed all their general education requirements in English and who have shown strengths in their writing and in the study

of literature. This course will not fulfill the general education requirements for a course in literature at the 200-level or higher.

**390 Origins and Structure of English**

**(3)**

Analysis of the syntax of present-day English. Attention is given to various modes of analysis but instruction concentrates on traditional and structural approaches. The last third of the semester offers a brief history of English beginning with its Indo-European origins and observing its development through Anglo-Saxon, Middle English, and early modern English. Prerequisites: English 111, 112, and one other literature course.

**401 Romantic Poetry and Prose**

**(3)**

A study of the chief Romantic poets--Wordsworth, Coleridge, Byron, Shelley, Keats--and some other poets of the period. Romantic critics and essayists such as Coleridge, Hazlitt, DeQuincey. (Fiction is not included.) The background of the Romantic revolution; the literary scene in the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.

**402 Victorian Poetry and Prose**

**(3)**

A study of Browning, Tennyson, Arnold; minor and late Victorian poets; writers of non-fictional prose such as Carlyle, Newman, Mill, Ruskin, Arnold, and Huxley. The issues and attitudes of English life and thought in the last two-thirds of the nineteenth century. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.

**405 Modern Literature**

**(3)**

A study of major authors, works, and trends in modern British and American literature. Emphasis on Joyce, Fitzgerald, Faulkner, and selected multi-cultural authors among prose writers and Pound, Williams, Auden, Lowell, and Plath among poets. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course.

**410 Modern Drama (Same as TH 410)**

**(3)**

A study of the development of drama from Ibsen to today, including American, European and Third World playwrights. Prerequisite: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.

**412 Creative Writing**

**(3)**

The practice of imaginative writing. Types of writing include poetry, essay, and the short story. Current and recent stories, poems, and articles are read and discussed. Required of prospective teachers of English, open to all students. Does not satisfy General Education requirements for English. Prerequisite: ENG 111, 112, and one other English course.

**413 Chaucer**

**(3)**

The study of Chaucer's development and achievement as exemplified through the minor poems, Troilus and Criseyde, and The Canterbury Tales. Some background study of medieval thought and literature and of Middle English. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.

**414 Shakespeare (Same as TH 414)**

**(3)**

The study of representative comedies, histories, and tragedies, showing Shakespeare's practice in each type, the development of his art and craftsmanship as poet and dramatist. Introduction to Shakespeare's world and renaissance theatre practice. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course.

**421 Teaching Composition**

**(3)**

A course focusing on techniques of teaching and evaluating expository writing (including research writing). Secondary attention will be given to topics such as standards of usage, course planning in composition, and correlating composition and literature. This course is required for all English majors seeking teacher licensure. Alternate years.

**439 Literary Criticism, Analysis, and Interpretation**

**(3)**

Literary Criticism, Analysis, and Interpretation, will survey the important types of literary criticism practiced during the 20th and 21st centuries with some attention to earlier modes of criticism and the historical development of literary criticism in the Western tradition. Students will use a variety of readings from

important literature written in English to examine how readers might interpret them through different critical perspectives. Students will practice these perspectives and methods of literary interpretation and analysis through readings, discussion, and assigned papers and tests.

**443 Literature of the English Renaissance (3)**

This course will examine the concept of the Renaissance, the characteristic literary forms of the era, and some of the most important writers, including Thomas More, Thomas Wyatt, Christopher Marlowe, Edmund Spenser, Philip Sidney, John Donne, Ben Jonson, George Herbert, Andrew Marvell, and John Milton. Each semester, the course will focus especially on one important sixteenth or seventeenth century figure in addition to Milton.

**444 Literature for Children and Adolescents (3)**

This course is the study of literature intended for children and young adults with an emphasis on a range of genres including fantasy, folklore and fairy tale, poetry and realism. This course is required for students seeking PK-6 teacher licensure, and may be taken by others seeking Liberal Studies major with English concentration. This course also fulfills the 300-400 level literature elective requirement for English majors.

**445 Special Topics in American Literature (3)**

This is a one semester course offering intensive study on a topic in American literature. The focus of the course will change from semester to semester, depending upon the interests of the students and the professor teaching the course, but it will always involve concentration on one or more important writers or important movements in American literature.

**496 Capstone Course in Literary Study (3)**

This course is designed to draw on the knowledge and skills that English majors have developed during their time in the department. The focus of the course will vary and will be largely student driven, but it will involve very close reading of literary texts, the preparation of a major research project involving the study of one or more authors, and the oral presentation of the research to an audience of other English majors, English faculty, and other members of the University community.

---

## ENGLISH/HISTORY (PRE-LAW)

---

Andrew Canady  
Catherine O. Clark  
Antoinette M. Gazda  
Jack I. Hayes, Chair

David E. Hoffman  
Simona Kragh  
  
Jennifer Hughes

The Bachelor of Arts degree with a major in English/History (Pre-Law) is NOT required for admission to law school. Successful law students come to law school with undergraduate majors as diverse as sociology and business, nursing and engineering, music theory and computer science. Nevertheless, students in law school need a foundation of skills, values, and bodies of knowledge, which Averett's English/History (Pre-Law) major seeks to provide. The necessary skills include analytic and problem-solving abilities, critical reading skills, the ability to write, speak, and listen effectively, and skills in research and the management and organization of large amounts of information. The necessary values include a dedication to serving others honestly and competently and to advancing fairness and justice. The bodies of knowledge that students need include a broad understanding of the following: history, especially American history; the American system of government; economics; human behavior and social interaction; financial transactions; diverse cultures; and ethics.

Students pursuing this major will enter Averett with a declared major of English/History. When they attain a 2.75 GPA overall and a 3.0 GPA in English and history courses, they become English/History: Pre-Law majors. If students do not attain and maintain these GPAs, they graduate with an English/History major, provided they have a 2.0 overall GPA, a 2.5 GPA in English courses and a 2.0 GPA in history courses at the time of graduation.

The English/History (Pre-Law) major is administered through the History Department.

### Requirements for a Major in English/History (Pre-Law):

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research .....	3
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature.....	3
ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century .....	3
ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries .....	3
ENG 205, Survey of American Literature to 1860 <b>or</b>	
ENG 206, Survey of American Literature 1860 to 1970 .....	3
English elective in literature at 300 level.....	3
English elective in literature at 400 level.....	3
HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II .....	6
HIS 112, Honors Seminar: History of Western Civilization II.....	1
HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II.....	6
HIS 322, English History, 1485 to Present.....	3
History electives at 300-400 level .....	6
PHL 150, Introduction to Philosophy or PHL 210, Ethics .....	3
POS 215, American National Government.....	3
POS 204, State and Local Government .....	3

Electives (To be selected from the following)	
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I	
BSA 222, Principles of Accounting II	
BSA 434, Business Law	
POS 411, Constitutional Law	
PSY 110, Psychology as a Social Science	
PSY 305, Abnormal Psychology	
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology	
Upper level Sociology course.....	<u>9</u>
	Total 61

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for English/History (Pre-Law)**

Freshman Year:

- ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research
- ENG 112, Introduction to Literature
- HIS 101, 102, Western Civilization I, II
- HIS 112, Honors Seminar: Western Civilization II
- PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics

Sophomore Year:

- ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century
- ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries
- HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II
- POS 215, American National Government
- POS 204, State and Local Government

Junior Year:

- Recommended Elective
- ENG 205, Survey of American Literature to 1860 **or**
- ENG 206, Survey of American Literature 1860-1970
- ENG 300-level Literature Elective
- HIS 322, English History, 1485 to Present
- HIS 300-level Elective

Senior Year:

- 2 Recommended Electives
- ENG 400-level Literature
- HIS 300- or 400-level Elective

---

## EQUESTRIAN STUDIES (ES)

---

Virginia Henderson, Chair

Carolyn Morris  
Valerie Harr

The mission of the Equestrian Studies Department at Averett University is to provide an educational program leading to a bachelors degree, which is recognized in the equine industry for its quality and which prepares students to fill a variety of positions within the equestrian fields. The department seeks to promote a love and understanding of the horse, an appreciation of the theory and practice of dressage and combined training, and the sportsmanship that is reflected in those principles. We strive to instill ethical principles and humane treatment of the horse in its environment and career, and the work ethic and responsibility necessary for their care.

Equestrian Studies (ES) classes at the Equestrian center and main campus to give students a broad education on equine-related topics. Although a diverse education continues throughout the program, majors must choose one of five areas of concentration. The **Equine Management Concentration** is for students most interested in allied equine businesses, facility, and show management. The two teaching concentrations, dressage and eventing, focus on the theory and teaching involved in those disciplines. The **Equine Assisted Psychotherapy Concentration** prepares students to be equine specialists who act as part of a treatment team, helping individuals with emotional and behavioral issues. A concentration in **Equine Science** is available for students interested in pursuing graduate programs in equine science programs such as nutrition, breeding, animal science and those who may pursue veterinary degrees. An **ES minor** is also offered.

Career options in the Equine field are plentiful and varied. Some of the positions held by graduates of an equine studies program are: sales and marketing positions within equine specific businesses, entrepreneurs, stable managers, teachers, camp directors, veterinarians, feed/nutrition specialists, and equine specialists in EAP teams.

Many extracurricular opportunities are available including clinics with nationally recognized industry professionals, teaching certification workshops, membership on intercollegiate riding teams, and in house competitions. Opportunities to present at local and national workshops and conferences also exist.

Incoming freshmen are required to complete a placement ride in order to be placed, according to their experience, into one of the Horsemastership courses. Equestrian Studies majors and minors must maintain a 2.5 GPA in Equestrian Studies and may not receive a grade below a “C” in any 200-level or above equestrian courses.

### **Core Requirements for All Concentrations for Majors in Equestrian Studies:**

In addition to the general education requirements, the following ES Core Courses are required of all ES Majors:

	Semester Hours
ES 105, Practical Concepts of Equine Care.....	2
ES 108, Horsemastership III.....	2

ES 111, Careers: Integrating Personal Goals.....	1
ES 115, Stable Management.....	3
ES 208, Equine Anatomy and Physiology.....	4
ES 211, Lunge Theory and Application .....	1
ES 224, Teaching Elementary Riding.....	3
ES 326, Equine Lameness and Disease .....	4
ES 420, Equine Nutrition.....	3
ES 470, Internship.....	<u>3</u>
Total ES Core Requirement Hours	26

## Dressage Concentration Requirements for Equestrian Studies:

In addition to the general education requirements and the equestrian studies core courses, the following Dressage Concentration courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ES 109, Horsemastership IV .....	2
ES 206, Rider Fitness.....	1
ES 211, Lunge Theory and Application .....	1
ES 213, Dressage Through 1 <sup>st</sup> Level.....	3
ES 304, Advanced Stable Management.....	3
ES 313, Dressage Through 2 <sup>nd</sup> Level.....	3
ES 323, Advancing the Dressage Horse .....	2
ES 330, Riding Instruction Programs .....	3
ES 401, Strategies for Equine Business Management.....	3
ES 418, Instructor Certification Programs.....	3
ES 423, Instructor's Apprentice I .....	2

Choose one of the following:

ES 214, Introduction to the Sport of Eventing <b>or</b>	
ES 209, Retraining the Off The Track Thoroughbred <b>or</b>	
ES 260 Young Stock.....	2

Choose one of the following:

POS 325, Perspectives on Leadership <b>or</b>	
JR 115, News and Feature Writing <b>or</b>	
JR 210, Photography <b>or</b>	
PE 365, Sports Psychology.....	3

Total Dressage Concentration Hours   31

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Equestrian Studies Dressage Concentration

Freshman Year:

- ES 105, Practical Concepts
- ES 109, Horsemastership IV
- ES 115, Stable Management

Sophomore Year:

- ES 111, Equine Careers
- ES 206, Rider Fitness
- ES 208, Equine Anatomy and Physiology
- ES 211, Lunge Theory and Application
- ES 213, Dressage Through 1<sup>st</sup> Level
- ES 225, Teaching Elementary Riding Lecture
- ES 226, Teaching Elementary Riding Lab

Junior Year:

- ES 304, Advanced Stable Management
- ES 313, Dressage Through 2<sup>nd</sup> Level
- ES 323, Advancing the Dressage Horse
- ES 326, Equine Lameness and Disease
- ES 330, Riding Instruction Programs
- ES 470, Internship
- Dressage Concentration Choice

Senior Year:

- ES 401, Strategies for Equine Business Management
- ES 418, Instructor Certification Programs
- ES 420, Equine Nutrition
- ES 423, Instructor’s Apprentice I
- Dressage Concentration choice

**Equine Assisted Psychotherapy Concentration Requirements in Equestrian Studies:**

In addition to the general education requirements and the equestrian studies core courses, the following Equine Assisted Psychotherapy Concentration courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BSA401, Strategies for Equine Business Management.....	3
ES 206, Rider Fitness.....	1
ES 215, Introduction to Equine Assisted Therapy.....	3
ES 216, Principles of Equine Behavior .....	3
ES 308, Equine Assisted Psychotherapy Practicum I.....	3
ES 304, Advanced Stable Management.....	3
ES 309, Equine Assisted Psychotherapy Practicum II .....	4
PSY 338, Research Methods and Design .....	3
PSY Electives* .....	9

Choose three from the following for a total of 9 hours:

PSY110, Psychology as a Social Science.....	3
PSY200, Effective Behavior.....	3
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology .....	3
PSY305, Abnormal Behavior .....	3
PSY307, Complimentary Healthcare.....	3
PSY309, Personality Theory.....	3

Toal Equine Assisted Psychotherapy Concentration Hours 32

**Sample Four Year Course Sequence for Equestrian Studies: Equestrian Studies Equine Assisted Psychotherapy Concentration**

Freshman Year:

- ES 105, Practical Concepts
  
- ES 108, Horsemastership III
- ES 115, Stable Management
- ES 206, Rider Fitness
- PSY Elective (2)

Sophomore Year:

- ES 111, Equine Careers
- ES 208, Equine Anatomy and Physiology
- ES 211, Lunge Theory and Application
- ES 215, Introduction to Equine Assisted Therapy
- ES 216, Principles of Equine Behavior
  
- ES 225, Teaching Elementary Riding Lecture
- ES 226, Teaching Elementary Riding Lab

Junior Year:

- ES 304, Advanced Stable Management
- ES 326, Equine Lameness and Disease
- ES 308, Equine Assisted Psychotherapy I
- ES 309, Equine Assisted Psychotherapy Practicum II

Summer:

- ES 470, Internship

Senior Year:

- ES 401 Strategies for Equine Business Management
- ES 420 Equine Nutrition

**Eventing Concentration Requirements in Equestrian Studies:**

In addition to the general education requirements and the equestrian studies core courses, the following Eventing Concentration courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ES 109, Horsemastership IV.....	2
ES 206, Rider Fitness.....	1
ES 211, Lunge Theory and Application .....	1
ES 214, Fundamentals of Eventing.....	2
ES 304, Advanced Stable Management.....	3
ES 316, Training the Event Horse I.....	3
ES 330, Riding Instruction Programs .....	3
ES 401, Strategies of Equine Business Management .....	3
ES 416, Training the Event Horse II.....	3
ES 418, Instructor Certification Programs.....	3
ES 423, Instructor’s Apprentice I .....	2

Select one of the following:

- ES 213, Dressage Through 1<sup>st</sup> Level **or**
- ES 209, Retraining the Off The Track Thoroughbred
- ES 260, Young Stock..... 2

Choose one of the following:

- JR 115, News and Feature Writing **or**
- JR 210, Photography **or**
- PE 365, Sports Psychology **or**
- POS 325, Perspectives on Leadership ..... 3

Total Eventing Concentration Hours 31

**Sample Four Year Course Sequence for Equestrian Studies: Eventing**

Freshman Year:

- ES 105, Practical Concepts
- ES 109, Horsemastership IV
- ES 115, Stable Management

Sophomore Year:

- ES 111, Equine Careers
- ES 206, Rider Fitness
- ES 208, Equine Anatomy and Physiology

ES 211, Lunge Theory and Application  
 ES 214, Fundamentals of Eventing  
 \  
 ES 225, Teaching Elementary Riding Lecture  
 ES 226, Teaching Elementary Riding Lab

Junior Year:

ES 304, Advanced Stable Management  
 ES 316, Training the Event Horse I  
 ES 326, Equine Lameness and Disease  
 ES 330, Riding Instruction Programs

Eventing Concentration Choice

Summer:

ES 470, Internship

Senior Year:

ES 401 Strategies for Equine Business Management  
 ES 416 Training the Event Horse II  
 ES 418 Instructor Certification programs  
 ES 420 Equine Nutrition  
 ES 423 Instructor's Apprentice I  
 Eventing Concentration Choice

**Management Concentration Requirements in Equestrian Studies:**

In addition to the general education requirements and the equestrian studies core courses, the following Management Concentration courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BSA206, Business Communication (pre-requisite course) .....	3
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I .....	3
BSA 305, Principles of Management .....	3
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing .....	3
BSA 370, Business Finance .....	3
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory & Leadership .....	3
BSA 354, Human Resources Management .....	3
ES 401, Strategies for Equine Business Management .....	3
BSA 434, Business Law .....	3
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics .....	3
ES 206, Rider Fitness .....	1
ES 304, Advanced Stable Management .....	3
Total Management Concentration Hours	34

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Equestrian Studies: Equestrian Studies Management Concentration**

Freshman Year:

BSA 206, Business Communication  
 ES 105, Practical Concepts of Equine Care  
 ES 108, Horsemastership III  
 ES 115, Stable Management

Sophomore Year:

BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I

ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics  
ES 111, Careers: Integrating Personal Goals  
ES206, Rider Fitness  
ES 208, Equine Anatomy and Physiology  
ES 211, Lunge Theory and Application

ES 225, Teaching Elementary Riding Lecture  
ES 226, Teaching Elementary Riding Lab

Junior Year:

BSA 305, Principles of Management  
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing  
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory & Leadership  
ES 304, Advanced Stable Management  
ES 326, Equine Lameness and Disease

Summer:

ES 470, Internship

Senior Year:

- BSA 370, Business Finance
- BSA 354, Human Resource Management
- BSA 434, Business Law
- ES 401, Strategies for Equine Business Management
- ES 420, Equine Nutrition

**Equine Science Concentration Requirements in Equestrian Studies:**

In addition to the general education requirements and the equestrian studies core courses, the following Equine Science courses are required:

**Courses to be taken as general education requirements:**

BIO 101, Intro to Biology	4
MTH 160, Statistics	3
MTH 201, Calculus	3

**Courses to be taken within the Concentration:**

CH 111, General Chemistry I and Lab	4
CH 112, General Chemistry II and Lab	4

All electives below should be chosen based on the student's chosen career path and in conjunction with their advisor:

**Electives from BIO/CH/ES/PSC** **22-24**

Note: No more than 7 hours may be in ES classes  
(Riding classes do not count in these hours)

Total Equine Science Concentration Required Hours: 30-32

**Potential BIO Electives:**

BIO 103, Zoology	4
BIO 203, Genetics	4
BIO 204, Human Anatomy and Physiology I	4
BIO 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology II	4
BIO 301, Microbiology	4
BIO 302, Immunology	4
BIO 303, Human Pathology	4
BIO 313, Pharmacology	4
BIO 360, Cellular and Molecular Biology	4
BIO 415, Principles of Biochemistry	3

**Potential CH/PSC Electives:**

CH 305, Organic Chemistry and Lab	4
CH 306, Organic Chemistry II and Lab	4
CH 401, Biochemistry	4
PSC 201, General College Physics and Lab	4
PSC 202, General College Physics II and Lab	4

**Potential ES Electives:**

ES 204, Equine Breeding and Reproduction	2
ES 216, Principles of Equine Behavior	3
ES 306, Equine Research Methods	2
ES 401, Strategies of Equine Business Management	3

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Equestrian Studies Equine Science Concentration**

Freshman Year:

- ES 105, Practical Concepts
- ES 111, Equine Careers
- ES 115, Stable Management
- ES 108 Horsemastership III
- BIO 101, Intro to Biology
- MTH 160 , Statistics

Sophomore Year:

- CH 111, General College Chemistry and Lab
- CH 112, General College Chemistry II and Lab
- ES 208, Equine Anatomy and Physiology
- ES 225, Teaching Elementary Riding Lecture
- ES 226, Teaching Elementary Riding Lab
- ES 211, Lunge Theory and Application

Junior Year:

- ES 304, Advanced Stable Management
- ES 326, Equine Lameness and Disease
- BIO/CH/ES/PSC elective(s)

Summer:

- ES 470 Internship

Senior Year:

- ES 420, Equine Nutrition
- MTH 201, Calculus
- BIO/CH/ES/PSC Elective(s)

**Minor in Equestrian Studies**

A student electing a minor in equestrian studies must complete 22 hours in the following courses:

ES 105, Practical Concepts	2
ES 108, Horsemastership III	2
ES 115, Stable Management	3
ES 208, Anatomy and Physiology	4
ES 211, Lunging	1
ES 225, Teaching Elementary Riding Lecture	2
ES 226, Teaching Elementary Riding Lab	1
ES 304, Advanced Stable Management	3
ES 326, Lameness and Disease	4
 Total	 22

Students must maintain a minimum GPA of 2.5 in their ES classes.

**Minor in Equestrian Studies Equine Assisted Psychotherapy**

The department also offers a minor in Equestrian Studies Equine Assisted Psychotherapy. The following courses are required for the minor:

.....Semester Hours	
ES 215, Introduction to Equine Assisted Therapy.....	3

ES 216, Principles of Equine Behavior .....	3
ES 308, Equine Assisted Psychotherapy Practicum I.....	3
ES 309, Equine Assisted Psychotherapy Practicum II .....	4
PSY 388, Research Methods and Design .....	3
Choose one from the following	
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology	
PSY 307, Complementary Healthcare	
PSY 305, Abnormal Behavior	
PSY 309, Personality Theory .....	<u>3</u>
Total	19

Students must maintain a minimum GPA of 2.5 in their ES classes.

## Courses of Instruction in Equestrian Studies

NOTE: Students auditing riding classes will not participate as riders or be assigned a horse.

- 102    Novice Riding (Same as PE 103) (2)  
A laboratory course designed for non-equestrian studies majors. The basic equestrian skills necessary for the student to prepare and ride the horse in a disciplined, safe and harmonious manner at walk and trot are stressed. The class is strongly assisted by equestrian studies student teachers.
- 105    Practical Concepts of Equine Care (2)  
A practicum course designed to help students gain practical knowledge and skills required in the care and handling of the horse. Participation in Averett stable procedures and routines is an integral part of this experience.
- 106    Horsemastership I (2)  
As a prelude to all good riding, riders must have a balanced and independent seat. Although the seat takes continual dedicated effort from a self-motivated student, this class sets the foundation. Students study equitation and develop feel at all three gaits through lunge lessons given by professors and/or student teachers. Seat lessons include exercises without reins and stirrups at all gaits. Some cavaletti, ground care, and off-lunge training is included. Strength and suppleness of rider will be addressed. May be repeated for up to 4 credits for each different activity selected.
- 107    Horsemastership II (2)  
Students study the aids used to effectively balance and supple the horses. They will learn correct driving aids to energize the horse forward into an elastic, educated, and influential connection – includes training level concepts, cavaletti, and ground care. Prerequisite: Confidence at all gaits without stirrups. May be repeated for up to 4 credits for each different activity selected.
- 108    Horsemastership III (2)  
Freshman Placement Course: Students study training level dressage, cavaletti, and jumping. Students will effectively energize, balance, and supple horses into an elastic and influential connection “on the bit.” Ground care is included. This class will help prepare students for Horsemastership IV. Prerequisite: Confidence at all gaits without stirrups and some experience putting horses “on the bit.” May be repeated for up to 4 credits for each different activity selected.
- 109    Horsemastership IV (2)  
This course is for students who have already enjoyed success at training level dressage and beginning jumping. The students will be introduced to the Training Scale purpose, progression, and application. Students study effectiveness of aids and position necessary to influence the quality of movement of the horse through 1st level dressage, cavaletti, and jumping. Ground care and ground training are included. This class is required for the Dressage and Eventing Tracks. Prerequisite: Successful completion of ES 108 and permission of instructor. May be repeated for up to 4 credits for each different activity selected.

- 111 Equine Careers: Integrating Personal Goals (1)  
Students will develop a career plan based on increased self-awareness, personality traits, values, interests and goals, and research conducted on equine employment opportunities. In addition, students will learn to prioritize and align the information gleaned with their future plans for a career in some aspect of the equine industry.
- 115 Stable Management (3)  
A course designed to teach the student various skills needed by a stable manager. Topics include but are not limited to facility design, pasture management, and record keeping. Skills learned will include but not be limited to various restraint methods, braiding, wraps, injections, trimming and clipping. Prerequisite: ES 105.
- 204 Equine Breeding and Reproduction (2)  
This course will help the student understand the basic reproductive anatomy and physiology of the mare and stallion and be able to apply this knowledge to the practical management of the breeding stallion and broodmare. Care and management of the pregnant mare, including foaling procedures, and neonatal and postnatal care of mare and foal will be covered. Students will be presented with the techniques of assisted equine reproduction, including artificial insemination, semen preservation and shipment, and embryo transfer. Lab and Lecture. Prerequisites: ES 208
- 205 Principles of Competition (2)  
This course is designed to help the student prepare a horse for competition at any level. Students will learn the mounted and management skills necessary to prepare and maintain a horse in competition condition. Students will gain actual competition experience through regional competitions. Focus will also be on improving riders' position, coordination of the aides, and riding theory. Prerequisites: ES 109
- 206 Rider Fitness (1)  
This course will study the leading exercise/training plans for equestrian athletes. Students will research and help design their own training plans based on those held by experts in the field. Students will meet for lab and lecture periods in addition to training time on their own. Can be repeated for up to 6 credits.
- 208 Equine Anatomy and Physiology (4)  
A lecture and laboratory course to study the basic concepts of equine anatomy and physiology. A limited comparison with some of the other domesticated, large animals will be included. Prerequisite: BIO 101.
- 209 Retraining the Off The Track Thoroughbred (2)  
A service-learning course held at the Blue Blood Adoption Center designed to prepared students for retraining off the track Thoroughbreds. Students will be working with horses in different levels of retraining to prepare them for adoption. Students will demonstrate understanding of retraining an off the track Thoroughbred and the issues surrounding the Thoroughbred industry and retired racehorses. Pre-requisites: ES 108. May be repeated for up to 6 credit hours.
- 211 Lunge Theory and Applications (1)  
The students learn correct, effective lunging technique as determined by the USDF. They learn how to analyze a variety of horses' strengths and weaknesses and design an appropriate course for improvement. In addition, they learn to analyze the rider's seat on the lunge and give appropriate exercises for improvement in an organized and flexible lesson while using correct lunging technique and vocabulary. Students will establish a professional demeanor and a rapport of compassion and encouragement. They will be both teachers and riders in these lessons and will have the opportunity to improve their own seat as well. Prerequisite: ES 108 .
- 213 Dressage Through First Level (3)  
This course discusses appropriate action for improvement from classical training methods. The students confirm effectiveness of aids and position through 1st level dressage. The students are required to participate in clinics, workshops, or competitions that may fall on weekend days. Prerequisite: ES 109.
- 214 Fundamentals of Eventing (2)  
A course designed to introduce the student to the skills and knowledge required to compete in the sport of Eventing. The aim of the instruction will be to develop in the rider a correct, balanced, supple, and effective

seat for jumping and dressage. Riders will learn the correct use of aids for the exercises appropriate to the level, focusing upon the progressive development of horse and rider leading to greater confidence between them. Many aspects of the sport will be discussed, such as tack selection, horse health, and rules for event competitions. Prerequisite: ES 109.

215 Introduction to Equine Assisted Therapy (3)  
An interdisciplinary overview of the introductory principles of Equine-Assisted Psychotherapy (EAP) as a therapeutic tool to address behavioral, emotional, and relational issues within the individual, family, and/or group counseling sessions. Pre-requisites: none

216 Principles of Equine Behavior (3)  
An introduction to the behaviors of horses in the wild and in domestication. Through lecture and field observations students will learn to recognize how equines communicate through their behaviors and body language with an emphasis on how recognizing these behaviors can be used in EAP sessions.  
Pre-requisites: none

225 Teaching Elementary Riding Lecture (2)  
A course designed to teach organization, preparation, control and presentation of a novice riding lesson. Several riding theories are presented as they relate to teaching the novice rider. Prerequisites: ES 108 and ES 211.

226 Teaching Elementary Riding Lab (1)  
A laboratory course designed to allow students to teach novice riders under supervision. Attention is paid to students ability to implement the skills and theory gained in the teaching lecture course. Prerequisites: ES225

260 Training Young Stock (2)  
An elective course designed to introduce the student to the training of young horses by actually handling foals, yearlings, and two-year olds. Subjects include halter-breaking, lungeing, driving, mounting for the first time, and basic directional control. Physical conditioning of the student will also be stressed. Prerequisites: ES109.

308 Equine Assisted Psychotherapy Practicum I (3)  
This combination of lecture and laboratory provides the student an opportunity to begin performing EAP work in a peer setting. Students will role play EAP sessions and participate in an Equine Assisted Growth and Learning Association (EAGALA) training session to prepare for certification.  
Pre-requisites: ES 215 and ES 216 .

304 Advanced Stable Management (3)  
This course is designed to provide the student who has already been exposed to basic stable management with advanced lecture and laboratory experience. This course will focus on personnel management, stable routine, pasture management, emergency preparedness, and topics of special interest to today's managers.  
Prerequisites: ES 115. ES 420 and ES 326 recommended.

309 Equine Assisted Psychotherapy Practicum II (4)  
This combination of lecture and laboratory provides students with an opportunity to begin performing EAP work with outside populations. Students will be supervised in their work with clients in both EAP and EAL work. Emphasis will be placed on treatment planning, case notes and research.  
Pre-requisites: ES 308.

313 Dressage Through Second Level (3)  
This course discusses appropriate action for improvement from classical training methods. The students learn effectiveness of aids and position up to the 2nd level. The students are required to participate in clinics, workshops and/or competitions that may fall on weekend days. Prerequisite: ES 213, with grade of A or B.

316 Training the Event Horse I (3)

A course designed to introduce the rider to the processes of preparing a horse for, and competing a specific horse at, an appropriate level. Riders will compete twice at an appropriate level (decided by both student and instructor) at both Averett CT shows.. They will also participate in clinics and workshops, and work at shows to gain competition management skills, throughout the semester. The goal of the riding instruction will be to help the rider produce a horse that is going freely forward in his gaits, and accepting the aids in an appropriate frame for the level. The rider will also practice safe and appropriate schooling exercises for jumping and cross-country riding. Horse care and proper fitness will be stressed. Prerequisite: ES 214.

**323 Advancing the Dressage Horse (2)**

The students assess a variety of horses and design plans for training improvement based on classical theory from The German Training Scale. Introductory through 2nd level exercises will be studied. Students may participate in workshops or clinics that may fall on weekend days. The students learn the format used in USDF instructor's certification. Prerequisite: ES 313.

**326 Equine Lameness and Disease (4)**

A course designed to acquaint the student with common equine lamenesses and diseases. Causes, symptoms, and treatments of various diseases will be discussed. The student will become familiar with the etiology of numerous lamenesses, as well as the prognosis and treatment of these conditions. Special attention will be paid to the treatment of lameness issues in the performance horse. Prerequisite: ES 208.

**330 Riding Instruction Programs (3)**

A course designed to improve the teaching skills of riding instructors and to help prepare them for a career in the horse industry. Lecture topics such things as lateral movements and jumping, impromptu lessons, and the organization of shows and clinics. Application will involve actual teaching of students under supervision. Prerequisite: ES 224.

**401 Strategies for Equine Business Management (3)**

This course will be the culmination of applications for problem-solving and decision-making across the functional areas of all business-related issues surrounding Equestrian Studies and Business Administration. Case studies and simulations specific to Equine Management issues are used to explore the sources and varieties of complex problems confronting contemporary businesses. The focus of this course is on the management of equine businesses – large and small. This is a capstone class and only will be offered to seniors. Prerequisites: Senior status and BSA 206.

**416 Training the Event Horse II (3)**

The goal of the instruction is to help the rider develop a horse that is more balanced in transitions, more responsive to lateral aids, and more connected between leg and hand. Instruction will focus on exercises requiring varying degrees of the application of aids and the coordinated timing of the aids, helping the rider develop a feel for training. Horse and rider strength and athleticism will be increased by progressive endurance and jumping exercises. Riders will compete in two or more competitions during the semester at the Novice level or above, as well as participate in clinics and workshops, and work at shows to gain competition management skills, throughout the semester. Prerequisite: ES 316.

**418 Instructor Certification Programs (3)**

A study of the standards for certification of dressage, eventing, hunt seat, and/or stable management. Topics will include dressage and jumping instructional standards, teaching theory and practice, and horse and stable management. Students will attend USEA, USDF, or ARIA instructor workshops during the semester. Students may also prepare for and attempt ARIA instructor's exam. Prerequisites: ES 224, ES 213 or ES 214, ES 330 recommended.

**420 Equine Nutrition (3)**

A course designed to help the student understand the basic principles of feeding horses. Topics include anatomy of the digestive tract of the horse as it affects feeding practices, nutrient requirements for maintenance, work, pregnancy, and lactation in the horse. Recent advances in equine nutrition will be discussed. Prerequisite: ES 208.

423 Instructor's Apprentice I (2)  
The students gain practical knowledge and evaluative skills needed to be able to formulate appropriate advice for students schooling at 1st level dressage or baby novice eventing. They learn to give advice that is organized, creative and flexible using correct terminology, and demonstrating compassion, rapport and encouragement. They apply skills in private and group lesson formats. Prerequisites: ES 213 and ES 330 or 214.

470 Internship (3-6)  
A required course designed to help the student gain practical work experience and develop industry contacts. Prerequisite: ES 111 and a 2.0 cumulative grade point average.

---

## **FRENCH (FR)**

---

Catherine O. Clark

The modern language program is proficiency-based; that is, students learn skills that help them to function in the language. The goal of each level is to help the student advance to the next level of proficiency.

### **Placement**

Students who wish to begin the study of French for the first time are required to take the placement exam.

All students with two or more years of high school credit, or transfers with college credit who intend to continue their study of French at Averett, must take the placement exam. Students are encouraged to do as well as possible. (A low score may result in the placement of the student in a lower level class for remedial purposes. No credit hours will be earned. See section on Placement Tests on pages 10 and 13.) Those students whose records indicate successful completion of three or more years of French within the past two years should, depending upon the results of the placement exam, expect to be placed in 201 or a higher level course.

Students may take the language placement exam online at their convenience, but should do so at least several days prior to Orientation/Registration. The exam and instructions are available at [http://webcape.byuhtsc.org/nwcregister.php\(#\)/acct=averett](http://webcape.byuhtsc.org/nwcregister.php(#)/acct=averett). Placement results will be provided immediately after the exam is completed and submitted.

Opportunities for study abroad are available and arrangements may be made through the Office of Study Abroad.

### **Minor**

A minor in French is available to students who satisfactorily complete FR 221, 222, 225, and any 300 level course. Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor. A major in Modern Languages with a concentration in French and a supporting program in Spanish is available to students who satisfactorily complete the degree requirements. For details of the major please refer to the information on Modern Languages on page 166. Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.5 in the major.

### **Liberal Studies: Teaching Licensure Majors**

Students who wish to earn teaching licensure in grades PK-6 may choose a concentration in French as one of two areas required for licensure. This concentration consists of French 221 and 222 or two of the 300-level courses, depending upon placement.

### **Pass/Fail Option**

Elective French courses may be taken Pass/Fail if they are not used to fulfill a general education requirement. For example, students who minor in French, who seek a B.A. degree, or who choose a French course to partially fulfill the Society component of the General Education Requirements may not choose the Pass/Fail option.

## Courses of Instruction in French

- 101, 102 Beginning French I, II** (4,4)  
A study of functional tasks that permit students to use French in appropriate, "real-life" situations. Special emphasis is placed on speaking and listening, followed by exercises to promote skill in reading and writing. This course is intended for students with fewer than two years of prior instruction in French.
- 201, 202 Intermediate French I, II** (3,3)  
A review of basic grammar and a study of intermediate functional skills. Special emphasis is placed on reading and writing followed by exercises to improve listening and speaking skills. This course is intended for students who have successfully completed two or more years of prior instruction in French. Prerequisite: FR 102 or departmental placement.
- 211 Intermediate Spoken French** (1)  
A course in the practice of speaking French for students enrolled in intermediate level courses. It is especially helpful to students new to Averett. Pass/Fail only, this course may be repeated once for credit. Prerequisite: FR 102 or equivalent.
- 220 Conversation and Listening** (3)  
A course intended to help the intermediate level student progress to an advanced level in speaking and listening proficiency. Video and audio materials, weekly discussions, and contact with speakers outside of class enable students to improve their comprehension and conversation. Prerequisite: FR 202 or departmental placement.
- 222 Advanced Writing and Grammar** (3)  
A course intended to help the intermediate level student progress to an advanced level of proficiency in written French. Various activities allow the student to explore stylistic elements which affect the form and tone of the written word. The grammatical structures needed to perform particular written tasks are reviewed systematically. Students practice a range of writing assignments from academic to creative. Prerequisite: FR 202 or departmental placement.
- 225 Introduction to French and Francophone Literature** (3)  
This course introduces students to representative literary works from France and the French-speaking world. Activities and exercises based on the readings are designed to develop student awareness and appreciation of various styles, themes, and genres. Prerequisite: FR 202 or departmental placement.
- 317 French Civilization and Culture: Feudal Society through Absolute Monarchy** (3)  
This course will introduce the student to French society, institutions, and literature from the Middle Ages to the Revolution of 1789. Period films, literary texts, and internet activities will supplement the study of historical events. Prerequisite or co-requisite: FR 222. Taught every third year.
- 318 French Civilization and Culture: Revolution through the Fourth Republic** (3)  
This course will introduce the student to French society, institutions, and literature from the post-revolutionary era to the end of the Fourth Republic in 1958. Period films, literary texts, and internet activities will supplement the study of historical events. Prerequisite or co-requisite: FR 222. Taught every third year.
- 319 French Civilization and Culture: The Fifth Republic** (3)  
This course will complete the study of French society, institutions, and literature begun in FR 317. Period films, literary texts, and internet activities will supplement the study of historical events. Prerequisite or co-requisite: FR 222. Taught every third year.

---

## **GREEK (GRK)**

---

### **101, 102 Introduction to Greek I, II (3,3)**

A study of the fundamentals of the Greek language with emphasis on vocabulary building and grammar. Practice readings will be from classical Greek and the Greek New Testament. Offered alternate years.

NOTE: Upon completion of GRK 101, 102 and HEB 101, 102 a student may be considered to have met the foreign language requirement for the Bachelor of Arts degree.

---

## **HEALTH (HTH)**

---

### **110 Contemporary Health Problems (3)**

A course dealing with the contemporary health problems confronting today's educators, with consideration of such areas as the use and abuse of drugs, changing sexual mores, overpopulation, ecology, and mental health. Offered each semester.

### **200 First Aid and Safety (3)**

A study of the American Red Cross standard first aid course (for which certification is provided) plus additional information on emergency medical care and theory. Emphasis on developing an understanding of safety. Includes practical skills employed to care for injured persons as well as life support techniques. Offered each semester.

### **220 Health and Fitness for the 21st Century (4)**

A study of children's health and motor development in the 21<sup>st</sup> century. This course is designed to provide the student with knowledge, experiences, and skills in the teaching of physical/health education and promoting the concepts of health/fitness for today's children in school settings. Students are required to complete 4 lessons of physical education observation/assistance at the assigned elementary school. Offered each semester.

### **320 Nutrition and Sports Performance (3)**

A course designed to teach nutrition and its effects upon athletic performance. Students will learn about foods, the diabetic athlete, steroids, and eating disorders that affect athletes. Students will also learn pre- and post-game meals, myths and facts. Offered Fall semester.

---

## **HEBREW (HEB)**

---

### **101, 102 Introduction to Hebrew I, II (3,3)**

A two-semester introduction to Biblical Hebrew, emphasizing the grammar of the language. The purpose of the course is to enable the student to use Hebrew as a critical tool in the study of the Hebrew Bible. Offered alternate years.

NOTE: Upon completion of GRK 101, 102 and HEB 101, 102 a student may be considered to have met the foreign language requirement for the Bachelor of Arts degree.

---

## HISTORY (HIS)

---

Andrew Canady  
Jack I. Hayes, Chair

Simona Kragh

The Bachelor of Arts degree with a major in History requires a minimum of 36 semester hours in history. A minimum of 18 semester hours of history courses at the 300 and 400-level must be completed at Averett University. Students must attain at least a 2.0 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

The history curriculum provides a broad foundation in the Western heritage, depth in American and modern European history (1450-present), and exposure to important aspects of Asian history. A student who takes courses in history at Averett University should be better prepared to master the art, literature, languages, and even business of the West, appreciate more fully the meaning and importance of the liberal arts, be better able to adapt himself or herself to society, appreciate the maxim that those who fail to learn from history's mistakes are doomed to repeat those mistakes, understand cause and effect on the national and international level, be prepared to solve social problems because of a fuller understanding of them, and possess a strong sense of identity as a citizen of the Western world.

Careers in business, education, government service, and, with further study, the law, are open to students who major or minor in history.

### Requirements for a Major in History:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HIS 101, History of Western Civilization I .....	3
HIS 102, History of Western Civilization II.....	3
HIS 201, United States History I .....	3
HIS 202, United States History II.....	3
HIS 465, Seminar.....	3
History Electives.....	21
(Including advanced American History (6) advanced European History (6), and Asian History (3))	
Total	36

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for History

Freshman Year:

HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II

Sophomore Year:

HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II

Junior Year:

HIS Elective, Advanced European history, American history, or Asian history

HIS Elective, Advanced European history, American history, or Asian history

HIS Elective, Advanced European history, American history, or Asian history

HIS 465, Seminar

Senior Year:

- HIS Elective, Advanced European history, American history, or Asian history
- HIS Elective, Advanced European history, American history, or Asian history
- HIS Elective, Advanced European history, American history, or Asian history

**Requirements for a Major in History with Secondary Teaching Licensure in History and Social Science (Students may earn either the Bachelor of Arts or the Bachelor of Science in History with Secondary Teaching Licensure. The B.A. requires completion of the intermediate level of a foreign language. The B.S. requires no foreign language but requires Math 160, Statistics)**

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HIS 101, History of Western Civilization I .....	3
HIS 102, History of Western Civilization II .....	3
HIS 201, United States History I .....	3
HIS 202, United States History II .....	3
HIS 455, Political Development .....	3
History Electives as follows	
American History 300-400 level (6)	
European History 300-400 level (6)	
History Elective 300-400 level (3) .....	15
ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics.....	3
ED 180, Earth Science for Educators .....	2
POS 131, The World of Politics .....	3
POS 204, State and Local Government .....	3
POS 215, American National Government.....	3
POS 311, Comparative Government .....	3
POS 380, International Relations.....	3
REL 201, Religions of the World .....	3
Total	53

The other General Education and Professional Education requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for teaching licensure in History/Social Science are explained in detail on pages 151-153.

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for History/Social Science with Teaching Licensure**

Freshman Year:

- ENG 111-112, Introduction to Writing, Intro to Literature
- Fine Arts course
- Foreign Language (2 semesters) or MTH160
- HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II
- IDS 101, Student Success
- Math 103 or higher
- POS 131, The World of Politics
- TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications

Sophomore Year:

- ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics
- ED 290, Foundations of Education
- ENG 201 or 202, Major British Authors

Fine Arts course  
Foreign Language (if necessary) or MTH160  
HIS 201, United States History I **and**  
HIS 202, United States History II  
Upper level History courses  
HTH 220, Health and Fitness for the 21st Century  
Laboratory Science course  
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology  
PE Fitness Course  
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology

Junior Year:

ED 180, Earth Science for Educators  
ED 322, Educational Psychology  
ED 334, Content Area Reading  
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum  
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education  
Upper level History courses  
POS 204, State and Local Government  
POS 215, American National Government  
POS 311, Comparative Government

Senior Year:

ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education  
ED 489, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education  
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software  
Upper level History courses  
POS 380, International Relations

## Minor

Students electing a minor in History must complete any 18 hours in History. The student may wish to concentrate in either American History or European History for the minor.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

## Courses of Instruction in History

**101, 102 History of Western Civilization I, II**

**(3,3)**

A survey of world history from the earliest times to 1715 (101) and 1715 to the present (102), emphasizing western civilization and the relevance of the past to contemporary life.

**112 Honors Seminar: History of Western Civilization II**

**(1)**

A course designed to be taken concurrently with HIS 102, this course focuses on selected topics in Western history since 1715. Permission of instructor.

**201, 202 United States History I, II**

**(3,3)**

A survey of U.S. history from the colonial period to 1877 (201) and from 1877 to the present (202). Emphasis upon those aspects relevant to contemporary affairs.

**312 Russian and Soviet History**

**(3)**

A rapid survey from Russia's early history to 1801, then an intensive examination of Tsarist Russia (1801-1917), the Soviet Union (1917-1991), and the results of dissolution. Prerequisite: HIS 102. Alternate years.

**322 English History, 1485 to Present**

**(3)**

An examination of England's internal affairs and foreign policy, stressing her unique and important contributions to western--particularly Atlantic--civilization. Prerequisite or co-requisite: HIS 102. Alternate years.

**323 Early Modern Europe (3)**

An examination of the Renaissance, the Reformation, the Scientific Revolution, the Enlightenment, the French Revolution, and the Napoleonic era. Prerequisites: HIS 101, 102.

**325 History of the German People (3)**

A study of the development of society in central Europe from the Middle Ages to the present. Emphasis is placed upon political, economic, philosophical, and cultural contributions of the 19th and 20th centuries. Prerequisites: HIS 101 and 102 or permission of the instructor.

**365 Antebellum U.S. History, 1789-1848 (3)**

A detailed study of a fascinating period in America's history, with some stress on the first half of the 19th century as well as on the South as a unique region during these years before the Civil War. Prerequisite: HIS 201. Alternate years.

**360 Colonial, Revolutionary, and Constitutional History of the U.S. (3)**

An intensive examination of 17th and 18th century America, its colonial experience as well as its revolution, and the creation of its constitution. Some emphasis will be placed on the English origins which influenced both the colonial period and the constitution. Prerequisite: HIS 201. Alternate years.

**366 Pre-Modern China to 1850 (3)**

This course will survey traditional China from its earliest history through 1850, emphasizing the evolution of its political, social, economic, and religious institutions.

**403 Nineteenth Century Europe (3)**

A study of this century from 1815 to 1914, when so much occurred that has affected our own time. Primary emphasis will be on the internal development and foreign relations of the Great Powers. Prerequisite: HIS 102. Alternate years.

**405 Twentieth Century Europe, The War Years - 1914-1945 (3)**

A study of the causes, events, and effects of the two world wars, the rise of communism and fascism, and the era of economic depression. Prerequisite: HIS 102.

**406 Twentieth Century Europe, Post War Divisions and Unions (3)**

A study of the cold war and Soviet domination of eastern Europe, the revolutions of 1989, the reunification of Germany, the collapse of the Soviet Union, and the move toward economic union. Prerequisite: HIS 102.

**445 Twentieth Century U.S. History (1917 – Present) (3)**

A contemporary view of the United States. Consideration of American post-industrial society, development of the welfare state, and world problems of a superpower. Prerequisite: HIS 202. Alternate years.

**435 The American Civil War (1848 – 1865) (3)**

A study of the causes, events, and effects of the most important event in nineteenth century America. Prerequisite: HIS 201. Alternate years.

**440 The New Nation: 1865-1917 (3)**

This course will explore American history from the end of the Civil War to the emergency of America as a dominant world power. Attention will be given to Reconstruction, the development of the modern American economy, Populism, Progressivism, and World War I. Prerequisite: HIS202. Alternate years.

**455 Political Development (Same as POS 455)**

**(3)**

A study of the development of democracy in selected countries. Attention is given to the relationships between economic and social modernization and political change. Particular emphasis is placed on the experience of Africa, Asia, and Latin America. Prerequisite: junior or senior standing in history or political science, or permission of the instructor.

465 Seminar

(3)

Reading, discussion, and written analysis of secondary studies and primary sources on topics selected by the department with focus alternating between American and European themes. Offered each year as needed. Prerequisite: HIS 101-102, 201-202, three additional hours of upper level history courses, and junior status.

466 Modern China since 1850

(3)

This course will survey Modern Chinese history from 1850 to the present, focusing on the major political, economic, and cultural transformations that occurred within the context of modernization, imperialism, world wars, civil wars, revolution, and reform. The course will also provide attention to the surrounding areas of modern-day Japan and Korea.



---

## HISTORY AND POLITICS

---

Andrew Canady  
Jack Hayes, Chair

Simona Kragh

The Bachelor of Arts degree or the Bachelor of Science degree, with a major in History and Politics requires 17 courses (49 semester hours) spread almost evenly across the two disciplines of political science and history. This curriculum provides breadth in various epochs of American and European history, along with depth in the theory and practice of politics. Students seeking the B.A. degree must complete 6-14 semester hours of a foreign language, depending on the level of entrance. Students seeking the B.S. degree have no foreign language requirement but must complete MTH160 (statistics) and ECO202 (macroeconomics).

Students majoring in History and Politics usually select careers in business, the non-profit sector, or government service, or they apply to graduate school in history, political science, or law.

Students may not double major in History, History and Politics, or Political Science. Students must attain at least a 2.0 GPA in the major in order to graduate.

### Requirements for a Major in History and Politics

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HIS 101, History of Western Civilization I .....	3
HIS 102, History of Western Civilization II.....	3
HIS 112, Honors Seminar: History of Western Civilization II.....	1
HIS 201, United States History I .....	3
HIS 202, United States History II.....	3
HIS 465, Seminar <b>or</b>	
HIS/POS 455, Political Development .....	3
HIS and POS Electives (no more than 12 hours in one discipline) .....	21
POS 131, The World of Politics .....	3
POS 204, State and Local Government .....	3
POS 215, American National Government.....	3
POS 320, American Government: Issues and Problems.....	<u>3</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>49</b>

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for History and Politics

Freshman Year:

HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II  
HIS 112, Honors Seminar: History of Western Civilization II  
POS 131, The World of Politics

Sophomore Year:

HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II  
POS 204, State and Local Government  
POS 215, American National Government  
POS 320, American Government: Issues and Problems

Junior Year:

HIS 465, Seminar **or**  
HIS/POS 455, Political Development  
4 upper level history and/or political science courses

Senior Year:  
3 upper level history and/or political science courses

---

## **HONORS PROGRAM (HON)**

---

Andrew Canady, Director

The Honors Program is governed by the Honors Committee, composed of five faculty members, representing various disciplines, and two students. Chaired by the director of the program, the committee is responsible for establishing long-term goals and themes of the Honors Program; for soliciting, reviewing, and approving all courses which are part of the Honors curriculum; and for reviewing and approving all student applications for admission.

### **Student Admission to the Honors Program**

Entering freshmen may be accepted into the Honors Program by meeting **either** of the following:

1. High School grade point average of 3.2 or better and a combined SAT score of 1100 (Critical Reading and Math) or better.
2. High School grade point average of 3.0 or better, a combined SAT score of 1050 (Critical Reading and Math) or better and one of the following two criteria:
  - a. High School Rank in the top 15% of the graduating class, or
  - b. Completion of two Advanced Placement courses with accompanying Advanced Placement Test scores of 4 or better.

Sophomores and transfer juniors must meet **three** of the four criteria listed below to be admitted to the Honors Program.

1. Minimum overall college grade point average of 3.2.
2. Minimum grade point average of 3.4 in major.
3. Faculty sponsorship.
4. Completion of 6 hours Honors courses with grades of B or better.

### **Provisional Admission to the Honors Program**

Students may be provisionally admitted to the Honors Program under several circumstances: (1) pending completion of one of the above criteria, (2) transfer students with high grade point averages who have no previous Honors work, or (3) other unanticipated circumstances. Terms for the provisional admission will be set by the Honors Committee at the time of the decision, and must specify the action(s) required and the time-limit for removing the provisional status.

### **Continuation in the Honors Program**

Once admitted, the student must meet the following minimum requirements to continue in the Honors Program.

1. The student must make regular progress toward meeting the credit hour requirements of the Honors Program; at least one Honors course shall be taken each academic year as an indication of regular progress.
2. The student may have no more than two grades of C in courses used to satisfy Honors program requirements (this policy preempts the Honors grade point average requirement).
3. The student must maintain an overall grade point average of 3.2, a major grade point average of 3.4, and an Honors grade point average of 3.0.

## General Requirements

To earn the Honors distinction, approximately 20% of all coursework attempted at Averett University must carry Honors credit.

Students may enter the Honors Program at the beginning of the freshman or sophomore years or as a transfer in the junior year; however, total hours required for Honors distinction is based on the total number of hours a student takes at Averett University. The following table outlines this policy.

### Requirements for Honors Distinction

<u>Total Averett Hours Earned</u>	<u>Total Honors Hours Required</u>
108 - 123	24
93 - 107	21
78 - 92	18
60 - 77	15

Students transferring with Honors credit from other institutions must complete the appropriate number of Averett University Honors hours based on the number of total hours earned while enrolled at Averett.

**In addition to the total hours required, students must meet the additional requirements as listed below.**

1. Freshman Colloquium, HON 101, is required for all students except those who transfer in 60 or more credit hours.
2. All Honors students, regardless of the total number of Honors hours earned, must complete the following Honors courses:
  - HON 397, Senior Project Proposal Preparation ..... 1 hour
  - HON 401, Senior Honors Project ..... 3 hours
  - HON 402, Senior Colloquium ..... 3-6 hours
3. The student may earn no more than 50% of all Honors hours in the declared major.
4. The philosophy of the Averett University Honors Program embraces far more than a sequence of coursework. Honors students will be provided opportunities for and required to participate in a number of out-of-classroom experiences each year.

### Honors Curriculum

The Honors curriculum is composed of courses that satisfy both general education and major requirements and general elective hours. Honors courses offered in academic departments are numbered 198, 298, 398, or 498. Enrollment in individual Honors courses is open by permission of the instructor to other students if space is available in the class.

### Sample Four Year Course Sequence

Freshman Year:

Honors 101, Introduction to Honors (second semester)

Sophomore Year:

Honors Electives from approved offerings (first semester)

Honors 201, Sophomore Colloquium

Junior Year:

Honors Electives **or** Honors courses in major (first semester)  
Honors 301, Junior Colloquium  
Honors Electives **or**  
Honors courses in major (second semester)  
Honors 397, Senior Project Proposal Preparation (second semester)

Senior Year:

Honors Electives **and/or** Senior Honors Project (first semester)  
Honors 401, Senior Honors Project **and/or**  
Honors 402, Senior Colloquium (second semester)

## Courses of Instruction in Honors

**100 Introduction to Honors (1)**

A theme-based, issue-focused, interdisciplinary course designed for freshmen admitted to the Honors Program or considering applying to the Honors Program. Students will experience some of the learning activities that Honors courses offer and will be introduced to the activities, events, and policies of the Honors Program.

**101 Freshman Colloquium (3)**

A theme-based, issue-focused interdisciplinary course that introduces the Honors student to the challenges and expectations of the Honors Program.

**201 Sophomore Colloquium (3)**

A theme-based, issue-focused interdisciplinary course which broadens the student's knowledge of some area of the arts and sciences. Topics will be proposed annually by the faculty for approval by the Honors Committee. Prerequisite: Honors 101 or permission of the Director of the Honors Program.

**301 Junior Colloquium (3)**

A theme-based, issue-focused interdisciplinary course which broadens the student's knowledge of some area of the arts. Prerequisite: Honors 201 or permission of the Director of the Honors Program

**397 Senior Project Proposal Preparation (1)**

A one-hour course for Honors students prior to the research stage of the Senior Honors Project. Students will work with the Director of the Honors Program to develop Senior Project ideas and to identify an appropriate faculty member to serve as Project Committee Chair. Students will work with the Project Committee Chair to develop the Honors Project proposal and identify two faculty members to serve on the Senior Project Committee. By the end of the semester the student will have completed an approved Senior Project Proposal.

**401 Senior Honors Project (3)**

A student-designed project demonstrating original and/or creative work of substance. The Seniors Honors Project will be proposed, and upon completion, presented in the student's department of major study and in the broader forum of the Senior Colloquium, Honors 402. Approval for the Seniors Honors Project must be obtained from the major department and from the Honors Committee. The grade for this course will be awarded on successful completion of the Seniors Honors Project, including completion of the paper and presentation of results before the Project Committee and the Honors Committee.

**402 Senior Colloquium (3-6)**

A multi-disciplinary, required senior seminar for all Honors candidates, focused around research or performance in their major field. Students will write the paper that completes the Senior Honors Project and make oral presentations based on work on the project. Prerequisite or Co-requisite: Honors 401.

**ms, or**

the primary major.

.....3

---

## **INTERDISCIPLINARY STUDIES (IDS)**

---

These courses are specifically designed to offer students the opportunity to study a variety of subject matter from an interdisciplinary perspective.

### **Courses of Instruction in Interdisciplinary Studies**

#### **101 Freshman Success (1)**

This course is designed to assist students in the academic and social transitions associated with college life. Students will explore success skills including time management, note-taking, and study strategies. Career and academic guidance activities will be included.

#### **103 Prior Learning Assessment (Janet Roberson, Coordinator) (3)**

This course is an introduction to prior learning assessment and the standards used to evaluate proper learning. Students will enhance the development of critical thinking and life-long learning skills through the creation of a learning portfolio of documentation, including an essay. Students will then be able to decide if they believe they have sufficient experiences to submit their portfolio for evaluation of further college level credits.

#### **200 Reading Seminar (3)**

IDS 200 will be based on topical reading(s) chosen by the instructors according to their areas of interest and may be of a disciplinary related nature. These seminars will have as a goal the further development of in-depth reading comprehension of a text or texts.

#### **290 Creative Expression in Art and Music (3)**

The music portion of this course will focus on elements of melody, harmony, rhythm, dynamics, timbre, and form. Vocal, instrumental, listening, and movement activities will be incorporated to explore the creative process of combining these various elements of musical expression. The art portion of the course will focus on developing the elements and principles into two-dimensional and three-dimensional form. Various materials and techniques will be explored. Studio hours are scheduled for the art segment. Does not meet General Education requirements. Prerequisites: ART 103 and MUS 103.

#### **475 Interdisciplinary Capstone Course (2)**

The capstone course in the Interdisciplinary Studies major provides the opportunity for the student to demonstrate the results of an in-depth research project involving two of the three areas of concentration. The course allows the student to work with two faculty members to determine the scope and depth of the project and to present to the academic community the results and implications of the project. This course requires a written paper and a formal oral presentation, both mentored by the faculty member of choice from the concentrations.

---

## LEADERSHIP STUDIES (LDR)

---

Averett University offers an interdisciplinary minor of eighteen hours in Leadership Studies. This program consists of an academic component, experiential learning, and mentoring. Students have the opportunity to gain self knowledge through a consideration of the theory and practice of leadership. The curriculum of this minor includes offerings from various departments and utilizes the talents of faculty, staff, and administration in an effort to assist students in gaining leadership experience. Completion of the Leadership Studies Minor meets the requirements for experiential learning in the university General Education curriculum. At the conclusion of the leadership studies program:

1. Students will be able to define leadership, explain the difference between leadership and management, and apply this definition to develop personal and professional goals.
2. Students will be able to identify and apply leadership styles and theories.
3. Students will understand value systems and will be able to describe the impact of cultural differences on leadership models.
4. Students will recognize and critique team dynamics and will be able to function effectively within a group setting.
5. Students will act with sound judgment and will be able to apply ethical decision making techniques.

In order to be admitted to the Leadership Studies minor, a student must declare the minor in the Registrar's Office. The Chair of the Leadership Studies program will advise the student with regard to the minor.

### Requirements for a Minor in Leadership Studies

	Semester Hours
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory, and Leadership .....	3
LDR 104, Leadership.....	3
IDS 205, Leadership and Management of Conflict	3
LDR 303, Leadership in Action.....	3
LDR 442, Leadership Seminar .....	3

One three-hour course selected by the student in consultation with his/her advisor from the following:

JR 220, Public Relations  
JR 225, Editorial and Current Affairs  
PE 365, Sport Psychology  
PHL 210, Ethics  
PHL300, Applied Ethics  
PSY200, Effective Behavior  
PSY 412, Industrial/Organizational Psychology  
TH 300, Public Speaking

Total 18

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Leadership Minor

Freshman Year:

LDR 103, Leadership

Sophomore Year:

BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership

IDS 205, Leadership and Management of Conflict

Junior Year:

LDR 303, Leadership in Action

Senior Year:

LDR 442, Leadership Seminar

Approved leadership elective

## Courses of Instruction in Leadership

### LDR103, Leadership

3

**This course is an introduction to the study of leadership within an organization. Students will review and analyze past and current theories of leadership with a focus on the application of leadership principles to the workplace.**

### IDS205, Leadership and Management of Conflict

3

This course will enable students to increase their skills and understanding of conflict management. This course is especially designed to help the student formulate a clearer understanding of group dynamics and behavior in the workplace. The experiences in this course will contribute to the development of interpersonal skills for handling conflict with individuals and groups within an organization.

### BSA326, Organization Behavior, Theory, and Leadership

3

A study of how people operate in organizations, how the structure of the organization can affect their performance and the key elements to organizational leadership. Case studies illustrating concepts regarding human behavior and development in individual, group, and complex organizational settings will be used. Different leadership styles and approaches and their impact on organizational behavior will also be studied. Prerequisites: BSA206, 305, and PSY110 or 120 or SOC101.

### LDR303, Leadership in Action

3

In this service-learning course, students have the opportunity to apply leadership concepts during a supervised on-campus or off-campus activity. This course focuses on exploration of individual actions and team dynamics while offering an opportunity for student reflection. Prerequisites: BSA326, IDS205, and LDR103.

### LDR442, Leadership Seminar

3

The capstone course in the Leadership Studies Minor, this course focuses on the application of leadership theory and practice. Students will demonstrate mastery of leadership concepts and will diagnose organizations and create plans for individual and team development. Prerequisites: BSA326, IDS205, LDR103, and LDR303.

---

## **LIBERAL STUDIES (ELEMENTARY EDUCATION) (ED)**

---

Pamela B. Riedel  
Aimee Brenner  
George Odongo

Sue Davis, Chair, Director of Teacher  
Education, and Director of Graduate Studies in  
Education

The goal of the Department of Education at Averett University is to graduate proficient teachers who pursue excellence through continuous learning and self-improvement. Our success is reflected in the fact that we consistently place nearly 100% of our graduates in teaching positions.

Averett's Department of Education has formed partnerships with eight regional school divisions where pre-service teachers complete field-based practica and graduate students are employed. Formalized partnerships exist within the region between Averett and the public school divisions of Caswell County, NC, Danville City, Halifax County, Henry County, Martinsville City, Patrick County, Pittsylvania County, and Rockingham County, NC, Danville Science Center, The Danville Museum of History and Fine Arts, and The Institute for Advanced Learning and Research. These partnerships enhance departmental curriculum offerings and ensure that students have the best opportunities available for hands-on experience.

Virginia's Department of Education has approved Averett University's teacher education programs. Professional education at Averett University includes both undergraduate and graduate programs. (For details on the graduate program, refer to the sections in this catalog regarding graduate studies or speak with the Director of Graduate Studies in Education,.) The undergraduate component provides programs leading to initial licensure in elementary, secondary, and PK-12 education. Certification is available in Biology (6-12), English (6-12), Health and Physical Education (PK-12), History and Social Science (6-12), Mathematics (6-12), Theatre Arts (PK-12), and Visual Arts (PK-12). Add-on endorsements may be gained in Computer Science, Driver Education, Journalism, and Speech Communication. Students may also choose to minor in Special Education .

### **Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science to Master of Education Degree Program**

Students may complete a B.S. or B.A. to M.Ed. program of study leading to the baccalaureate and the Master of Education degrees. This program prepares students for teaching licensure in any of the following areas:

Teaching Licensure in Grades PK-6, Elementary Education

Teaching Licensure in Special Education, General Curriculum PK-12

Dual Teaching Licensure in Grades PK-6 and Special Education PK-12

Students wishing to complete their baccalaureate degree leading toward teaching licensure in PK-6, 6-12 or PK-12 may opt to enter the graduate program during their senior year by taking a maximum of six semester hours of graduate credit. Those courses may then be applied toward the M.Ed. if they are earned at Averett University within the time limit specified . The Graduate Studies in Education program at the Danville Main Campus offers graduate degrees leading toward licensure in the following areas:

M.Ed. in Administration and Supervision

M.Ed. in Special Education, PK-12 with or without teaching licensure

M.Ed. in Curriculum and Instruction

## **Admission to the Teacher Education Program (Undergraduate Studies)**

Students wishing to earn teaching licensure must be admitted to the program of professional studies in education (Teacher Education Program). Students seeking such admission must:

- have a minimum 2.5 grade point average;
- attain a passing score on the Praxis Core Academic Skills for Educators Tests: Reading (5712), Writing (5722), AND Mathematics (5732) or an acceptable alternative (see the Virginia Department of Education website).
- have never been convicted of a felony or had teaching licensure revoked in any state;
- satisfy other requirements for admission to the program;
- be approved by the Teacher Education Committee.

Admission to professional studies in education may not be sought until the student has successfully completed a minimum of 30 semester hours of college study with a minimum of 12 semester hours at Averett. Admission procedures are undertaken during the semester when the student is enrolled in ED 290, Foundations of Education, and must be completed by the time 15 additional semester hours have been taken. Admission to Student Teaching may be sought when the student is enrolled in the appropriate course, ED 401 (for elementary, PK-6 students) or ED 406 (for secondary or PK-12 students), and passing scores on Praxis II, the Virginia Communication and Literacy Assessment (VCLA), and the Reading for Virginia Educators (RVE), if applicable, have been achieved and are on record in the Education Department.

After admission to the Teacher Education Program, the student must maintain a minimum 2.5 grade point average and receive no grade below a C in professional courses in order to retain good standing in the program. A 2.5 grade point average is required for enrollment in ED 401 and 406 (the instruction courses) and for placement in student teaching.

## **Programs in Professional Education**

Programs in professional education seek to:

- develop in each candidate a sense of the professional character of teaching and of the importance and challenge of this profession;
- emphasize intensive study in the academic disciplines which provide the foundation for the subjects and the Virginia Standards of Learning the candidate will teach in the school setting and provide a thorough understanding of the setting of those subject matter areas in the school curriculum;
- assist the candidate in gaining an understanding of psychological growth and development, the process of human learning, and the dynamics of human interaction as these are related to the process of teaching;
- assist the candidate in gaining a realistic concept of the role of the teacher, the student, and subject matter in the teaching-learning process, with emphasis on the function of the teacher in classroom management;
- provide opportunity for direct experience in the classroom setting through observation, field experiences, and directed teaching;
- assist the candidate in the development of a realistic philosophy of education, an understanding of the role of the school in contemporary society, and an understanding of the evolution of education in this country;
- address legal aspects, current trends and future issues in education.

Completion of the Liberal Studies degree leads to licensure to teach grades PK-6. The dual teaching licensure program listed above leads to licensure to teach grades 6-12 and PK-12 as indicated.

Students should be advised that the Virginia Board of Education may alter licensure processes and requirements, thus making changes in Averett's degree programs necessary. The University reserves the right to make such alterations in degree requirements as are necessary to insure graduates of their eligibility for teaching licensure.

## Liberal Studies with Teaching Licensure (PK-6)

Averett University students seeking teaching licensure at the elementary school level will pursue a dual-disciplinary program leading to a Liberal Studies major. These students will elect either the Bachelor of Science or the Bachelor of Arts degree, depending upon the areas of concentration they choose. All students seeking licensure in Elementary Education (PK-6) must complete the following courses which include the general education requirements.

### Core Requirements for Students Seeking Teaching Licensure in Elementary Education (PK-6)

	Semester Hours
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software .....	3
ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research .....	3
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature.....	3
ENG 444, Literature for Children and Adolescents .....	3
Fine Arts--Two courses from the following:	
ART 103, the Visual Arts	
ART 201, Art History: Ancient to Medieval	
ART 205, Art History: Medieval through Renaissance	
ART 305, Art History: Baroque-Romanticism	
ART 306, Art History: Realism to Modern	
ART 405, Non-Western Art	
MUS 103, Introduction to Music Literature	
MUS 260, Music History: Renaissance/Baroque	
MUS 261, Music History: Classical, Romantic, Modern	
TH 105, Introduction to Theatre	
TH 220, History of the Theatre I	
TH221, History of the Theatre II.....	6
HTH 220, Health and Fitness for the 21st Century .....	4
HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II .....	6
HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II.....	6
IDS 101, Freshman Success.....	1
IDS 200, Reading Seminar .....	3
MTH 111,112, Theory of Modern Mathematics I, II .....	6
POS 131, The World of Politics .....	3
PSC 101, Survey of Physical Science.....	4
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology .....	3
TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication <b>or</b>	
TH 300, Public Speaking .....	<u>3</u>
Total	61

All candidates desiring teaching licensure in Grades PK-6 must select two areas of concentration from two different departments and complete a 37-hour concentration in Professional Education. Thus the students electing to be PK-6 teachers must select, in addition to Education, two concentrations from the following departments: English, Foreign Language, History/Social Science, Mathematics/Computer Science, and Natural Science. Averett University requires a minimum of 12 hours to be taken in each concentration, including general education.

Students who select their two concentrations from Areas I and II must elect the Bachelor of Arts degree. Those who select any other combination of concentrations may elect either the Bachelor of Arts or the Bachelor of Science degree. Students are reminded that the Bachelor of Arts degree requires completion of the intermediate level of a foreign language.

**Areas of Concentration for Students Seeking Teaching Licensure in Elementary Education (PK-6)**

**I. ENGLISH**

	Semester Hours
ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries .....	3
English Electives (300-400 level).....	6
Core Requirements (ENG 111, 112, and 444).....	<u>6</u>
Total	15

**II. FOREIGN LANGUAGE (Select either A or B)**

A. French Concentration

	Semester Hours
FR 101, 102, Beginning French.....	8
FR 201, 202, Intermediate French .....	6
Two courses above 202 level.....	<u>6</u>
Total	20

B. Spanish Concentration

	Semester Hours
SPA 101, 102, Elementary Spanish .....	8
SPA 201, 202, Intermediate Spanish .....	6
Two courses above 202 level.....	<u>6</u>
Total	20

Placement may result in a reduction of the number of hours required in the concentration. However, at least two semesters of the courses above the 202 level must be completed at Averett University.

A student who completes either concentration may fulfill a foreign language minor by the additional completion of two 300-level courses in the foreign language.

**III. HISTORY AND SOCIAL SCIENCE (Select either A or B)**

A. History and Social Science Concentration

	Semester Hours
History Electives (300-400 level).....	6
POS 215, American National Government.....	3
POS 216, State and Local Government .....	1
POS 380, International Relations.....	3
Core Requirements (HIS 101, 102, 201, 202; POS 131).....	<u>15</u>
Total	28

B. Social Science Concentration

	Semester Hours
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology.....	3
PSY 110, Psychology as a Social Science.....	3
Sociology/Psychology electives 300-400 level .....	6
Core Requirements (HIS 101, 102, 201, 202; POS 131).....	<u>15</u>
Total	27

**IV. MATHEMATICS AND COMPUTER SCIENCE (Select either A or B)**

A. Mathematics Concentration

	Semester Hours
*MTH 151, Precalculus Mathematics .....	3
MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II.....	6
MTH 211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics I .....	3
Mathematics Elective, 302 or higher (MTH 311 preferred).....	3
Core Requirements (MTH 111, 112).....	<u>6</u>
Total	21

\*Placement test may result in waiver of MTH 151.

B. Computer Science Concentration

	Semester Hours
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I .....	4
CSS 212, Introduction to Programming.II.....	4
CSS Elective at the 200-400 level .....	3
CSS Elective at the 300-400 level .....	3
Core Requirements (MTH 111, 112, CSS 113).....	<u>9</u>
Total	23

**V. NATURAL SCIENCE**

	Semester Hours
BIO 102, General Botany .....	4
BIO 103, General Zoology .....	4
BIO 203, Genetics or CH 111, 112, General Chemistry I, II.....	4-8
BIO 330, General Ecology.....	4
Core Requirements (BIO 101; PSC 101).....	<u>8</u>
Total	24-28

**PROFESSIONAL COURSES FOR LIBERAL STUDIES (Third Concentration)**

	Semester Hours
ED 180, Earth Science/Geography for Educators .....	2
ED 290, Foundations of Education.....	3
ED 322, Educational Psychology (aiding placement included) .....	3
ED 350, Reading and Language Development.....	3
ED 384, Exceptional Student (for non-licensure ONLY).....	3
ED 443, Diagnosis and Application of Reading and Language Development.....	2
ED 444, Practicum in Reading .....	1
ED 378, Curriculum in Grades PK-6.....	2
ED 401, Instruction in Grades PK-6.....	3
ED 483, Mathematics and Science in Grades PK-6 .....	<u>2</u>
Total	24

**FIELD EXPERIENCES**

	Semester Hours
ED 351, Field Experiences/Practicum in Reading and Language Development..	0
ED 379, Teaching Assistant: Grades PK-6.....	1
ED 444, Practicum in Reading .....	1
*ED 488, Directed Teaching/Seminar in Grades PK-6 .....	<u>12</u>
Total	14

\*Admission to Teacher Education Program required.

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Education/Related Courses for PK-6**

Freshman Year:

- HTH 220, Health and Fitness for the 21st Century
- MTH 111, 112, Theory of Modern Mathematics I, II
- TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication **or**
- TH 300, Public Speaking

Sophomore Year:

- ED 180, Earth Science/Geography for Educators
- ED 290, Foundations of Education
- ED 350, Reading and Language Development
- ED 351, Field Experiences in Reading and Language Development
- POS 131, The World of Politics
- PSC 101, Survey of Physical Science
- PSY 205, Developmental Psychology

Junior Year:

- ED 322, Educational Psychology
- ED 378, Curriculum in Grades PK-6
- ED 379 Teaching Assistant: Grades PK-6
- ED 443, Diagnosis and Application of Reading and Language Arts
- ED 444, Practicum in Reading
- ED 483, Mathematics and Science in Grades PK-6
- ENG 444, Literature for Children and Adolescents

Senior Year:

ED 401, Instruction in Grades PK-6

ED 488, Directed Teaching/Seminar in Grades PK-6

### **Minor in Special Education**

Students majoring in Liberal Studies and working towards PK-6 licensure may pursue an 18-semester hour minor in Special Education. Students pursuing a Liberal Studies degree may take these courses toward a concentration in Special Education.

### **Requirements for a Minor in Special Education**

	Semester Hours
ED 350, Reading and Language Development.....	3
ED 351, Field Practicum.....	0
ED 384, The Exceptional Student.....	3
ED 443, Diagnosis and Application of Reading and Language Development.....	2
ED 444, Practicum in Reading .....	1
ED 469, Classroom Management and Positive Behavioral Support .....	3
ED 471, Curriculum and Instruction for Students with Disabilities.....	3
ED 479, Assessment of Learning .....	3
Total	18

### **Secondary (6-12) and PK-12 Education**

A student who anticipates teaching on the secondary Grades 6-12 or PK-12 level may elect either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree, depending upon the academic discipline selected as a major. **The degree is earned in the subject the student intends to teach.** Courses in either secondary or PK-12 education are taken in addition to the requirements of a major program. Programs leading to professional licensure are offered in Biology (6-12), English (6-12), History and Social Science (6-12), Mathematics (6-12), Health and Physical Education (PK-12), Theatre Arts (PK-12), and Visual Arts (PK-12). Computer Science, Drivers Education (PK-12), Journalism, and Speech may be pursued as add-on endorsements.

Persons who wish to teach in disciplines other than those listed should be aware that Averett University cannot provide the directed teaching experiences for such subjects nor is the University authorized to provide the recommendations required by the Virginia Department of Education. Alternative routes to licensure in such instances may be discussed with the Director of Teacher Education.

Students who wish to be recommended for secondary or PK-12 teaching licensure must complete a major program in an academic discipline of the University and, in addition to that major program, must complete the following requirements:

## Core Requirements for Students Seeking Secondary or PK-12 Teaching Licensure

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software .....	3
ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research .....	3
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature.....	3
Fine Arts to be selected from the following:	
ART 103, The Visual Arts	
ART 201, Art History: Ancient to Medieval	
ART 205, Medieval to Renaissance	
ART 305, Art History: Baroque-Romanticism	
ART 306, Art History: Realism to Modern	
ART 405, Non-Western Art	
MUS 103, Introduction to Music Literature	
MUS 260, Music History: Renaissance/Baroque	
MUS 261, Music History: Classical, Romantic, and Modern	
TH 105, Introduction to the Theatre	
TH 220, History of the Theatre I	
TH 221, History of Theatre II.....	6
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems .....	3
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology .....	3
TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication <b>or</b>	
TH 300, Public Speaking.....	3
ED 489, Directed Teaching/Seminar .....	<u>3</u>
Total	27

### PROFESSIONAL COURSES FOR 6-12 AND PK-12 CANDIDATES

	Semester Hours
ED 290, Foundations of Education (Observations included) .....	3
ED 322, Educational Psychology (Aiding placement included) .....	3
ED 334, Content Area Reading and Language Development .....	3
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum .....	2
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education .....	<u>3</u>
Total	14

**Additional professional course for students seeking a PK-12 license in Health and Physical Education, Theatre Arts, or Visual Arts:**

ED 378, Curriculum in Grades PK-6.....	<u>2</u>
Total	16

### FIELD EXPERIENCES FOR 6-12 AND PK-12 CANDIDATES

	Semester Hours
ED 478, Teaching Assistant, Secondary/PK-12 Education .....	1
*ED 489, Directed Teaching/Seminar in Secondary/PK-12 Education .....	<u>12</u>
Total	13

**Additional field experience for students seeking a PK-12 license in Health and Physical Education, Theatre Arts, or Visual Arts:**

ED 379, Teaching Assistant in Grades PK-12.....	<u>1</u>
Total	14

**REQUIRED COURSES IN THE SUBJECT AREA(S) OF INTENDED LICENSURE**

Required courses in the subject area(s) of intended licensure are listed in the catalog under the specific major(s). Any related course requirements are listed in those sections. For Biology, see page 73; English, see page 110; History and Social Science, see page 132; Mathematics, see page 160; Health and Physical Education, see page 179; Theatre Arts, see page 211; Visual Arts, see page 57.

**Field Experiences**

Extensive clinical experiences and practica are built into Averett's education programs to facilitate the transition from theory to practice. Various courses provide opportunities for the student to observe, tutor, aid, and do directed teaching in off-campus settings, as well as tutor children in area schools. Additional information about the various field experiences is provided in the course descriptions.

**Courses of Instruction in Education**

**180 Earth Science/Geography for Educators (2)**

A course designed to provide future teachers with a sound foundation for understanding the content, process, and skills of earth science and geography. Students will explore earth's cycles and change, including but not limited to: weather; ecosystems; energy relationships; motions as related to seasons, tides, time and phases of the moon; the water cycle; the rock cycle; properties of the earth and the solar system; historical cycles and fossils; the oceans and currents; plate tectonics; weathering and erosion; soil formation; and human impact. In addition, students will explore the shaping of the earth's surface, use maps and other representations to analyze change, track changes in human population and urbanization, and identify various resources and their uses.

**290 Foundations of Education (3)**

A course dealing with the historical development, philosophy, structure, social function, legal aspects, financial support, and current problems of American public education. Admissions procedures to studies in professional education will also be undertaken. The student will not be admitted to this course until a minimum of 30 semester hours of college study is successfully completed. This course is a prerequisite for all other courses in education.

**322 Educational Psychology (3)**

A course designed to allow the student to investigate the nature of human learning as it takes place in the school setting and to study approaches for the evaluation of student progress in learning. The student will also give attention to the psychological aspects and implications of classroom management. During this course, the student will serve as a teacher's aide in an area school.

**334 Content Reading and Language Development (3)**

This course provides for the study and application of literacy in teaching Virginia's Standards of Learning (SOL) in all content areas. Anticipated topics include development of students' study and reading habits, the appreciation of a variety of literature and techniques to increase reading comprehension. Skills for working with small groups, and gifted and special needs students will be addressed. The class will discuss how technology can be used to address these topics along with practical applications of technology for completion of some course requirements. The course instruction will focus on individual and cooperative group work in both a classroom and computer lab. A 10-hour field placement is required for all students.

**350 Reading and Language Development (3)**

A course dealing with the relationship of reading to the other language arts—listening, speaking and writing. Students will examine the principles underlying the teaching of reading using the total language approach. Special attention will be given to the development of the language arts skills as a foundation for the reading skills. Emphasis will be placed on these skills from the readiness stage through the middle grades. Students must enroll also in the field experience section that accompanies this course.

**351 Field Experiences/Practicum in Reading and Language Development (0)**

A practicum designed to provide application of theory and research to classroom practice. It allows the preservice teacher opportunities in a supervised setting to implement instruction with an individual student or a small group of students. Corequisite: ED 350. Graded on a Pass/Fail basis.

**378 Curriculum in Grades PK-6 (2)**

A course designed to introduce prospective PK-6 educators to the philosophical basis of curriculum development; subject matter content in all disciplines with particular emphasis in social studies and history; current events in curriculum development; and national, state, and local Standards of Learning. Corequisite: ED 379.

**379 Teaching Assistant: Grades PK-6 (1)**

A field experience designed to acquaint prospective teachers with the day-to-day realities of teaching as they observe students and their behavior patterns in both structured and non-structured settings, become acquainted with the diverse levels of achievement within the classroom, learn to evaluate curricular materials and resources, and gain practical experience by assuming a variety of teacher roles. The student will gain practice in instructing the total class, the small group, and the individual during the 40-hour placement in an Elementary setting (grades PK-6). Corequisite: ED 378. Graded on Pass/Fail basis.

**384 The Exceptional Student (3)**

An overview of special education and study of theories, characteristics, and needs of exceptional students. Attention will be given to the historical background and legal aspects of special education, general practices for instructional programming and individual evaluation. Fulfills VDOE Special Education General Curriculum K-12 8 VAC 20-542-480, foundations, characteristics, legal foundations, medical aspects, General Curriculum Coursework, characteristics, and study/application of VDOE Professional Studies Requirements, Special Education 8 VAC 20-22-130, Human Growth and Development birth through adolescence. Satisfies a course requirement toward a minor in Special Education

**397 Introduction to Autism Spectrum Disorders (3)**

This course is designed to address the characteristics and diagnosis of Autism Spectrum Disorders (ASD), with a primary emphasis on autism and Asperger's Syndrome, the impact of those characteristics on learning, and the appropriate assessment needed to develop an individualized education program. The course will also include information on proactive teaching strategies, accommodations, and modifications that support socialization, communication, and academics for individuals with ASD.

**401 Instruction in Grades PK-6 (3)**

A course providing prospective teachers with the opportunity to explore teaching strategies and examine materials appropriate for the child in grades PK-6. Lesson planning, unit planning, micro-teaching, and classroom management strategies will also receive heavy emphasis. This course must be taken during the semester immediately prior to ED 488, Directed Teaching/Seminar in Grades PK-6. Prerequisites: ED 378 and 379.

**403 Content Area Literacy for Diverse Populations (3)**

Instruction in this course will impart an understanding of diverse learners, their characteristics and include adapting Virginia Curriculum Standards for instruction to teach comprehension skills in all content areas, including questioning strategies, summarizing and retelling skills, strategies in literal, interpretive, critical and evaluative comprehension, as well as the ability to foster appreciation of independent reading. Vocabulary development, systematic writing instruction strategies, and study skills including time management and transitioning skills across the content curriculum for K-12 will be studied. Pre/in-service teachers will demo content instructional knowledge for diverse students in one level of a K-12 field placement.

**406 Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education (3)**

A course designed to deal with instructional methods and with procedures for classroom management appropriate for teaching in grades 6-12 and in certain PK-12 programs. Prerequisites: ED 474 and 478.

**407 Math Curriculum & Instruction Adaptation (3)**

The purpose of this course is to provide study and experiences designed to fulfill: VDOE SPECIAL EDUCATION GENERAL CURRICULUM K-12 8 VAC 20-542-480, Core Coursework: 1. Foundations, Characteristics, legal and medical aspects, a. 1-7 2. Assessments and management of instruction and behavior, a. 4-5, b.1,2, 4-8; and VDOE SPECIAL EDUCATION GENERAL CURRICULUM K-12 8 VAC 20-542-480, General Curriculum Coursework: 1. Characteristics, a. 1-8 2. Individualized education program implementation, a. 1-3a-i. This course is designed to provide an overview of curricular and instructional adaptations for special education math students, preK-12. Attention is given to educational implications of the various disabilities along with modifications based on best special education practice. Students will interpret student data from a variety of assessment tools to plan and make appropriate program decisions.

**443 Diagnosis and Application of Reading and Language Arts (2)**

This course provides pre-service elementary teachers with the basic knowledge of formal and informal literacy assessments and interpretation. Discussion of interpretation will focus on how assessment results can be used in the professional setting and in discussion with parents. Special attention will be given to interpreting scores of exceptional students. A wide range of instructional plans will be discussed. The pre-service teachers will plan appropriate instruction to demonstrate their proficiency in utilizing a variety of strategies for reading vocabulary development and reading fluency. Strategies for incorporating vocabulary development across the curriculum will be emphasized. Students will come to understand the unique needs of students with language difference and delays as well as the role of the family in developing literacy. Technology is utilized throughout the course in a variety of formats; PowerPoint is one program of special emphasis. Prerequisites: ED 350 and 351. Corequisite: ED 444

**444 Practicum in Reading (1)**

This field placement course allows students a tutorial experience where they can use and interpret formal and informal literacy assessments. Pre-service teachers will vary instruction to demonstrate their understanding of student's level of literacy development and needs. Pre-service teachers will tutor a student in area schools, plan instruction, confer with the instructor and others as needed, and write a formal report based on their tutee. This course is graded on a pass/fail basis. Prerequisites: ED 350 and 351. Corequisite: ED 443

**469 Classroom Management and Positive Behavioral Support (3)**

The purpose of this course is to provide study and field experiences designed to fulfill VDOE Professional Studies Requirements, Special Education 8 VAC 20-22-130 Classroom and Behavior Management. Specifically, study and experiences leading toward an understanding and application of classroom management and behavior management techniques and individual interventions, including techniques that promote emotional well-being, teach and maintain behavioral conduct and skills consistent with norms, standards, and rules of educational environments. Diverse approaches based upon behavioral, cognitive, affective, social and ecological theory, and practice. This course also provides study and field experiences to fulfill requirements of VDOE Special Education General Curriculum VAC 20-542-480. Practicum experiences include observations in K-12 settings, assisting in inclusion settings, site-based direct instruction, and class fieldtrips.

**471 Curriculum and Instruction for Students with Disabilities (3)**

Study of the development, implementation and evaluation of programs for students with disabilities, specific attention to students with learning disabilities and emotional/behavioral disabilities. Foundations of special education, legal requirements, identification and characteristics of students with disabilities, assessment, planning curriculum, differentiation of instruction, universal design, response to intervention approaches, curriculum adaptations, effective research-based strategies, assistive technology, creating learning environments, and teaming. Practicum experiences include observations in PK-12 inclusion settings, assisting, sitebased direct instruction, and fieldtrips. Fulfills a 3 semester hour requirement of VDOE Professional Studies Requirements Special Education 8VAC 20-220130. Course fulfills a course requirement for a minor in Special Education.

**474 Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum (2)**

A course designed to contribute to students' understanding of the principles of learning; classroom management; selection and use of materials, including media and computers; and evaluation of pupil performance. Curriculum for both middle and secondary education will be explored. Additionally, the course will cover the general structures of the secondary school, curricular design, the process of curricular change, and trends and innovations in the students' intended teaching program. Corequisite: ED 478.

**478 Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education (1)**

A field experience designed to acquaint prospective secondary teachers with the day-to-day realities of teaching as they observe students and their behavior patterns in both structured and non-structured settings, become acquainted with the diverse levels of achievement within the classroom, learn to evaluate curricular materials and resources, and gain practical experience by assuming a variety of teacher roles. The student will gain practice in instructing the total class, the small group, and the individual during the 30-hour placement in a secondary school (grades 6-12) or appropriate placement to give the student exposure for PK-12 licensure. Attention is given to observational, audiovisual, and instructional skills needed in the placement. Corequisite: ED 474. Graded on Pass/Fail basis.

**479 Assessment of Learning (3)**

Study and field experiences designed to fulfill VDOE Special Education General Curriculum K-12 8 VAC 20-542-480 Core coursework: Assessments and management of instruction and behavior, general curriculum coursework, characteristics, IEP implementation, transitioning, study and field experiences to fulfill VDOE Professional Studies Requirements, Special Education 8 VAC 20-22-130 Curriculum and Instructional Procedures. Field experiences focus upon assessment of learning and behavior. This course fulfills a course requirement for the Minor in Special Education and an undergraduate prerequisite to the graduate level endorsement in Special Education. Prerequisites: ED 290, ED 350-351, and ED 322.

**483 Mathematics and Science for Elementary Education (2)**

A course designed to prepare students to teach mathematics and science content, concepts, and skills for grades PK-6.

**486 Autism Spectrum Disorders: Behavior Modification (3)**

This course is designed to address the principles and procedures of behavior modification and their use with individuals with Autism. Students learn and practice the skills of observing, recording, and graphing behavior and behavior changes. In addition, the factors that influence behavior and the components of behavior analysis (antecedents, behavior, and consequences) will be discussed and practiced. Students will develop an understanding of how to evaluate the effectiveness of a behavior plan and how such a plan should be implemented.

**487 Autism Spectrum Disorders: Curriculum and Program Development (3)**

This course is designed to address curriculum and program development for children with autism spectrum disorder. Students learn and practice administering the PEP-4, ABLLS-R, and the ADOS to students with an ASD. Student develop an appropriate program based on information obtained through the previously designated instruments. Students have the opportunity to observe and engage students with ASD in at least two different settings. Students demonstrate cumulative skills and knowledge throughout the three courses (ED 397, ED486, and ED 487).

**Directed Teaching/Seminar**

The student will enroll in the appropriate directed teaching course during one semester of the student's senior year after having successfully completed the appropriate instruction course and all other professional education requirements with a grade of C or better. All students must be fully admitted to the Teacher Education Program and have passed both Praxis Core and Praxis II, the Virginia Communication and Literacy Assessment and the Reading for Virginia Educators (RVE), if applicable, before they will be placed in directed teaching. The RVE is required for PK-6 and Special Education certification.

The student will be placed in an area public school for the directed teaching experience in keeping with the student's intended teaching area. The student teacher will be supervised by public school personnel and by University personnel with experience appropriate to the student's intended area(s) of licensure. For each endorsement being sought, the student will, in the directed teaching experience and/or in earlier practica, gain supervised experience in at least two settings in two different school divisions for a minimum of 300 clock hours, at least half of which will be in direct instruction.

Secondary and PK-12 candidates who wish initial recommendation for licensure in two or more subject areas must undertake directed teaching in each of these areas. If a PK-12 endorsement is sought, teaching activities must be at both the elementary and middle/secondary levels.

Seminars are held concurrently with directed teaching and are intended to provide systematic discussion of the student's experiences during directed teaching and provide assistance in solving the common problems faced by the students in directed teaching. Such seminars are part of the student's professional semester.

The combined Directed Teaching/Seminar is graded on a Pass/Fail basis only.

**The directed teaching courses are listed below:**

- |            |   |             |
|------------|---|-------------|
| <b>488</b> | <b>Directed Teaching/Seminar in Grades PK-6</b>               | <b>(12)</b> |
| <b>489</b> | <b>Directed Teaching/Seminar in Secondary/PK-12 Education</b> | <b>(12)</b> |

---

## MATHEMATICS (MTH)

---

Donald T. Ethington, Chair  
Stephen Davidson  
Steven R. Lemery

Susan E. Osborne  
Gary A. Tucker

The Mathematics Department offers a variety of courses and programs, including four concentrations: Traditional Mathematics, Mathematics with Teaching Licensure at the Secondary Level (6-12), Decision Science, and Biomathematics. In addition, the Mathematics department offers a minor in mathematics.

In all math-related concentrations, students will communicate mathematics clearly and effectively, encounter a variety of learning experiences and use mathematics in a technological environment.

The Mathematics: Traditional Mathematics concentration is a traditional course of study with emphasis on both theory and application. The program requires students to master the techniques of mathematics, apply these techniques to real problems, and understand the underlying theory. This concentration is an excellent choice for those planning to attend graduate school in a variety of areas, wishing to develop their abilities in logic, wanting to expand their horizons by way of mathematics, or using mathematics as a companion area for another major.

The Mathematics: Teaching Licensure in Grades 6-12 concentration is equivalent to the traditional mathematics concentration but is designed for students planning to teach mathematics at the secondary level. A student who has graduated from Averett's mathematics/teaching licensure program and is certified to teach in the state of Virginia may transfer that licensure to approximately 38 states and the District of Columbia.

The Mathematics: Decision Science concentration is an interdisciplinary program for students with a combined interest in mathematics and the quantitative areas of business. This is an excellent choice for students interested in quantitative reasoning in the public or private sector.

The Mathematics: Biomathematics concentration is an interdisciplinary program for students who wish to gain employment in the fields of bioinformatics or biostatistics. In addition, it is designed to meet the needs of students interested in furthering their educational endeavors in the fields of computational biology, bioinformatics, biostatistics, epidemiology, and biomedical engineering.

The Mathematics Department believes the strengths of its programs are a direct result of its dedicated students, small classes which allow good student-faculty relationships, personal attention from a faculty that places emphasis on quality teaching, integration of technology into the curriculum, and a faculty that is interested in and constantly aware of individual progress.

A student who chooses to major in mathematics may elect either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree. The student is encouraged to select an option of either a major or minor in another field, or additional study in related areas. In particular, a major or minor in computer science, biology, or business is an excellent area for applications of mathematics.

Students must attain at least a 2.0 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

## Requirements for a Concentration in Mathematics

In addition to the General Education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
MTH 201, Calculus I .....	3
MTH 202, Calculus II .....	3
MTH 301, Calculus III.....	3
MTH 311, 312, Abstract Algebra I, II .....	6
MTH 315, 316, Theory of Real Variables I, II .....	6
MTH 322, Multivariable Calculus .....	3
MTH 441, Senior Project.....	3
Mathematics Elective, 200+ level.....	3
Mathematics Electives, 400 level .....	<u>6</u>
Total	36

Suggested electives: Courses in computer science, computer information systems, chemistry, physics, psychology, biology, business, and additional courses in mathematics.

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Mathematics

Freshman Year:

MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II

Sophomore Year:

MTH 200+ Elective

MTH 301, Calculus III

MTH 322, Multivariable Calculus

Junior Year:

MTH 311, 312, Abstract Algebra I, II

MTH 400+ Elective

Senior Year:

MTH 315, 316, Theory of Real Variables I, II

MTH 400+ Elective

MTH 441, Senior Project

## Requirements for a Concentration in Mathematics with Teaching Licensure (6-12)

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
MTH 201, Calculus I .....	3
MTH 202, Calculus II .....	3
MTH 211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics.....	3
MTH 301, Calculus III.....	3
MTH 311, Abstract Algebra I.....	3
MTH 312, Abstract Algebra II <b>or</b>	
MTH 315, Theory of Real Variables I.....	3
MTH 316, Theory of Real Variables II .....	3
MTH 401, Geometry.....	3
MTH 403, Probability and Statistics.....	3
Mathematics Electives, 300-400 level .....	<u>6</u>
Total	33

Suggested electives: Courses in computer science, computer information systems, chemistry, physics, psychology, biology, business, and additional courses in education and mathematics.

The other General Education and Professional Education requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for teaching licensure in Mathematics are explained in detail on page 151-153.

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Mathematics with Teaching Licensure (6-12)

Freshman Year:

MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II

Sophomore Year:

ED 290, Foundations of Education  
MTH 211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics  
MTH 301, Calculus III  
MTH 300+ Elective  
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology

Junior Year:

ED 322, Educational Psychology  
ED 334, Content Reading and Language Development  
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum  
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education  
MTH 311, Abstract Algebra I  
MTH 312, Abstract Algebra II\*  
MTH 401, Geometry  
MTH 300+ Elective\*\*

Senior Year:

ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education  
ED 489, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education  
MTH 315, Theory of Real Variables I  
MTH 316, Theory of Real Variables II\*  
MTH 403, Probability and Statistics  
MTH 300+ Elective\*\*

\* Take only one

\*\*Take only one

### Requirements for a Concentration in Decision Science

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting .....	3
BSA 366, Production and Operations Management .....	3
BSA 370, Principles of Finance <b>or</b> BSA 456, Business Forecasting .....	3
BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making .....	3
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I .....	4
CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II .....	4
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics .....	3
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics .....	3
MTH 201, 202, 301, Calculus I, II, III.....	9
MTH 302, Linear Algebra .....	3

MTH 322, Multivariable Calculus.....	3
MTH 403, Probability and Statistics.....	3
MTH 441, Senior Project.....	3
Electives to be selected from the following (Choose 2):	
BSA 456, Business Forecasting <b>or</b>	
BSA 370 Principles of Finance (3)	
CSS 231, Programming in C <sup>++</sup> (4) <b>or</b>	
CSS 235 Programming in Java (4)	
CSS 411, Modeling and Simulation (3)	
ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics (3)	
MTH 432, Ordinary Differential Equations (3).....	6-7
Total	53-54

Suggested electives: Additional courses in computer science, computer information systems, business, economics, and mathematics.

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Decision Science

#### Freshman Year:

CSS 211, 212, Introduction to Programming I, II  
 BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I  
 MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II

#### Sophomore Year:

ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics  
 MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics  
 MTH 301, Calculus III  
 MTH 302, Linear Algebra

#### Junior Year:

BSA 370, Principles of Finance **or**  
     BSA 456, Business Forecasting (choose one)  
 BSA 366, Production and Operations Management  
 MTH 322, Multivariable Calculus  
 Required Elective

#### Senior Year:

BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making  
 Required Elective  
 MTH 403, Probability and Statistics and MTH 441, Senior Project

### Requirements for a Concentration in Biomathematics

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
MTH201, 202, 301, Calculus I, II, III	9
MTH211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics	3
MTH302, Linear Algebra	3
MTH322, Multivariable Calculus	3
MTH403, Probability and Statistics	3
MTH432, Ordinary Differential Equations	3
MTH441, Senior Project	3
BIO101, Introduction to Biology	4
BIO203, Genetics	4

BIO204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology I or II	4
BIO360, Cellular and Molecular Biology	4
CH111, 112, College Chemistry I and II	8
CH206, Organic and Biological Chemistry	4
PSC201, 202, General College Physics I and II	8
Select one of the following courses:	4
CSS211, Introduction to Programming I	
CSS231, Programming in C++ <b>or</b>	
CSS235, Programming in Java	
<b>Total</b>	<b>67</b>

Suggested electives: Additional courses in computer science, biology, chemistry, physical science, and mathematics.

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Biomathematics

#### Freshman Year

MTH201, 202, Calculus I, II  
 BIO101, Introduction to Biology  
 CH111, 112, College Chemistry I, II

#### Sophomore Year

CSS course (CSS211 or 231 or 235)  
 MTH301, Calculus III  
 MTH211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics  
 PSC201, 202, General College Physics I, II

#### Junior Year

MTH302, Linear Algebra  
 MTH322, Multivariable Calculus  
 BIO204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology I or II  
 BIO203, Genetics  
 CH206, Organic and Biological Chemistry

#### Senior Year

BIO360, Cellular and Molecular Biology  
 MTH403, Probability and Statistics  
 MTH432, Ordinary Differential Equations  
 MTH441, Senior Project

### Minor

The department offers a minor in mathematics for those students desiring a strong support area for their major. Students electing a minor in mathematics must complete 18 semester hours in mathematics including MTH 201, 202, 211, 301, and 6 additional hours at the 300 or 400-level.

Students must attain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

### Master's Degrees in Education

Averett offers a Master of Education with a concentration of 18 graduate hours in mathematics. See *The Catamount* for more information on graduate studies in education.

## **Courses of Instruction in Mathematics**

### **100 Fundamentals of Mathematics**

**(3)**

A course designed to review and develop mathematical skills needed for college algebra. Topics include properties of the real number system, graphing, word problems, and selected topics in beginning algebra. Credits are not computed in the grade point average and are not counted toward the 120 semester hour graduation requirement. Offered each semester.

### **103 Principles of Mathematics**

**(3)**

A first course in college mathematics focusing on functions and their applications. Topics include equations, graphing, relations, and functions with an emphasis on polynomial, logarithmic, and exponential functions. The TI-89 graphing calculator is required. Prerequisite: MTH 100 or placement. Offered each semester.

### **111, 112 Theory of Modern Mathematics I, II**

**(3,3)**

A course designed to develop a basic understanding of mathematical systems (including a development of the natural number system, the integers, and the rational, real, and complex number systems), number theory, probability and statistics, geometry, technology, and the role of deductive and inductive reasoning. Prerequisite: MTH 100 or placement in MTH 103. Offered fall, spring semester, respectively.

### **151 Precalculus Mathematics**

**(3)**

A course designed for those students requiring a knowledge of precalculus mathematics with an emphasis on functions and their applications. Topics include advanced algebra, trigonometry, and analytical geometry. This course is intended for those students planning to take MTH 201. The TI-89 graphing calculator is required. Prerequisite: MTH 103 or placement. Offered spring semester.

### **160 Introduction to Statistics**

**(3)**

A first course in statistics. Topics include permutations, combinations, distributions, (binomial, normal, Student's t, chi-square, and F), sampling, hypothesis testing, significance levels, confidence intervals, regression and correlation. Does not count toward minor in Computer Science. Prerequisite: MTH 103 or equivalent. Offered each semester.

### **171 Applied Calculus**

**(3)**

A study of the basic principles of calculus and their applications. Designed especially for the student desiring a one semester exposure to the fundamental concepts of calculus. Topics include limits, continuity, differentiation of algebraic, logarithmic, and exponential functions. The TI-89 graphing calculator is required. Prerequisite: MTH 103. (NOTE: Credit will not be awarded for MTH 171 after receiving credit for MTH 201.) Offered each semester.

### **201 Calculus I**

**(3)**

A study of differential calculus of the elementary functions with associated analytical geometry. The TI-89 graphing calculator is required. Prerequisite: MTH 104 or placement. Offered fall semester.

### **202 Calculus II**

**(3)**

An introduction to integral calculus and a continued study of calculus as applied to the elementary and transcendental functions. The TI-89 graphing calculator is required. Prerequisite: MTH 201. Offered spring semester.

### **211 Foundations of Higher Mathematics**

**(3)**

A course designed to introduce students to basic techniques of writing mathematical proofs as well as fundamental ideas used throughout mathematics. Students will be introduced to the logic needed for deductive reasoning and will use direct and indirect arguments to construct proofs of some elementary theorems. Topics include logic operators and quantifiers, relations, functions, equivalence relations, and Mathematical Induction. Prerequisite: MTH 171 or MTH 201. Offered spring semester.

- 301 Calculus III (3)**  
 A continued study of calculus. Topics include improper integrals, infinite series, power series functions, and differential equations. The TI-89 graphing calculator is required. Prerequisite: MTH 202. Offered fall semester.
- 302 Linear Algebra (3)**  
 An introduction to linear algebra. Topics include systems of linear equations, vector spaces, bases, dimension, linear transformations, matrices, determinants, the Gram-Schmidt process, eigenvalues, eigenvectors, and geometric applications. The TI-89 graphing calculator is required. Prerequisite: MTH 202. Alternate years: spring semester, odd years.
- 311, 312 Abstract Algebra I, II (3,3)**  
 An introduction to a systematic study of abstract algebra from a theoretical viewpoint. Topics include the theory of groups, rings, integral domains, and fields. Applications include the construction and description of certain characteristics of the natural numbers, integers, rational, real, and complex numbers. Prerequisite: MTH 202. Alternate years: fall semester, even years and spring semester, odd years, respectively.
- 315, 316 Theory of Real Variables I, II (3,3)**  
 An introduction to a systematic study of analysis from a theoretical viewpoint with an emphasis on real variable theory. Topics include the Archimedean property, set terminology, topology and limits in metric spaces, continuity, uniform continuity, compact and connected sets, differentiation, Riemann-Stieltjes integrals, and the Weierstrass-approximation theorem. Prerequisite: MTH 202. Alternate years: fall semester, odd years and spring semester, even years, respectively.
- 321 History of Mathematics (2)**  
 A course designed to develop an understanding of the historical and current relationships of mathematics to society and the sciences. Junior status.
- 322 Multivariable Calculus (3)**  
 A study of the calculus of real-valued functions of several variables, vector calculus, solid analytical geometry, and differential equations. The TI-89 graphing calculator is required. Prerequisite: MTH 301. Alternate years: spring semester, odd years.
- 332 Numerical Analysis (3)**  
 An introduction to computer methods for differentiation, numerical integration, roots of polynomials, interpolation, systems of equations, and solutions of ordinary differential equations. Prerequisites: CSS 212 or 231; MTH 301. Alternate years.
- 401 Geometry (3)**  
 An introduction to geometry theories from a modern axiomatic viewpoint. Basically concerned with Euclidean geometry with an introduction to non-Euclidean geometry. Alternate years: fall semester, even years.
- 402 Point Set Topology (3)**  
 An introduction to point-set topology. Topics include general theory, connected and compact spaces, the separation axioms, and properties which remain invariant under certain mappings. Alternate years.
- 403 Probability and Statistics (3)**  
 A study of the theory of probability and statistics based on a knowledge of calculus. Topics include combinatorial analysis, the axioms of probability, expectation, moment generating functions, random variables, sampling, parameter estimation, hypothesis testing, and regression. Alternate years: fall semester, odd years.
- 405 Set Theory (3)**  
 An introduction to the theory of sets. Topics include the algebra of sets, relations, Peano axioms, order and well ordering, axiom of choice, Zorn's lemma, ordinal and cardinal numbers with their respective arithmetics, Schroder-Bernstein theorem, and the continuum hypothesis. Alternate years.

**432 Ordinary Differential Equations**

**(3)**

An introduction to ordinary differential equations, and the associated methods, theory, and applications. Topics include first-order equations, second- and higher-order linear equations, and systems of first-order linear equations. Prerequisite: MTH 301. Alternate years.

**441 Senior Project**

**(3)**

A primary emphasis of this course is to provide an opportunity for seniors to demonstrate their knowledge of and abilities in mathematics or a mathematics-related area by completing a senior project. In particular, students will demonstrate that they can: communicate in writing clearly and effectively, deal effectively with basic concepts, deal effectively with theoretical concepts as they arise, and apply their mathematical knowledge to develop and understand concepts outside their normal course of study. Prerequisite: Senior Status. Offered fall semester.

---

## MODERN LANGUAGES

---

Barbara A. Clark, Chair

Catherine O. Clark

The major in Modern Languages consists of advanced study of either French or Spanish – the primary language – and Intermediate+ level study of the other – the secondary language. At least 12 semester hours of the primary language and 6 semester hours of the secondary language must be taken at Averett.

It is assumed that students entering this program will have already begun their study of French or Spanish prior to their arrival at Averett. A student with no background in either language *may* complete this major in four years but only through very careful planning with the faculty of the Modern Languages department.

Study of the **primary language** will include the following courses:

	Semester Hours
221, Conversation and Listening .....	4
222, Advanced Writing and Grammar.....	3
225, Introduction to French and Francophone Literature <b>or</b> .....	3
315, Introduction to Hispanic Literature	
317/318/319, One Civilization course in French <b>or</b> .....	3
316/317, One Civilization course in Spanish	
399, Advanced language STUDY ABROAD.....	6 (minimum)
420, Senior Seminar.....	<u>2</u>
	21

Depending on the length of the study abroad program, a student may satisfy requirements for some of the courses listed above at the foreign university. Prerequisite for the Conversation and Listening (221) and subsequent courses is completion of the second semester of Intermediate level (202) language study OR transferred hours through 202 OR placement beyond the 202 level.

Study of the **secondary language** will include the following courses:

	Semester Hours
221, Conversation and Listening .....	4
222, Advanced Writing and Grammar.....	3
225 OR 315 Introduction to Literature is <i>highly</i> recommended.....	<u>(3)</u>
	7

**Total *minimum* hours required for major..... 28 credit hours**

Note: Students who have little or no experience in the secondary language should begin study of that language immediately, and even concurrently, with study of the primary language. If no credit is transferred in for the secondary language, the student must begin in level 101. **In such cases the total number of hours required for the secondary language would be 21 (101/102, 201/202, 221, 222.)**

The number of hours required for the secondary language varies depending upon transfer hours or advanced placement. The last six semester hours must be taken at Averett, unless permission has been granted to substitute a different secondary language or the student studies the second language abroad.

## Secondary Language Alternatives

Students may offer a different modern language as the secondary language if they can demonstrate ability in that language at the Intermediate+ level. In this case, the student should consult with the department chair before beginning the program.

## STUDY ABROAD COMPONENT OF THE MODERN LANGUAGES MAJOR

In order to benefit from a total immersion experience in language and culture/s, students are required to live with a local family in a country where the students' primary language is the official language. Students will simultaneously enroll in an approved study abroad program consisting of a minimum of 6 semester hours for summer programs and 12 semester hours for semester programs. Students must pass all courses taken at the foreign university with a grade of C or better. The faculty of the Modern Languages department will work with students to locate approved study abroad programs, and will make the final determination of the amount of credit earned and transferred to Averett. If unusual circumstances prevent fulfillment of this requirement, a departmentally approved program or internship within the United States that would place the student in an immersion situation, both linguistically and culturally, will be considered as an alternative to study abroad.

Financial support for study abroad is available to qualified students through the Barksdale Scholarship. Please refer to the section on Scholarships, page 231, for details of this award.

Please refer to the catalog section on **French** on page 128 for a listing and descriptions of French classes and related information, and to the section on **Spanish** on p. 207 for a listing and descriptions of Spanish classes and related information. In addition to the courses listed there, students who choose to major in Modern Languages will take two other advanced classes; these are French or Spanish 399, Advanced Language Study Abroad, and French or Spanish 420, Senior Seminar.

## Courses of Instruction in French and Spanish

**FR 399, SPA 399    Advanced Language Study Abroad** (\*)  
\*Credit hours vary; see course description above.

**FR 420, SPA 420,    Senior Seminar** (2)  
The student will, in consultation with the Modern Languages faculty member/s, research a topic of interest and significant importance, such as international relations, cultural issues, environment, business, politics, religion, literature, history, etc. and make a presentation to the Averett community, in English, in an open forum. A substantive paper in the primary language of choice will be submitted to the department prior to the presentation.

---

## MUSIC (MUS)

---

Anne Lewis, Chair  
Janet Phillips

Located in the Emily Swain Grousbeck Music Center, the Department of Music offers a Bachelor of Arts degree with a major in music which has an emphasis in three performance areas: Keyboard, Instrumental, and Voice. Two areas of concentration are available: Church Music and Performance. Graduates will be prepared for vocational goals such as leadership positions in the field of church music, private teaching or performance. These concentrations also are designed for students who want to further their education in a graduate school or seminary.

The music program offers performance opportunities for students in choral, handbell, and instrumental ensembles, both on and off campus. Opportunities are also available for students to work in area churches, be involved in musical theatre productions, perform at athletic events, and provide solo performance for community events.

An audition is required for admission into the Music program. Auditions can be arranged directly with the Chair of the Music Department after a student has been admitted to the University. For students whose principal instrument of study is piano or organ, the audition should include major scales in all keys, and literature at least comparable to Clementi's Sonatinas and Bach's Two-Part Inventions. For students whose principal instrument of study is voice, the audition should include a work comparable to the repertoire found in *26 Italian Songs and Arias* and a sacred solo or oratorio solo comparable to "He Shall Feed His Flock" Or "O Rest In the Lord." For instrumental students, the audition should include all major and chromatic scales, 2 contrasting solos from the standard repertoire for your instrument, and sight reading.

Students must attain at least a 2.0 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

### Requirements for a Major in Music

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

#### Common Core Requirements

	Semester Hours
MUS 103, Introduction to Music Literature .....	3
MUS 104, Fundamentals of Music .....	1
MUS 207, Basic Conducting .....	2
MUS 260, Music History: Medieval, Renaissance, and Baroque .....	3
MUS 261, Music History: Classical, Romantic, and Twentieth Century .....	3
MUS 270, Music Theory I and Lab .....	4
MUS 271, Music Theory II and Lab .....	4
MUS 307, Choral Conducting for the Church Musicians .....	2
MUS 370, Music Theory III .....	3
MUS 371, Music Theory IV .....	3
	Total 28

In addition to the core requirements, the student must elect one of the concentrations described below.

## Church Music Concentration

	Semester Hours
Core Requirements .....	28
Applied Music.....	12
(Principal Instrument - 8 hours)	
(Secondary Instrument - 4 hours)	
Ensemble (MUS 161 and/or 163 and/or 165).....	8
MUS 215, Church Music Seminar I (Instrumental Methods) .....	1
MUS 315, Church Music Seminar II (Children) .....	1
MUS 380, Church Music .....	3
MUS 407, Advanced Choral Conducting .....	2
MUS 420, Hymnody/Liturgy.....	3
MUS 461, 462 Internship (1,1).....	<u>2</u>
	Total 60

## Performance Concentration

	Semester Hours
Core Requirements .....	28
Applied Music.....	18
(Principal Instrument - 14 hours)	
(Secondary Instrument - 4 hours)	
Ensemble (MUS 161 and/or 163 and/or 165).....	6
MUS 480, Senior Recital .....	1
Music Electives	
Select from	
MUS 203, Musical Theatre Performance Lab	
MUS 380, Church Music	
MUS 215, Music Seminar I	
MUS 315, Church Music Seminar II	
MUS 407, Advanced Choral Conducting	
MUS 420, Hymnody/Liturgy	
TH 305, History of Musical Theatre.....	<u>2-3</u>
	Total 55-56

## Minor

Students selecting a minor in Music must complete 21 semester hours in Music, including the following courses:

	Semester Hours
MUS 103, Introduction to Music Literature .....	3
MUS 104, Fundamentals of Music .....	1
MUS 260, Music History: Medieval, Renaissance, and Baroque or MUS 261, Music History: Classical, Romantic, and Modern .....	3
MUS 270, Music Theory I and Lab .....	4
MUS 271, Music Theory II and Lab .....	4
MUS 131-432, Piano, <b>or</b> MUS 141-442, Organ <b>or</b> MUS 151-452, Voice <b>or</b> MUS 181-482, Instrumental .....	3
Electives	
Select from	
MUS 131-432, Piano	
MUS 141-442, Organ	
MUS 151-452, Voice	
MUS 181-482, Instrumental	
MUS 161, Averett Singers	
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir	
MUS 165, AU Cougar Band	
MUS 203, Musical Theatre Performance Lab	
MUS 207, Basic Conducting	
MUS 370, Music Theory III	
MUS 371, Music Theory IV	
MUS 380, Church Music	
TH 305, History of Musical Theatre .....	3
Total	21

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

For course requirements to obtain a minor in Musical Theatre, please refer to information listed in the Theatre section of the catalog.

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Music: Church Music Concentration

### Freshman Year:

Applied Music, Principal Instrument  
Applied Music, Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or  
    MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir and/or  
    MUS 165, AU Cougar Band  
MUS 103, Introduction to Music Literature  
MUS 104, Fundamentals of Music

### Sophomore Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument  
Applied Music: Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or  
    MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir and/or  
    MUS 165, AU Cougar Band  
MUS 207, Basic Conducting

MUS 215, Church Music Seminar I  
MUS 260, 261, Music History  
MUS 270, Music Theory I and Lab  
MUS 271, Music Theory II and Lab

Junior Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument  
Applied Music: Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or  
    MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir and/or  
    MUS 165, AU Cougar Band  
MUS 307, Choral Conducting for the Church Musician  
MUS 370, 371, Music Theory III, IV  
MUS 315, Church Music Seminar II  
MUS 407, Advanced Choral Conducting

Senior Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument  
  
MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or  
    MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir and/or  
    MUS 165, AU Cougar Band  
MUS 380, Church Music  
  
MUS 420, Hymnody/Liturgy  
MUS 461, 462, Internship I, II

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Music: Music Performance Concentration**

Freshman Year:

Applied Music, Principal Instrument (2 credit hours per semester)  
Applied Music, Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or  
    MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir and/or  
    MUS 165, AU Cougar Band  
MUS 103, Introduction to Music Literature  
MUS 104, Fundamentals of Music

Sophomore Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument (2 credit hours per semester)  
Applied Music: Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or  
    MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir and/or  
    MUS 165, AU Cougar Band  
  
MUS 260, 261, Music History  
MUS 270, Music Theory I and Lab  
MUS 271, Music Theory II and Lab

Junior Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument (2 credit hours per semester)  
Applied Music: Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or  
    MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir and/or  
    MUS 165, AU Cougar Band  
MUS 207, Basic Conducting  
MUS 307, Choral Conducting for the Church Musician  
MUS 370, 371, Music Theory III, IV

Senior Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument

Applied Music: Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or  
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir and/or  
MUS 165, AU Cougar Band  
MUS Electives  
MUS 480, Senior Recital

Enrollment in the Music program is limited and an audition is required for admission to the major. The prospective student should audition in the spring semester before entering in the fall. Auditions can be arranged directly with the music faculty after a student has been admitted to the University. Admissions Open House weekends are good times to schedule auditions. Auditions may be held as late as registration for the first semester of attendance; however, admission to the Music major is dependent upon a successful audition.

## **Courses of Instruction in Music**

### **101 Concert Attendance**

Every music major and minor will attend a minimum required number of concert events and write a review of each event as a course requirement of applied music study.

### **103 Introduction to Music Literature (3)**

A general survey of the history of Western music from the Middle Ages to the present. Emphasis will be upon important composers and musical styles with attention given to the development of skills in listening to music. This course satisfies 3 hours of Fine Arts requirement for General Education.

### **104 Fundamentals of Music (1)**

A study of fundamental musical skills including pitch notation, rhythmic notation, keyboard orientation, interval recognition, scales, key signatures, and basic music terminology. Prerequisite for MUS 270 and co-requisite for 100-level applied music. Students may be exempt from this course based on a placement test administered to all incoming music majors. This course may be an elective for the general student body.

### **118 Class Piano For Beginners (1)**

An introduction to the fundamental skills in playing the piano. No prior knowledge of music reading skills or piano technique is necessary for the successful completion of the course. Students are instructed in a group setting.

### **131-431\* Piano (1)**

A study of standard classical literature for the piano at any given proficiency level. Technique, scales, concepts of theory for piano, and literature survey are emphasized. Includes one 30-minute private lesson per week. May be repeated for credit at each level. A lab fee will be assessed. Non-music majors may enroll as space permits. Enrollment for all students is by permission of instructor.

### **132-432\* Piano (2)**

A study of standard classical literature for the piano at any given proficiency level. Technique, scales, concepts of theory for piano, and literature survey are emphasized. Includes one 60-minute lesson per week. May be repeated for credit at each level. A lab fee will be assessed. Non-music majors may enroll as space permits. Enrollment for all students is by permission of instructor.

### **141-441\* Organ (1)**

A study of standard classical literature for the organ at any given proficiency level. Technique, scales, concepts of theory for organ, and literature survey are emphasized. Includes one 30-minute private lesson per week. May be repeated for credit at each level. A lab fee will be assessed. Non-music majors may enroll as space permits. Enrollment for all students is by permission of instructor.

### **142-442\* Organ (2)**

A study of standard classical literature for the organ at any given proficiency level. Technique, scales, concepts of theory for organ, and literature survey are emphasized. Includes one 60-minute private lesson per week. May be repeated for credit at each level. A lab fee will be assessed. Non-music majors may enroll as space permits. Enrollment for all students is by permission of instructor.

**151-451\* Voice (1)**

A study of standard classical literature for the voice at any given proficiency level. Vocal techniques, breathing, tone placement, diction, and literature survey are emphasized. Includes one 30-minute private lesson per week. May be repeated for credit at each level. A lab fee will be assessed. Non-music majors may enroll as space permits. Enrollment for all students is by permission of instructor.

**152-452\* Voice (2)**

A study of standard classical literature for the voice at any given proficiency level. Vocal techniques, breathing, tone placement, diction, and literature survey are emphasized. Includes one 60-minute private lesson per week. May be repeated for credit at each level. A lab fee will be assessed. Non-music majors may enroll as space permits. Enrollment for all students is by permission of instructor.

\*Applied music courses are numbered according to this system: The first number defines the level (freshman, sophomore, etc), the second number defines the instrument, the third number defines the number of credit hours.

**161 Averett Singers (1)**

A course designed to offer instruction and experience in ensemble singing and provide a means of individual expression through musical performance. Membership is open to any student upon completion of an audition. May be repeated for a maximum of 8 semester hours credit.

**163 Averett Handbell Choir (1)**

A course designed to offer instruction and experience in the ringing of handbells and to provide a means of individual and ensemble expression through music. Membership is open to any student upon completion of an audition. May be repeated for a maximum of 8 semester hours credit.

**165 AU Cougar Band (1)**

A course designed to offer instrumental ensemble performance experiences in varied musical styles and venues, including concert band, pep band, and chamber music. Membership is open to any student upon completion of an audition. May be repeated for a maximum of 8 semester credit hours.

**181-481\*Instrumental (1)**

A study of standard music literature at any given proficiency level. Technique, scales, concepts of theory and literature survey are emphasized. Includes one 30-minute private lesson per week and a monthly studio class for performance and related topics. May be repeated for credit at each level. A lab fee will be assessed. Non-music majors may enroll as space permits. Enrollment for all students is by permission of instructor.

**182-482\*Instrumental (2)**

A study of standard music literature at any given proficiency level. Technique, scales, concepts of theory and literature survey are emphasized. Includes one 60-minute private lesson per week and a monthly studio class for performance and related topics. May be repeated for credit at each level. A lab fee will be assessed. Non-music majors may enroll as space permits. Enrollment for all students is by permission of instructor.

- Applied music courses are numbered according to this system: The first number defines the level (freshman, sophomore, etc.), the second number defines the instrument (3 = piano, 4 = organ, 5 = voice, 8 = instrumental), the third number defines the number of credit hours.

**191 Beginning Classical Guitar (1)**

An introduction to playing the classical guitar. Right and left hand techniques and concepts of musical notation particular to the instrument are emphasized. A 30-minute private lesson per week includes reading music,

playing solos, duets and scales. Over the course of the semester the student is introduced to standard guitar literature through listening activities and concerts. This course may be repeated for credit as often as needed. Permission of instructor.

**203 Music Theatre Performance Lab (same as TH207) (3)**

A course focused on the study of Musical Theatre literature with an emphasis on performance and audition preparation.

**207 Basic Conducting (2)**

A study of fundamental conducting skills including basic beat patterns and gestural techniques including preparation, release, and cueing. This course will meet 3 hours per week, and is open to the general student population.

**215 Church Music Seminar I (1)**

An introduction to methods, techniques, organizational strategies, and materials appropriate for use in a church instrumental program. The use of handbells and Orff instruments will be emphasized.

**260 Music History: Renaissance and Baroque (3)**

A study of the historical information and the actual music of the Renaissance and Baroque periods by examination of important movements that influenced the patronage and function of music, musical devices, forms, and composers. Specific works with clearly observable stylistic features are studied as illustrations of historically significant genres, styles, or techniques. This course satisfies three hours of Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Prerequisite: MUS 103 or permission of instructor.

**261 Music History: Classical, Romantic and Modern (3)**

A study of developments in the history of Western music in the 18th, and 19th centuries with a detailed study of forms, styles, and composers in representative musical literature. Special attention will be given to opera, the symphony, and solo literature. Emphasis will be placed upon the works of such composers as Mozart, Haydn, Beethoven, Schubert, Berlioz, Brahms, Wagner, and Verdi. This course satisfies three hours of Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Prerequisite: MUS 103 or permission of instructor.

**270 Music Theory I and Lab (4)**

A study of the harmonic common practice of composers during the 18th and 19th centuries. Emphasis is placed upon standard usages of harmonic content and technique, idiomatic procedures, and varied texture and styles. Laboratory work consists of exercises in ear training and sight singing. Prerequisite: MUS 104 or permission of instructor.

**271 Music Theory II and Lab (4)**

A continuation of MUS 270, studying the harmonic common practices of composers during the 18th and 19th centuries. Emphasis is placed upon standard usages of harmonic content and technique, idiomatic procedures, and varied texture and styles. Laboratory work consists of exercises in ear training and sight singing. Prerequisite: MUS 270.

**291 Classical Guitar Fingerings (1)**

This course is intended for students who have previously studied classical guitar. Technical applications will include right hand studies, the use of rest stroke, scales beyond the first position, solo work on longer pieces, duets, and performance-related issues. This course may be repeated for credit as often as needed. Permission of the instructor.

**307 Choral Conducting for the Church Musician (2)**

A continuation of fundamental conducting skills with emphasis on refinement of standard beat patterns, irregular beat patterns, interpretation and gestural skills, and rehearsal techniques. Standard youth and adult anthem literature will be used. Prerequisites: MUS 207 and MUS 270, 271. Co-requisite: MUS 161

**315 Church Music Seminar II (1)**

An introduction to methods, techniques, organizational strategies, and materials used in working with children's choirs.

**365 Classical Guitar Ensemble (1)**

Introduction to guitar ensemble. This course will focus on the dynamics of group ensemble playing, understanding tempo in a group situation, playing without a conductor, learning recovery techniques and making best use of individual practice time. May be repeated for credit as often as needed. Permission of instructor. Prerequisite or co-requisite: MUS291.

**370, 371 Music Theory III, IV (3,3)**

A study of advanced part writing techniques, form and analysis, and compositional devices and techniques of the 18th, 19th, and 20th centuries. Prerequisites: MUS 270, 271.

**380 Church Music (Same as REL 380) (3)**

A study of the relationship of music to worship in the history of the Western Church. By examination of influences that have shaped the musical practices of various denominations, both liturgical and nonliturgical worship are discussed in addition to the multi-faceted purposes of music as religious expression in contemporary society.

**407 Advanced Choral Conducting for the Church Musician (2)**

Rehearsal procedure, score analysis, choral literature review, working with instrumentalists, and leadership practices for the advanced conductor will be emphasized. Literature review will include major choral works. This course will meet three hours per week. Prerequisite: MUS 307. Co-requisite: MUS 161

**420 Hymnody and Liturgy (3)**

A study of the Christian hymn and canticles from the earliest Old Testament references to the present and their historical-religious background. Emphasis is also given to the origins of liturgy as well as to various liturgical and non-liturgical practices.

**461, 462 Internship I, II (1,1)**

Practical experience working in a church setting under the guidance of music faculty members and a church supervisor. Students will work closely with a church supervisor in matters of church music administration, and they will participate actively in the execution of church-related duties as directed by the supervisor. A weekly seminar will include critical analysis and discussion of problems.

**480 Senior Recital (1)**

The performance of a solo recital on the major instrument which shall be at least one-half hour in length. Required of all performance music majors

---

## SCHOOL OF NURSING BSN TRACK

---

Pamela Giles, Dean  
Teresa Beach  
Nancy Dameron  
Mary Lou Dunn

Jennifer Nunn  
Karen Oaks  
Sarah Pressley

The School of Nursing offers the Bachelor of Science in Nursing degree (BSN). The AACN *Essentials of Baccalaureate Education for Professional Nursing Practice* (2013) and the *Regulations Governing the Practice of Nursing* (2014) from the Virginia Board of Nursing are used to guide program curriculum and practices.

Nursing courses build on a foundation in the liberal arts to prepare the nurse graduate for generalist practice in a variety of healthcare settings. Supervised clinical components are included throughout the nursing curriculum to allow students an opportunity to engage in evidence-based patient care.

The mission of the School of Nursing is to prepare outstanding baccalaureate nurses who will provide excellent nursing care and leadership and possess a solid foundation for graduate education. This is accomplished by educating students from diverse backgrounds, cultures, and nations in a personal, collegial and interdisciplinary environment.

The vision of the School of Nursing is to provide excellence in nursing education that prepares nurses to be catalysts for change in healthcare in Virginia, the United States, and globally.

The goals of the School of Nursing are to:

- Prepare generalist nurses who provide excellent nursing care for individuals, families and communities at all developmental levels, in illness and wellness, and across all healthcare settings.
- Produce excellence in student and faculty scholarship.
- Collaborate with clinical agency partners using evidence-based best practice for the improvement of patient care outcomes.
- Serve communities to improve healthcare in Virginia, the United States and globally.
- Promote a collegial environment that supports lifelong learning, leadership and development of student, staff and faculty potential.

The School of Nursing embraces and models the following characteristics, in line with Averett University's values:

- Integrity in thought, deed, and action;
- Excellence using creative and innovative approaches to teaching, scholarship and service;
- Leadership to promote strategic change in an evolving health care system;
- Diversity of thought, cultures, religions and the uniqueness of the individual;
- Discovery through critical thinking, lifelong learning and a commitment to the application of evidence-based practice;
- Collaboration with all members of the healthcare team in providing quality and safe nursing care;
- Stewardship of all resources with a commitment to fiscal responsibility.

Upon successful completion of the program, graduates should be able to:

1. Exhibit a broad knowledge of the liberal arts and nursing science in utilizing critical thinking and decision-making to deliver safe, quality, professional care to individuals, families, groups and communities across the continuum of care. (Liberal Education)
2. Use leadership skills to design improved healthcare models of care for individuals, families, groups, organizations and community arenas. (Leadership)
3. Incorporate evidence-based practice in the care of individuals, families, and groups across the lifespan in healthcare settings. (Evidence-Based Practice)
4. Demonstrate excellence in information technology management skills to support delivery of safe, quality care globally. (Information Technology Management)
5. Participate in the improvement of healthcare policy for diverse populations. (Health Care Policy)

6. Apply enhanced communication and collaboration skills when working with interprofessional healthcare teams to produce safe, quality healthcare outcomes. (Interprofessional Team)
7. Apply the nursing process to promote, maintain and restore health for diverse populations and groups. (Health Promotion and Disease Prevention)
8. Apply the principles of ethical self-regulation and accountability for the individual generalist nursing practice grounded in professional engagement and a commitment to life-long learning. (Professionalism)
9. Incorporate the knowledge gained from the art of nursing and nursing science to deliver compassionate nursing care across the healthcare continuum to individuals, families, and communities in Virginia, the United States and globally. (Generalist Patient Care Management)

**Accreditation and Memberships:**

The School of Nursing memberships include: the National League of Nursing (NLN), the American Association of Colleges of Nursing, the Southern Nursing Research Society and the Virginia Colleges of Nursing.

The baccalaureate degree in nursing program at Averett University is pursuing initial accreditation by the Commission on Collegiate Nursing Education, One Dupont Circle, NW, Suite 530, Washington, DC 20036, (202) 887-6791. Applying for accreditation does not guarantee that accreditation will be granted.

In May, 2013 the pre-licensure BSN track received provisional approval from the Virginia State Board of Nursing (VSBON). Full approval will be sought in compliance with VSBON regulations.

**Admission to the Nursing Major:**

The School of Nursing Admissions Committee approves admission to the nursing major. The following criteria must be met to be considered as an applicant:

1. A nonrefundable application fee of \$75.
2. Submission of completed application by February 1<sup>st</sup>.
3. A minimum GPS of 2.75.
4. A minimum grade of “C” in BIO204 or BIO205, and MTH103 or its equivalent.
5. Test of Essential Academic Skills with a score of 65% or higher
6. A certified criminal background check.

Application forms for admission to the nursing major may be obtained from the office of the School of Nursing at the Riverview campus.

Upon acceptance into the nursing major, the following admission requirements **must be completed by April 30**:

1. Completion of health appraisal form
2. CPR certification
3. PPD skin test or xray
4. Flu vaccination
5. MMR vaccine or immunity
6. Varicella vaccine or demonstration of immunity
7. Hepatitis B vaccination series or waiver
8. 12-panel drug screen urine
9. Proof of current health insurance

Items received after April 30 will be subject to a \$100 late fee. No items will be accepted after May 31.

**Progression in the Nursing Major**

Progression is monitored by the Dean and the AUSON faculty. Students must meet the following requirements to maintain continuous progression/enrollment in the nursing major:

1. Earn a minimum course grade of no more than two “C’s” in the nursing major;
2. Maintain a cumulative GPA of 2.5;
3. Criminal background check remains satisfactory per VBON regulations;

4. Satisfactorily meet both didactic and clinical elements of each clinical course;
5. Satisfactory skills lab performance;
6. Continued health clearance;
7. Current CPR certification.

Failure to meet any of these requirements may result in dismissal from the nursing major.

If a student earns a grade below a “C” for any course in the nursing major, she/he will be dismissed from the nursing major. Students who have been dismissed may reapply after one semester away. Readmission is not guaranteed; however, all applications will be reviewed by the Admissions Committee.

Additional program policies are listed in the *BSN Student Handbook*.

### **Clinical Requirements**

#### **Criminal Background Checks**

The student is required to undergo a criminal background check and drug screen prior to the start of any NUR prefixed course with a clinical component. If the clinical agency finds the results of the drug screening or criminal background check to be unacceptable, the School of Nursing at Averett University may not be able to provide further educational experiences, which could impede the student’s progression and completion of the nursing program.

Clinical institutions may deny access to the clinical practice area based on the results of a criminal background check and drug screen. Clinical experience is a required component of the majority of nursing courses. A course with a clinical component cannot be completed without a passing grade for the clinical portion of the course.

#### **Physical & Behavioral Requirements**

The professional nurse must possess the knowledge and ability to effectively assist in his/her patient’s care. Practicing nurses and nursing students are held to very high standards of integrity and competencies in order to perform responsibly. A candidate for professional nursing must have the abilities and skills necessary to use the nursing process: assessing, planning, implementing, and evaluating. Professional nurses and nursing students must also be able to perform essential skills.

The following abilities and skills are necessary to meet the requirements of the nursing program:

- Observation: The candidate must be able to observe a patient accurately at a distance as well as close up. Observation requires the functional use of the sense of vision, hearing, and touch. The sense of smell can enhance the observational process.
- Communication: The candidate must be able to speak, to hear, and to observe patients in perceived nonverbal communications. Communication includes not only speech, but reading and writing. The candidate must be able to communicate effectively and efficiently in oral and written form with all members of the health care team.
- Motor Skills: Candidates should possess sufficient motor function to obtain information from patients by palpation, auscultation, percussion, and other assessment exercises. A candidate must have sufficient motor skills to be able to access patients in a variety of care settings as well as manipulate the equipment necessary to providing the patient with professional nursing care. These actions require coordination of both fine and gross motor muscle movements, equilibrium, and the senses of touch and vision.
- Intellectual & Cognitive Abilities: These abilities include measurement, calculation, reasoning, analysis, and synthesis. Critical thinking and problem solving requires all of these intellectual abilities. In addition, the candidate should be able to comprehend three dimensional relationships and to understand the spatial relationships of structures.
- Behavioral & Social Qualities: A candidate must possess the emotional health required to full utilization of his/her intellectual abilities; the ability to make satisfactory judgments; the prompt completion of responsibilities required for the care of patients; and the development of mature, sensitive, and effective interpersonal relationships. Candidates must be able to tolerate strenuous physical workloads and to function effectively under stress. They must be flexible and adaptable in changing environments.

Compassion, integrity, concern for others, interpersonal skills, and motivation are all personal qualities necessary for professional nursing.

Averett University does not discriminate; however, the School of Nursing believes that all students enrolled must possess these qualities in order to be successful and achieve the level of competence necessary for safe, professional practice. If an applicant believes that he/she cannot meet one or more of these abilities/skills without accommodations or modifications, determination will be made, on an individual basis, whether or not the necessary accommodations or modifications can be made reasonably.

Bower, D., et al. (1988). *Evaluation instruments in nursing*. New York: National League for Nursing.

Additional clinical information can be found in the *BSN Student Handbook*.

### **School of Nursing Graduation Requirements**

- Students must satisfactorily complete all Core General Education requirements.
- Students must achieve satisfactory completion of a specified major area of study.
- Transfer students must complete a minimum of 60 semester hours at a senior college or university, at least 30 hours of which must be from Averett University.
- Students who are first admitted to Averett University as special students must earn a minimum of 30 semester hours of credit after obtaining degree-seeking status.
- Students must complete a minimum of 120 credit hours.
- Student must have no more than 2 C's in the major (nursing).
- Student must have a cumulative GPA of 2.5 or higher.
- Student must meet all financial obligations to the University. All tuition, fees, bookstore charges, and other bills must be paid in full prior to participating in graduation.
- Students must file an application for graduation with the Registrar's Office by designated date in the semester in which graduation is planned. <http://www.averett.edu/academics/registrar-office/senior-year/graduation-applications/>
- If the student exits from the University, the student must graduate under the catalog that is current upon his/her readmission.
- Students must complete all requirements for graduation in order to participate in commencement exercises.

### **ATI Testing**

The AUSON has chosen to utilize the ATI (Assessment Technologies Institute) testing platform and materials to help students prepare for the National Council Licensure Exam (NCLEX). The cost of ATI is included in nursing student fees. Additional information can be found in the *BSN Student Handbook*.

### **BSN Courses**

The following general education courses are required for the BSN degree:

<b>Course Number</b>	<b>Course Name</b>	<b>Credit Hours</b>
BIO101	Intro to Biology	4
BIO200	Medical Terminology	1
BIO204	Human Anatomy & Physiology I	4
BIO205	Human Anatomy & Physiology II	4
BIO313	Pharmacology	4
BIO316	Pathophysiology	3
CH103	Chemistry for the Life Sciences	4
ENG111	Intro to Writing & Research	3
ENG112	Intro to Literature	3

ENG220	World Literature	3
IDS101	Freshman Success	1
MTH103	Principles of Mathematics	3
MTH160	Intro to Statistics	3
PHL210	Ethics	3
PSY110	Psychology as a Social Science	3
PSY205	Developmental Psychology	3
SOC101	Intro to Sociology	3
Various	HIS/POS/ECO	3
Various	ART/MUS/TH	3

The following nursing courses are required for the BSN degree:

<b>Course Number</b>	<b>Course Name</b>	<b>Credit Hours</b>
NUR109	Concepts of Nutrition in Healthcare	3
NUR207	Basics of Nursing: Principles, Concepts, and Application 5	4
NUR208	Basics of Nursing: Skills	1
NUR313	Health Assessment	3
NUR314	Nursing Care of the Adult and Family I	5
NUR315	Intermediate Nursing Skills	1
NUR316	Psychiatric/Mental Health Nursing	5
NUR317	Nursing Care of the Woman and Family	5
NUR318	Nursing Issues and Trends	3
NUR319	Nursing Care of the Adult and Family II	5
NUR415	Nursing Research	3
NUR416	Nursing Care of the Child and Family	5
NUR418	Nursing Care of the Older Adult and Family	5
NUR419	Nursing Informatics	2
NUR420	Population Focused Nursing Care	5
NUR426	Complex Health Care Concepts	3
NUR430	Nursing Leadership	5
NUR497	Nursing Capstone	1

### **BSN Plan of Study**

The Nursing Major is a four-year program of study. Students complete one semester of general education courses, then apply to become a nursing major. A suggested plan of study is shared below.

<b>Semester I</b>			<b>Freshman Year</b>		<b>Semester II</b>	
<b>Course #</b>	<b>Course Name</b>	<b>Credit Hours</b>	<b>Course #</b>	<b>Course Name</b>		
BIO101	Intro to Biology	4	BIO204/205	Anatomy/Physiology		
IDS101	Freshman Success	1	<b>BIO301</b>	<b>Microbiology</b>		
<b>ENG111</b>	Intro to Writing & Research	3	<b>BIO313</b>	<b>Pharmacology</b>		

<b>NUR109</b>	Concepts of Nutrition	3	<b>MTH103</b>	<b>Principles of Mathematics</b>
<b>CH103</b>	Chemistry of the Life Sciences	4		
	<b>TOTAL</b>	15		<b>TOTAL</b>

**Sophomore Year**

	<b>Semester I</b>			<b>Semester II</b>
BIO204/205	Anatomy/Physiology	4	BIO200	Medical Terminology
NUR207	Basics of Nursing	5	BIO316	Pathophysiology
NUR208	Basics of Nursing Skills	1	ENG112	Intro to Lit
NUR313	Health Assessment	3	NUR314	Nursing Care Adult I
PSY205	Developmental Psychology	3	NUR315	Intermediate Nursing Skills
			MTH160	Intro to Stats
	<b>TOTAL</b>	16		<b>TOTAL</b>

**Junior Year**

	<b>Semester I</b>			<b>Semester II</b>
NUR319	Nursing Care Adult II	5	NUR316	Psych/Mental Health
NUR415	Nursing Research	3	NUR317	Nursing Care of Woman
NUR416	Nursing Care of Child	5	NUR318	Nursing Issues & Trends
PHL210	Ethics	3	ENG220	World Lit
	<b>TOTAL</b>	16		<b>TOTAL</b>

**Senior Year**

	<b>Semester I</b>			<b>Semester II</b>
NUR419	Nursing Informatics	2	NUR418	Nursing Care Older Adult
NUR420	Population Focused Nursing	5	NUR430	Nursing Leadership
NUR426	Complex Health Care	3	NUR497	Nursing Capstone
SOC101	Intro to Sociology	3	PSY110	Psych as Soc Science
	HIS/ECO/POS	3		ART/MUS/TH
	<b>TOTAL</b>	16		<b>TOTAL</b>

**NUR109**      Concepts of Nutrition in Health Care      3  
 A course that examines the science of nutrition while identifying nutrition principles and their application as they affect one's health and well-being. The course is designed to personalize information, calculate the student's current level of health, and lead the student to devise a plan for adopting healthy food choices and changing one's diet as needed. Appropriate dietary interventions to address disease processes will also be addressed. This course is a prerequisite for all Nursing courses.

**NUR207**      Basics of Nursing: Principles, Concepts, and Application      5  
 This course introduces the student to theory, principles and practice of professional nursing. Focus is on basic human needs, nursing process and roles of the professional nurse including the history of nursing, nursing ethics and regulations related to nursing practice. The theory from the behavioral, social, and biological sciences and humanities provide the foundation for nursing knowledge, skills, and practice. 90 hours of clinical experience.  
**Prerequisites: Admission to the nursing major.**

**NUR208**      Basics of Nursing: Skills      1

This course introduces the student to basic clinical nursing skills required to provide safe and effective nursing care. Focuses on opportunities to practice and demonstrate competency of skills in the simulated lab. 45 hours of lab/simulation experience. **Prerequisites: Admission to the nursing major.**NUR313 Health Assessment

3

This course focuses on the knowledge and skills needed to conduct a health assessment including a health history and physical examination. Includes interpretations of normal findings and identification of deviations from normal. 45 hours of lab/simulation experience. **Prerequisites: Admission to the nursing major.**

NUR314 Nursing Care of the Adult and Family I 5

The course focuses on the theory and principles of common medical-surgical problems related to the cardiovascular, respiratory, renal, reproductive, and hematological systems. Clinical experience allows students to apply critical thinking skills, to develop problem-solving skills, and to use clinical judgment in nursing practice while managing the care of adults and their families in healthcare settings. 90 hours of clinical experience. **Prerequisites: NUR207, NUR208, NUR313**

NUR315 Intermediate Nursing Skills 1

This course focuses on students acquiring advanced nursing skills related to the medical-surgical systems. Students utilize the simulation lab to demonstrate competency. 45 hours of lab/simulation experience. **Prerequisites: NUR207, NUR208, NUR313**

NUR316 Psychiatric/Mental Health Nursing 5

This course focuses on basic psychopathology of common psychiatric/mental health issues and the theories and principles underlying nursing care of patients with changes in mental health status. Emphasis is on communication, critical thinking and legal/ethical issues in psychiatric/mental health. Contemporary concerns of the impact of mental illness, stress, substance abuse, and violence in families are covered. 90 hours of clinical experience. **Prerequisites: NUR207, NUR208, NUR313, NUR314, NUR315, NUR319, NUR415, NUR416**

NUR317 Nursing Care of the Woman and Family 5

This course focuses on nursing care of obstetrical and gynecological clients and their families. The nursing process is used in care delivery of the mother and her newborn during the ante-partum, intra-partum, and post-partum phases of childbearing. Nursing care for common health care complications of ante-partum, intra-partum, post-partum, and newborns are addressed. 90 hours of clinical experience. **Prerequisites: NUR207, NUR208, NUR313, NUR314, NUR315, NUR319, NUR415, NUR416**

NUR318 Nursing Issues and Trends 3

This course explores the role of the nurse and emerging practice-related issues within the profession. Examination of ethical, political, economic and legal trends impacting nursing practice is included. The course integrates evolving issues regarding civic engagement within the profession and the role of health policy to promote social justice, assure quality care, and diminish health disparities across the United States. **Prerequisites: NUR207, NUR208, NUR313, NUR314, NUR315, NUR319, NUR415, NUR416**

NUR319 Nursing Care of the Adult and Family II 5

This course explores the adult and family's common medical-surgical problems involving the endocrine, neuromuscular, orthopedic and gastro intestinal systems. Clinical experience allows students to apply critical thinking skills, to develop problem solving skills, to use clinical judgment in nursing practice while managing the care of adults and their families in healthcare settings. 90 hours of clinical experience. **Prerequisites: NUR207, NUR208, NUR313, NUR314, NUR315**

NUR415 Nursing Research 3

This course assists the student in understanding the importance of using nursing research as a component of evidence-based nursing practice. The course focuses on fundamental research concepts and methodologies to improve and enhance patient care outcomes. Ethical and legal implications related to research design and the application of research evidence will also be explored. **Prerequisites: NUR207, NUR208, NUR313, NUR314, NUR315**



---

## PHILOSOPHY

---

While Averett does not offer a major in philosophy, students have ample opportunity to be exposed to the discipline. In addition to a general introduction to the subject (which may count toward satisfying the General Education requirements), a course in Ethics is usually offered twice a year, and Philosophy of Religion once every two years.

### **Courses of Instruction in Philosophy**

#### **150 Introduction to Philosophy**

**(3)**

A study of the methods and nature of philosophical inquiry, the problems with which this inquiry is concerned, and various principal solutions which have been offered to these problems. This course satisfies three hours of the Religion and Philosophy requirement for General Education.

#### **210 Ethics**

**(3)**

An examination of representative theories of morality from historical and contemporary sources. An interactive course designed to encourage critical thinking about current ethical and moral issues within our society. Questions of value, good, right, and obligation are included. This course satisfies three hours of the Religion and Philosophy requirement for General Education.

#### **440 Philosophy of Religion**

**(3)**

A study of the nature of religious experience and an analysis of religious language with particular attention to metaphysical presuppositions. Alternate years.

---

## PHYSICAL EDUCATION, WELLNESS, AND SPORT SCIENCE (PE)

---

Carrie Hendrick  
Barbara A. Kushubar  
Hsiu-Chen Liu

Richard Ferguson, Chair  
Melanie Lewis

Either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree may be earned in physical education in any one of five concentrations: Physical Education-Non-teaching; Coaching; Health, Physical Education and Driver Education (Add-On): PK-12; Sport Management; Wellness/Sports Medicine and Personal Training. Transfer students must complete a minimum of 18 semester hours in the major at Averett, 9 of which must be at the 300-400 level. Physical Education majors are strongly urged to develop in-depth competency in at least one performance area or one sport.

All majors are required to complete a Senior Exit Project. These projects will be completed during their senior year. Unless otherwise specified, students must attain at least a 2.0 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

### Requirements for a Major in Physical Education Non-Teaching Concentration

This concentration provides preparation for careers in such settings as YMCA, the Boys and Girls Club, and city recreation organizations.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety .....	3
PE 203, Introduction to Physical Education .....	3
PE 315, Physiology of Activity .....	3
PE 320, Kinesiology .....	3
PE 365, Sport Psychology .....	3
PE 415, Motor Learning .....	3
PE 466, Internship.....	4
Physical Education Activity Courses.....	14
Electives in the department:.....	<u>9</u>
Total	45

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Physical Education Non-Teaching

Freshman Year:

HTH 200, First Aid and Safety  
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
PE Recommended Elective  
PE Activity Course

Sophomore Year:

BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology  
PE 203, Introduction to Physical Education  
PE Recommended Elective  
PE 315, Physiology of Activity  
PE 365, Sport Psychology  
PE Activity Courses (2)

Junior Year:

- PE 320, Kinesiology
- PE 466, Internship
- PE Recommended Elective
- PE Activity Courses (2)

Senior Year:

- PE 415, Motor Learning
- PE Activity Courses (2)

**Requirements for a Major in Physical Education – Coaching Concentration**

This concentration is designed for students who wish to coach on the scholastic or college level. For those who only want to coach on the scholastic level, it is recommended that they complete this concentration along with a concentration in Health, Physical Education and Driver Education (Add-On) with Teaching Licensure (PK-12) in order to obtain teaching certification. This is suggested, not mandated.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Issues.....	3
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety.....	3
PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries & Illnesses.....	3
PE 302, Coaching and Officiating.....	3
PE 315, Physiology of Activity.....	3
PE 320, Kinesiology.....	3
PE 365, Sport Psychology.....	3
PE 415, Motor Learning.....	3
PE 416, Issues in Administration of PE and Sports.....	3
PE 425, Biomechanics.....	3
PE 432, Sport Law.....	3
PE 466, Internship.....	4
PE Activity courses.....	<u>6</u>
Total	43

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Physical Education - Coaching**

Freshman Year:

- BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
- HTH110, Contemporary Health Issues
- HTH 200, First Aid and Safety
- PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries & Illnesses
- PE Activity Course

Sophomore Year:

- BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology
- PE 302, Introduction to Physical Education
- PE 315, Physiology of Activity
- PE Activity Course

Junior Year:

- PE 320, Kinesiology
- PE 365, Sport Psychology
- PE 466, Internship
- PE Activity Course

Senior Year:

- PE 415, Motor Learning
- PE 416, Issues in Administration of PE and Sports
- PE425, Biomechanics
- PE432, Sport Law

### **Requirements for a Major in Health, Physical Education and Driver Education (Add On): (PK-12)**

Licensure in Health, Physical Education and Driver Education (Add On) includes all grade levels (PK-12). The other General Education and Professional Education requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for teaching licensure are explained in detail on page 151-153.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
PE 303, Elementary School Physical Education .....	3
PE 304, Secondary School Physical Education .....	3
PE 306, Foundations of Traffic Safety .....	3
PE 307, Principles and Methods of Driver Education .....	3
PE 315, Physiology of Activity .....	3
PE 320, Kinesiology .....	3
PE 351, Adapted Physical Education .....	3
PE 415, Motor Learning .....	3
PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports.....	3
PE 444, Research Methods in Physical Education .....	3
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems .....	3
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety .....	3
HTH 220, Health and Fitness for the 21st Century .....	4
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology.....	4
BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology .....	4
Physical Education Activity Courses.....	14
(Courses must be selected from individual, dual, and team sports.)	
Total	62

### **Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Health, Physical Education and Driver Education (Add On) with Teaching Licensure (PK-12)**

Freshman Year:

- BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
- HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems
- PE Activity Course
- TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications

Sophomore Year:

- BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology
- ED 290, Foundations of Education
- HTH 200, First Aid and Safety
- HTH 220, Health and Fitness for the 21st Century
- HIS 201 or 202, United States History I or United States History II
- PE 315, Physiology of Activity
- PE Activity Courses (2)
- PSY 205, Developmental Psychology

Junior Year:

- ED 322, Educational Psychology
- ED 334, Content Reading and Language Development
- ED 378 and 379, Elementary PK-6 Curriculum and Teaching Assistant: Elementary PK-6 Education
- ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum
- ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education
- PE 306, Foundations of Traffic Safety
- PE 307, Principles and Methods of Driver Education
- PE 320, Kinesiology
- PE 351, Adapted Physical Education
- PE 415, Motor Learning
- PE Activity Courses (2)

Senior Year:

- PE 303, Elementary School Physical Education
- PE 304, Secondary School Physical Education
- PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports
- PE 444, Research Methods in Physical Education
- PE Activity Courses (2)
- ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education
- ED 489, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education

**Requirements for a Major in Physical Education – Personal Training Concentration**

Averett University offers a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree in Physical Education: Personal Training. In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BSA206, Business Communication.....	3
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I .....	3
BSA 305, Principles of Management .....	3
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing.....	3
BSA 493, Entrepreneurship with Focus on Small Business .....	3
BSA300-400 Elective.....	3
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety .....	3
HTH 320, Nutrition and Sport Performance.....	3
PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses .....	3
PE 299, Advanced Performance and Conditioning .....	3
PE 315, Physiology of Activity .....	3
PE 320, Kinesiology .....	3
PE 355, Health Aspects of Gerontology.....	3
PE 365, Sport Psychology .....	3
PE 415, Motor Learning .....	3
PE 428, Graded Exercise Testing .....	3
PE 429, Exercise Program Design.....	4
PE 466, Internship.....	4
	Total 56

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Physical Education – Personal Training

### Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
 HTH 200, First Aid  
 PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses

### Sophomore Year:

BSA 206, Business Communication  
 BSA 221, Accounting I  
  
 BSA300 Elective  
 PE 299, Advanced Performance and Conditioning

### Junior Year:

BSA 305, Principles of Management  
 HTH 320, Nutrition and Sport Performance  
 PE 315, Physiology of Activity  
 PE 320, Kinesiology  
 PE 355, Health Aspects of Gerontology  
 PE 365, Sport Psychology

### Senior Year:

BSA 310, Principles of Marketing  
 BSA 393, Entrepreneurship  
 PE 415, Motor Learning  
 PE 428, Graded Exercise Testing  
 PE 429, Exercise Program Design  
 PE 466, Internship

## Requirements for a Major in Physical Education - Sport Management Concentration

Averett University offers a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree in Physical Education: Sport Management. This major is designed for those students interested in management positions in businesses such as collegiate or professional athletics, sporting goods sales, fitness and conditioning centers both in the private and corporate sectors, and facility management. In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BSA206, Business Communication.....	3
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I .....	3
BSA 325, Managerial Accounting .....	3
BSA 305, Principles of Management .....	3
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing.....	3
BSA 352, Sales Management .....	3
COM206, Introduction to Sports Communication.....	3
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software.....	3
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety .....	3
PE 203, Introduction to Physical Education .....	3
PE 207, Introduction to Sport Management .....	3
PE 365, Sport Psychology .....	3
PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports.....	3
PE 432, Sport Law .....	3
PE 466, Internship.....	4
Physical Education Activity Courses (4 different courses) .....	8

TH 103, Intro to Human Communication OR TH 300, Public Speaking .....	3
Total	57

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Physical Education - Sport Management**

Freshman Year:

- BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
- BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I
- CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software
- PE Activity Course

Sophomore Year:

- BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology
- BSA206, Business Communication
- BSA 325, Managerial Accounting
- HTH 200, First Aid and Safety
- PE 203, Introduction to Physical Education
- PE Activity Course

Junior Year:

- BSA 305, Principles of Management
- BSA 310, Principles of Marketing
- BSA 352, Sales Management
- PE 207, Introduction to Sport Management
- PE Activity Course
- TH 103, Intro to Human Communication **or**  
TH 300, Public Speaking

Senior Year:

- PE 365, Sport Psychology
- PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports
- PE 432, Sport Law
- PE 466, Internship
- PE Activity Course

**Requirements for a Major in Physical Education - Wellness/Sports Medicine Concentration:**

This major is designed for those students who are interested in pursuing careers in hospital wellness, private health clubs, corporate fitness, and physical therapy. Averett cannot provide certification in physical therapy, but we can provide the prerequisite courses required for admission to schools that do offer such certification.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems .....	3
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety .....	3
HTH 320, Nutrition and Sports Performance .....	3
PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses .....	3
PE 315, Physiology of Activity .....	3
PE 320, Kinesiology .....	3
PE 355, Health Aspects of Gerontology .....	3
PE 370, Therapeutic Exercise .....	3
PE 360, Sports Medicine I and Lab .....	4
PE 365, Sports Psychology .....	3

PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports.....	3
PE 421, Sports Medicine II and Lab.....	4
PE 425, Biomechanics .....	3
PE 428, Graded Exercise Testing .....	3
PE 466, Internship.....	4
Physical Education Activity Hours.....	4
Total	52

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Physical Education - Wellness/Sports Medicine**

Freshman Year:

- BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
- HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems
- HTH 200, First Aid and Safety

Sophomore Year:

- BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology
- HTH 320, Nutrition and Sports Performance
- PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses
- PE 315, Physiology of Activity
- PE Activity Course

Junior Year:

- PE 320, Kinesiology
- PE 355, Health Aspects of Gerontology
- PE 360, Sports Medicine I and Lab
- PE 365, Sport Psychology
- PE 370, Therapeutic Exercise
- PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports

Senior Year:

- PE 421 Sports Medicine II and Lab
- PE 425, Biomechanics
- PE 428, Graded Exercise Testing
- PE 466, Internship
- PE Activity Course

**Minor in Physical Education**

Students electing a minor in physical education must complete 18 semester hours in Physical Education and/or Health. At least 9 of those hours must be at the 300-400 level. Neither activity courses nor PE 254, Life Guarding, may be included in the hours required for the minor. Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

**Minor in Coaching**

The following courses are required for a minor in coaching:

	Semester Hours
PE 302, Coaching and Officiating .....	3
PE 315, Physiology of Activity .....	3
PE 365, Sports Psychology .....	3
PE 415, Motor Learning .....	3
Electives* .....	6
Total	18

\*Electives must be exclusive of activity courses or practicum experiences. If courses have prerequisites, the prerequisites must be satisfied, or permission obtained from the instructor.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor. This minor is not available to students majoring in any Physical Education concentration.

## Courses of Instruction in Physical Education

### Activity Courses

Activity courses may be repeated for a maximum of 4 semester hours credit unless otherwise indicated. Physical Education majors must fulfill activity course requirements by taking different activities. Extra fees are charged for some activities. Courses which normally require such fees are indicated by an asterisk (\*) following the course name.

Students may take a maximum of two activity courses in any semester.

102, Swimming*	(2)
103, Novice Riding (same as ES102)	(2)
106, Physical Conditioning	(2)
107, Bowling*	(2)
108, Jogging (May not be repeated for credit.)	(2)
111, Archery	(2)
114, Tennis	(2)
116, Golf*	(2)
126, Weight Training	(2)
128, Badminton	(2)
139, Yoga	(2)
130, Exercise Walking	(2)
134, Softball	(2)
135, Basketball	(2)
136, Volleyball	(2)
141, Soccer	(2)
142, Ultimate Frisbee	(2)
143, Team Handball	(2)
144, Tai Chi	(2)
145, Ultimate Dodgeball	(2)
150, Selected Activities	(2)
152, Aerobics (May be repeated for maximum of 3 hours.)	(1)
153, Baseball	(2)

Credit for Selected Activities (150) may be repeated for 4 credits for each different activity selected. A laboratory fee is assessed for some Selected Activity courses.

### **180 Basic Concepts of Sports Information (3)**

This course is designed to familiarize the student with a sports information office and provide a basic knowledge of publicizing an athletics department. Emphasis will be placed on writing associated with sports information. Students will also receive hands-on experience with game-day management while serving practicum hours at home athletic events and in the SID office. Offered as needed.

### **203 Introduction to Physical Education (3)**

A study of the history of physical education, career opportunities, current issues, and future challenges in physical education. Offered Spring semester.

### **205 Lifetime Fitness (3)**

A course designed to provide the student with the capability to apply scientific principles to maximize one's own fitness needs and to develop ways to maintain fitness throughout one's life. Each student will develop his/her own exercise program. The course provides both cognitive and physical experience. IDEAL only course.

**207 Introduction to Sport Management (3)**

A study of the various areas that encompass the field of sport management and career opportunities available in those areas: budgeting, communication, sport marketing, collegiate trademark licensing, personnel issues, and future direction of sport management. Offered Spring semester.

**209 Introduction to Athletic Training (3)**

An introductory course in the care, recognition, and management of sports-related injuries. The student will examine the responsibilities of the athletic trainer, physical educator, and coach within an athletic training program. Students will gain clinical experiences related to the health care of the athlete. Offered Fall semester.

**212 Advanced Performance/Conditioning (3)**

The student will study and apply movement assessment and its influence in injury and performance enhancement. The student will specifically learn to appreciate the three pillars of the performance pyramid, which include functional performance and sports specific skill. These principles will be applied in the form of case studies in order to make the information practical and applicable for all levels of training and conditioning. Offered Fall semester.

**254 Life Guarding (3)**

A course designed to give a swimmer specialized knowledge and skills of water safety. Includes techniques of teaching all levels of swimming, including life-saving. Adheres to American Red Cross standards and culminates in authorization for life guarding. Prerequisite: PE 102 or permission of instructor, plus passing the Red Cross pre-test requirements. May not be repeated for credit. Laboratory fee charged. Offered as needed.

**280 Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses (3)**

A study of the prevention of athletic injuries and illnesses. The student will examine methods to prevent trauma or conditions that adversely affect the health or performance of the athlete. Offered Spring semester.

**302 Coaching and Officiating (3)**

A course designed to develop knowledge of rules and techniques of officiating. Also included will be current techniques of skill analysis, team selection, coaching psychology, and other areas essential for success in modern day coaching. Offered each semester.

**303 Elementary School Physical Education (3)**

A study of the characteristic growth patterns, interests, and physical education needs of elementary school children with a corresponding emphasis on effective teaching techniques and the skill theme approach to instruction. Students are required to complete six lessons of physical education observation/assistance at the assigned elementary school. Prerequisite: HTH 220 and/or PE 304. Offered Spring semester even years.

**304 Secondary School Physical Education (3)**

A study of the characteristics of secondary school students, techniques for organizing classes, preparation of lesson plans, methods of instruction with special attention given to physical fitness and the development of sports skills, methods of assessment, and techniques for coping with discipline problems which are unique to this age group. Students are required to complete eight lessons of physical education observation/assistance at the assigned middle and high schools. Prerequisite: HTH 220 and/or PE 303. Offered Spring semester odd years.

**306 Foundations of Traffic Safety (3)**

A course designed for prospective teachers of driver and safety education. Emphasis upon theory and practice of multiple-car driving range, simulation, and one street laboratory programs. Responsibility of teaching beginning students proper driving techniques. First half of six hours state certification requirements for teaching driver education. Prerequisite: Valid operator's license. Offered Fall semester.

- 307 Principles and Methodologies of Classroom and In-Car Instruction (3)**  
 Concentrated study focused on the various facets of general safety education, including home, school, traffic, industrial, and pedestrian safety. Second half of six hours state certification requirements for teaching driver ed. Offered Spring semester.
- 315 Physiology of Activity (3)**  
 A study of the physiological effects of exercise and application of these effects to physical education. Offered each semester.
- 320 Kinesiology (3)**  
 A study of the science of human movement. Offered Spring semester.
- 351 Adapted Physical Education (3)**  
 A study of the role of physical educators in aiding individuals with atypical conditions to develop to their fullest potential. Includes the understanding of specific disabilities, therapeutic exercises, and developing an adapted program. Offered Spring semester even years.
- 355 Health Aspects of Gerontology (3)**  
 A study of the physiological changes which occur in the human organism during the aging process, including changes in bone ossification and growth, metabolism, nutritional needs, strength, flexibility, cardiovascular, and respiratory functions. Also to include physiological and sociological problems and ways to adjust and adapt to them. Offered Spring semester odd years.
- 360 Sports Medicine I and Lab (4)**  
 A study of the process of evaluation, identification, and rehabilitative techniques for sports-related injuries as they pertain to the lower extremities of the body. The course will utilize practical and hands-on instruction of evaluation, identification and rehabilitative techniques for sports related injuries and conditions as they pertain to the lower extremities and trunk. Offered Fall semester.
- 365 Sport Psychology (3)**  
 The study of psychological assessment techniques and intervention strategies in an effort to help individuals to achieve their optimal performance in physical activities. Areas of study include such topics as: Motivation and Performance, Personality and Behavior, Social and Cultural Aspects of Sport, Aggression, Attentional Focus, Self-Confidence, Anxiety and Arousal, and Coaching Behavior/Leadership Style. Offered each semester.
- 370 Therapeutic Exercise (3)**  
 A study of exercise principles and how they apply to injury rehabilitation. Students will learn how the body reacts to injury and healing and how exercise affects the healing phase. Students will learn how and when to apply various phases of rehabilitation as well as how to apply isometric, isotonic, and isokinetic exercises. Emphasis is also on immediate, short, and long-term rehabilitation goals. Offered Spring semester.
- 389 Concepts of Nutrition (3)**  
 A course that examines the science of nutrition while identifying nutrition principles and their application as they affects one's health and well-being. The course is designed to personalize information, calculate the student's current level of health, and lead the student to devise a plan for adopting healthy food choices and changing one's diet as needed. IDEAL only course.
- 409 Advanced Athletic Training (2)**  
 A course in which senior level athletic training students will gain experience and knowledge in contemporary aspects of athletic training. These issues may include, but are not limited to, orthotic and padding fabrication, pharmacology, general medical conditions, research methodology and job search preparation. Students will begin formally preparing to take the National Athletic Trainer Association – Board of Certification's examination during this course. The course may also include site visitations to university hospitals in order to view anatomy labs, sports medicine facilities, and resource centers. Prerequisite: Senior-level standing. Offered Fall semester.

**415 Motor Learning (3)**  
A course in motor learning in which the student examines ways the brain and central nervous system process information to produce human movement and the application of this knowledge to instruction. Offered Fall semester.

**416 Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports (3)**  
A study of administrative policies and trends including leadership styles and application of leadership in intramural settings. Also included are pertinent legal issues as they relate to physical education and sports. Offered Fall semester.

**421 Sports Medicine II and Lab (4)**  
A study of the process of evaluation, identification, and rehabilitative techniques for sports-related injuries as they pertain to the upper extremities of the body. The course will utilize practical and hands-on instruction of evaluation, identification and rehabilitative techniques for sports-related injuries and conditions as they pertain to the upper extremities and trunk. Offered Spring semester.

**425 Biomechanics (3)**  
A study of the mechanical principles involved in human movement, analysis of movement and application of this knowledge to physical education and sport. Emphasis is placed on preparing the physical educator to help people become more efficient in their performance of motor skills. Offered Fall semester.

**428 Graded Exercise Testing (3)**  
A study of individual physiological needs to include special populations such as those with cardiovascular disease, respiratory illness, hypertension, etc. The student, upon completion of this course, will have learned how to develop programs of exercise and lifestyle modification. Offered Spring semester.

**429 Exercise Program Design (3)**  
A course in which Personal Training students will develop specific exercise programs to be implemented with clients. Fitness needs assessment, program design principles, use of fitness technology, and program evaluation will be emphasized. Programs for clients with special needs also will be addressed. Students will be responsible for out of class laboratory experiences. Offered Spring semester odd years.

- 432 Sport Law (3)**  
A study of law as it relates to sport. To include the law of contracts, tort liability, negligence, and federal regulations pertaining to Title IX and persons with handicapping conditions. Offered Fall semester of even years.
- 435 Therapeutic Modalities (3)**  
A course that involves a study of therapeutic modalities in a sports medicine setting. Emphasis is on the role of therapeutic modalities in pain management, the physiologic basis for use, clinical applications, and specific techniques of application. The student will learn how modalities play a role in injury rehabilitation. Offered Spring semester.
- 438 Administration of Athletic Training (3)**  
A course that includes the organizing and administering of the training room and staff. Students will learn how to write résumés, purchase supplies, prepare a budget, and budget their time. Students will discover employment opportunities and ways to market their skills. Offered Fall semester.
- 444 Research Methods in Physical Education (3)**  
A course designed to introduce students to research in all the sport sciences and to afford them the opportunity to interpret refereed articles. Topics such as fitness testing and test construction will be investigated as well as research design methods, more advanced statistical analysis, and survey research methods. Single subject design methods will be examined also. Offered Spring semester.
- 448 Prevention and Acute Care of Athletic Injuries (1)**  
Clinical instruction includes acute care of athletic injuries and illness. Risk management and injury prevention skills will also be discussed and demonstrated in a clinical setting. The students will learn hands-on techniques for equipment fitting and other athletic related testing. Offered each semester.
- 449 Therapeutic Modalities and Pharmacology (1)**  
Clinical instruction on the use of therapeutic modalities and pharmacology in an athletic training room/sports medicine setting. The emphasis will be placed on how modalities are used to control pain, inflammation, and muscle firing in the rehabilitation process. Proper athlete/patient set-up and equipment utilization will be taught and evaluated. Proper education to the sports medicine population in the use and dispensing of pharmacological agents. Practical application will be the emphasis during this practicum experience. Offered each semester.
- 450 Assessment and Evaluation of Athletic Injuries and Pathologies (1)**  
This course addresses a wide range of evaluation and assessment techniques used in athletic training. Topics covered will range from general medical conditions to athletic-related injuries. Emphasis will be placed on obtaining a complete history and hands-on use of evaluation skills learned. Offered each semester.
- 451 Therapeutic Exercise for Athletic Training (1)**  
Clinical instruction on the use of therapeutic exercise principles and how they are applied in the rehabilitative setting. Exercise progressions will be discussed and demonstrated as well as the physiological effects of exercise. The student will learn hands-on techniques as well as proper utilization of various rehabilitative equipment. The student will be exposed to practical situations involving different rehabilitation protocols. Offered each semester.
- 452 Administration/Psychosocial/Nutrition Issues in Athletic Training (1)**  
Clinical instruction in administrative, psychosocial, and nutritional issues in the athletic and clinical setting. This practicum setting will emphasize instruction, real life situation analysis of administration, nutrition and psychosocial athletic training, and sports medicine issues. The students will be exposed to real life clinical scenarios where they must utilize and develop problem-solving and clinical skills in order to make the proper recommendations to the athlete and clinical subject. Offered each semester.

**466 Internship**

**(4)**

An opportunity for majors to gain practical experience in wellness/sports medicine, sport management, or recreation settings. These settings will include, but not be limited to, athletic training, hospital wellness, cardiac rehabilitation, health clubs, corporate fitness, professional athletics, and city recreation departments. Students will work under the guidance of trained professionals. The internship will consist of 270 clock hours and may be taken at any time following the completion of the junior year. The course is graded on a Pass/Fail basis. Prerequisite: 2.0 cumulative grade point average. Offered each semester.

---

## POLITICAL SCIENCE (POS)

---

Simona Kragh

The Political Science major (B.A. or B.S.) provides students with a broad education in politics and government. Students who graduate from the Political Science program will become familiar with American government, with other forms of government, and with the interactions among governments. Students will gain an appreciation of ancient and modern political thought, as well as American political thought. Political Science students will, while undertaking the program, acquire the speaking, writing, and other skills fundamental to work in various occupations connected with politics. The Political Science major thus aims to prepare students to work in government (local, state, or federal), in the nonprofit sector, and in business. It is also sound preparation for post-graduate study in law and public administration.

Courses in Political Science are applicable towards teaching licensure in History/Social Science. (See pages 132-133 in this catalog). Besides teaching licensure, these courses may be used to support other areas of study.

In order to graduate, all Political Science majors must sit for an exit interview and must attain at least a 2.0 grade point average in the major.

### Requirements for a Major in Political Science: B.A.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

Select 27 credits from the following list:

	Semester Hours
POS 131, The World of Politics .....	3
POS 215, American National Government.....	3
POS 204, State and Local Government .....	3
POS 311, Comparative Government .....	3
POS320 Issues and Problems.....	3
POS326 US Presidency.....	3
Thought.....	3
..... POS 380, International Relations	3
POS309 US National Security.....	3
POS445 Internship.....	TBD
POS455 Political Development.....	3

Select courses from 3 fields for a total of 9 credits

BSA326 Organization Behavior Theory and Leadership.....	3
BSA327 Money and Banking.....	3
BSA421 Governmental and Non-Profit Accounting.....	3
BSA434 Business Law.....	3
BIO342 Environmental Policy and Law.....	3
CRJ304 Police in America.....	3
CRJ375 Corrections.....	3
CRJ407 Courts and Trials.....	3

ECO201 Principles of Microeconomics.....	3
ECO202 Principles of Macroeconomics.....	3
HIS405 XX Century Europe, 1914-1945.....	3
HIS406 XX Century Europe, Post War Divisions and Unions.....	3
HIS445 XX Century US History.....	3
JR330 Media Law and Ethics.....	3
PSY219 Social Psychology.....	3
PSY309 Personality Theory.....	3
REL306 African-American Religions.....	3
SOC317 American Minorities.....	3
SOC320 Urban Sociology.....	3

Total 36

B.S. in Political Science

Mandatory

MTH160 Introduction to Statistics.....	3
ECO202 Principles of Macroeconomics.....	3

27 credits from the following list:

POS131 World of Politics.....	3
POS204 State and Local Government.....	3
POS215 American Government.....	3
POS320 Issues and Problems.....	3
POS326 US Presidency.....	3
POS340 Political Thought.....	3
POS380 International Relations.....	3
POS309 US National Security.....	3
POS445 Internship.....	TBD
POS455 Political Development.....	3

Select courses from 3 fields for a total of 9 credits:

BSA326 Organizational Behavior, Theory, and Leadership.....	3
BSA372 Money and Banking.....	3
BSA421 Governmental and Non-Profit Accounting.....	3
BSA434 Business Law.....	3
BIO342 Environmental Policy and Law.....	3
CRJ304 Police in America.....	3
CRJ375 Corrections.....	3
CRJ407 Courts and Trials.....	3
ECO201 Principles of Microeconomics.....	3
HIS405 XX Century Europe, 1914-1945.....	3
HIS406 XX Century Europe, Post War Divisions and Unions.....	3
HIS445 XX Century US History.....	3
JR330 Media Law and Ethics.....	3
PSY219 Social Psychology.....	3
PSY309 Personality Theory.....	3
REL306 African-American Religions.....	3
SOC317 American Minorities.....	3
SOC320 Urban Sociology.....	3

Total 42

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Political Science

### Freshman Year:

POS 131, The World of Politics and/or  
POS 204, State and Local Government  
POS 215, American National Government

### Sophomore Year:

POS 311, Comparative Government  
POS 380, International Relations  
POS320, Issues and Problems  
POS326, US Presidency

### Junior Year:

POS340, Political Thought  
POS455, Political Development  
Political Science (B.A. or B.S.) electives

POS309, US National Security

### Senior Year:

Political Science (B.A. or B.S.) electives

POS445, Internship

## Minor

A minor in Political Science is available to the student who completes 18 semester hours of coursework in Political Science, nine of which must be at the 300-400 level.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

## Courses of Instruction in Political Science

### **131 The World of Politics (3)**

An introduction to various forms of regime and the political, economic, and geographic information and concepts requisite to understanding them. Emphasis is placed on developing skill in retrieving and utilizing political, economic, and geographic information.

### **204 State and Local Government (3)**

A survey of the essential institutions of state and local governments in the United States.

### **215 American National Government (3)**

A survey of the national level of American government with particular emphasis on its founding and the development of its institutions.

### **309 U.S.National Security Policy (3)**

National security is often at the center of attention in public opinion and the media. In the heated debate that often characterizes discussion on this topic, especially after September 11, accuracy sometimes yields to imprecision and incompleteness. This course equips the student with a basic knowledge of the main components of national security and the potentials and limitations of the instruments that the government has at its disposal to guarantee the safety of the country. The course is divided in two main parts. The focus of

**the first part of the semester is the national security establishment of the United States, its origins, its evolution, and its current structure and interaction with the rest of the American political system. During the second part of the semester, the readings will be centered more specifically on U.S. intelligence, which represents a particular component of the security structure of the United States.**

- 311 Comparative Government (3)**  
A comparative study of national governments in the modern world, focusing on their distinctive forms in relation to their social, economic, and ideological backgrounds.
- 313 Public Administration (3)**  
A study of the concepts and practices of public administration in the United States. Primary topics of study include the role of politics in public administration; structure of public organizations; public personnel administration; budgeting and finance; and policy analysis, implementation, and evaluation techniques.
- 320 American Government: Issues and Problems (3)  
An examination of contemporary American issues and problems in light of classic texts concerning democracy.
- 326 The American Presidency (3)**  
Analysis of the development of the presidency in the United States, with an emphasis on its institutional structure, the evolution of the power of the president, the influence of individual personalities on the development of leadership, the process of presidential selection, decision-making issues, and the interactions with the other government branches, the media, and the constituency.
- 340 Political Thought (2)**  
An introduction to representative texts from ancient political thoughts and from modern political thought.
- 342 Environmental Policy and Law (Same as BIO 342) (3)**  
A survey of environmental laws and regulations in the United States: who makes the laws and why, and who enforces the laws and how. Consideration will be given to the experience of other countries and to alternate paradigms of environmental protection.
- 360 Public Policy (3)**  
An examination of the formulation and implementation of public policy in the United States. Emphasis will be placed on the analysis and evaluation of policy alternatives. Some consideration will be given to public policy in other nations.
- 380 International Relations (3)**  
A study of diplomacy, alliance systems, war, interdependence, and nationalism in the international arena. Special attention will be given to the causes of international conflict.
- 411 Constitutional Law (3)**  
An examination of the Constitution and the U.S. Supreme Court. The student learns how to read and analyze constitutional cases in the areas of civil rights and civil liberties, free speech, freedom of the press, freedom of religion, the right of privacy, race and sex discrimination, and the conflict of congressional and presidential powers. Alternate years.
- 445 Internship (1-3)**  
An opportunity for students to refine their understanding of politics through work experience. Prerequisites: 2.0 cumulative grade point average and permission of instructor.
- 455 Political Development (Same as HIS 455) (3)**  
A study of the development of democracy in selected countries. Attention is given to the relationships between economic and social modernization and political change. Particular emphasis is placed on the experience of Africa, Asia, and Latin America. Prerequisite: junior or senior standing in history or political science, or permission of the instructor.

---

## PSYCHOLOGY (PSY)

---

David L. Rosenberg, Chair

David Hanbury

The Psychology Department offers a major in psychology, a minor in applied behavior analysis, a minor in general psychology, and a program in human-computer interaction (HCI). Majors may pursue either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree.

### Requirements for a Major in Psychology

Students must complete the following courses in addition to the general education requirements. All students must attain at least a 2.0 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

#### Introductory Courses (3-4 hours)

	Semester Hours
PSY 110, Psychology as a Social Science <b>or</b> .....	3
PSY 120, Psychology as a Natural Science.....	4

#### Survey Courses (12 hours)

Psychology majors develop an understanding of behavior from various psychological perspectives.

PSY 200, Effective Behavior.....	3
PSY 323, Learning.....	3
Two courses outside their chosen area(s) of concentrated study.....	6

#### Research Methods in Psychology (14 hours)

Majors gain a thorough grounding in the techniques psychologists use to evaluate scientific hypotheses and programs that apply the principles of psychology in the clinic, school, workplace, or home.

MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics .....	3
PSY 288, Computing in Psychology .....	2
PSY 333, Research Practicum I.....	3
PSY 334, Research Practicum II.....	3
PSY 338, Research Design .....	3

#### Concentrated Study (9-12 hours per area)

Majors satisfy the concentrated study in psychology requirement by completing at least one of the following clusters of courses:

#### Requirements for Concentrated Study in Applied Behavior Analysis

PSY 206, Introduction to Applied Behavior Analysis.....	3
PSY 306, Principles of Professional Conduct in Psychology.....	3
PSY 401, Applied Behavior Analysis.....	<u>3</u>
	9

**Requirements for Concentrated Study in Biological Psychology**

PSY 205, Developmental Psychology ..... 3  
PSY 315, Physiological Psychology..... 3  
PSY 387, Sensation and Perception..... 3  
PSY 395, Animal Behavior ..... 3  
12

**Requirements for Concentrated Study in Cognitive Science**

PSY 232, Designing User-centered Websites..... 3  
PSY 332, Evaluating Website Usability ..... 3  
PSY 373, Memory and Cognition..... 3  
PSY 387, Sensation and Perception..... 3  
12

**Requirements for Concentrated Study in Counseling and Clinical Psychology**

PSY 305, Abnormal Psychology ..... 3  
PSY 309, Personality Theory..... 3  
PSY 325, Helping Relations ..... 3  
PSY 466, Psychological Measurements ..... 3  
12

**Integrative Senior Year Experience (9 hours)**

This year-long endeavor ensures majors understand the history of psychology, know the major theoretical systems proposed, and integrate successfully the various facts and theories of psychology learned to this point.

PSY 444, Senior Seminar I ..... 3  
PSY 445, History and Systems ..... 3  
PSY 446, Senior Seminar II..... 3  
9

**Minors in Psychology**

**Requirements for a Minor in Applied Behavior Analysis:**

The minor in Applied Behavior Analysis provides students the necessary course work required to sit for certification as a Board Certified Assistant Behavior Analyst.

The psychology department offers a minor in applied behavior analysis for non-majors as well as concentrated study in applied behavior analysis for majors (see above).

Students seeking a Minor in Applied Behavior Analysis are required to take the following courses:

Semester Hours

PSY 110, Psychology as a Social Science ..... 3  
PSY 206, Introduction to Applied Behavior Analysis..... 3  
PSY 338, Research Design ..... 3  
PSY 306, Principles of Professional Conduct in Psychology..... 3  
PSY 323, Learning..... 3  
PSY 401, Applied Behavior Analysis..... 3  
Total 18

### **Requirements for a Minor in General Psychology:**

The student who elects a minor in Psychology must complete 18 semester hours of psychology courses, including at least nine semester hours at the 300 level or above.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

### **Human-Computer Interaction (HCI) Program**

Averett University offers an HCI program for students choosing as their primary major either art, computer science, computer information systems, or psychology. The program is administered by the department of psychology in consultation with an advisory committee comprised of faculty members drawn from each of the contributing departments. The program is described on page 140.

### **Four-Year Recommended Course Sequence for the Major in Psychology**

#### **Freshman Year:**

PSY 110 Psychology as a Social Science (fall and spring)  
PSY 120, Psychology as a Natural Science (spring)  
PSY 200, Effective Behavior (spring)  
PSY 206, Introduction to Applied Behavior Analysis (spring)

#### **Sophomore Year:**

MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics (fall and spring)  
PSY 200, Effective Behavior (spring)  
PSY 206, Introduction to Applied Behavior Analysis (spring)  
PSY Electives

#### **Junior Year:**

PSY 288, Computing in Psychology (fall)  
PSY 323, Learning (fall)  
PSY 333, Research Practicum I (fall)  
PSY 338, Research Design (fall)  
PSY 334, Research Practicum II (spring)  
PSY 387, Sensation and Perception (spring)

#### **Senior Year:**

PSY 445, History and Systems (fall)  
PSY 465, Senior Research (fall through spring)  
PSY 446, Senior Seminar in Psychology (spring)  
PSY Concentrated study courses (300-400 level)  
PSY Concentrated study courses (300-400 level)

### **Courses of Instruction in Psychology**

#### **110 Psychology as a Social Science**

**(3)**

A survey of major problem areas in psychology emphasizing the application of psychological principles to the improvement of the human situation. Students are encouraged to analyze human problems and everyday behavior to discover how psychology can explain and improve these situations. This course may be used to satisfy three semester hours of the Social Sciences portion of General Education requirements.

**120 Psychology as a Natural Science and Lab****(4)**

A survey of major problem areas in psychology emphasizing the scientific process involved in gaining new knowledge. Students study the classic experiments in psychology and participate in the research process by conducting weekly laboratory exercises. The data generated by these exercises then serve as the basis for exploring naturalistic explanations of the behavior. This course may be used to satisfy four semester hours of the Natural Sciences portion of General Education requirements.

**200 Effective Behavior****(3)**

An applied course with a central focus on the area of personal adjustment. Working from the assumption that individuals encounter a variety of problems in life, and must work effectively with others, the course examines issues of personality and social adjustment, stress and coping, interpersonal relationships, and behavior in groups.

**205 Developmental Psychology****(3)**

A survey of the theories and research pertaining to human development across the life span. Special attention is given to the changes in cognitive and social behavior during development and to factors responsible for these changes.

**210 Human Sexuality****(3)**

A course utilizing reports, discussion, and lectures to explore the biological, social, and personal aspects of human sexual identity and behavior.

**219 Social Psychology****(3)**

An examination of the ways in which behavior, feelings, and thoughts are affected by others through their physical presence and interaction with us, through the media, or through the environmental changes they make. Students study various theories of social behavior, learn about classic experiments in social psychology and their interpretations, and apply the discoveries in social psychology to human problems.

**303 Stress Management****(3)**

This course is designed to provide a broad overview of the nature of stress, as well as selected approaches for effectively managing and coping with stress.

**305 Abnormal Psychology****(3)**

A study of the concepts of normal and abnormal behavior. Emphasis is on the causes and patterns of expression of maladaptive behavior throughout the life span, as well as the problems in assessment and intervention.

- 306 Principles of Professional Conduct in Psychology (3)**  
This course explores the professional standards and ethical considerations pertinent to the use of varying practice approaches in psychology.
- 309 Personality Theory (3)**  
A comparative survey of the major theories of personality with emphasis on different theorists' models for understanding and predicting human behavior.
- 315 Physiological Psychology (3)**  
A study of the physiological events that underlie behavior. Students learn the physiology of individual cells in the nervous system, neurotransmitters, the general structure of the nervous system, and brain structures and physiological processes underlying psychologically important behaviors.
- 323 Learning (3)**  
An introduction to the principles of learning fundamental to the analysis and interpretation of human conduct in the clinic, the classroom, the workplace, and social situations. The course acquaints students with the structure of behavioral science and serves as a tool for lifetime analysis of human behavior.
- 325 Helping Relations (3)**  
An experience which provides the foundation for understanding the helping process. Students develop an understanding of the nature of the helping/therapeutic relationship and develop and practice basic interpersonal communication skills that are the core of the helping process. Prerequisites: PSY 200 (minimum grade of "C") and permission of instructor.
- 334 Research Practicum II (3)**  
A practicum in which students conduct a literature review, design and conduct original research either in a laboratory or community setting, and present their findings in an APA-style report and in a poster session open to the college community. Prerequisite: MTH160 with a minimum grade of a "C," PSY338 with a minimum grade of a "B," and permission of instructor.
- 338 Research Design (3)**  
A study of the methods of research in psychology. Students learn the research designs and statistical procedures encountered in psychology and gain experience in the analysis and visual inspection of data. . Recommended: MTH 160.
- 373 Memory and Cognition (3)**  
An examination of cognitive psychology as an approach to the study of psychology and a study of the major issues and problems considered by cognitive psychologists. Attention is given to the history and perspective of cognitive psychology, as well as to theories and data pertaining to information processing, memory and representation of knowledge, language, and problem-solving.
- 387 Sensation and Perception (3)**  
A study of the behavior and physiological approaches to the study of sensory systems and the perceptions they stimulate.
- 395 Animal Behavior (3)**  
A study of the behavior of animals emphasizing the role of evolutionary processes in the development of species-typical behavior.
- 425 Field Education in Psychology (3)**

A supervised experience in a community mental health agency. Open to selected students with at least a 2.0 grade point average. Prerequisites: PSY325 with a minimum grade of "B," and permission of instructor required.

**445 History and Systems**

**(3)**

A systematic overview of the development of the discipline of psychology from its philosophical origins through contemporary laboratory-based theories. Attention is given to the major attempts at theory development in psychology. Prerequisite: PSY 323.

**446 Senior Seminar II**

**(3)**

A seminar in which senior psychology students bring together their diverse perspectives about the nature of psychology for an integrating experience. Students will demonstrate their critical and analytic abilities and their command of the facts and theories of psychology through presentations of their significant works to psychology faculty and fellow students.

**466 Psychological Measurements**

**(3)**

An introduction to the theories and practice of psychological test construction, interpretation, and use. This course develops skills in evaluating tests, interpreting test results, and understanding test manuals. Recommended: MTH 160.

---

## RELIGION (REL)

---

Ralph K. Hawkins, Chair

Recognizing the individual and the particular needs of the individual, the Religion program at Averett University is designed to prepare the student for continuing seminary/graduate study or for an immediate career in Christian ministry.

The Religion program attempts to combine classroom learning with actual field experience so that the graduate is both intellectually equipped and practically trained in his/her profession. The Bachelor of Arts in Religion is the basic degree and is designed primarily for students moving toward the practice of ministry. The student may elect to complete six hours of Greek and six hours of Hebrew to satisfy the foreign language requirement for any of these majors.

### Requirements for a Major in Religion:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
REL 101, Introduction to Old Testament Literature.....	3
REL 102, Introduction to New Testament Literature.....	3
PHL 150, Introduction to Philosophy.....	3
REL 403, History of Christianity.....	3
REL 465, Senior Research Thesis.....	1
One advanced Old Testament course.....	3
One advanced New Testament course.....	3
One of the following:.....	3
REL 201, Religions of the World	
REL 260, Religion in America	
REL 306, African-American Religions	
One of the following:.....	3
PHL 210, Ethics	
PHL 440, Philosophy of Religion	
Religion or Philosophy electives at 300-400 level.....	<u>9</u>
Total	34

### Exit Requirement

All Religion majors are required to enroll in REL 465, Senior Research Thesis, during their senior year. The student will write a research project which may grow out of a research paper he/she has already prepared. This project will be supervised by the appropriate professor and must receive a passing grade from an outside reader. The length of the thesis will be 40-50 pages, exclusive of bibliography.

Students must attain at least a 2.0 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

## **Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Religion**

### Freshman Year:

REL 101, Introduction to Old Testament  
REL 102, Introduction to New Testament

### Sophomore Year:

PHL 150, Introduction to Philosophy  
REL 201, or 260, or 306, Religions of the World or  
Religion in America or  
African-American Religions

### Junior Year:

PHL 210 or PHL 440, Ethics or Philosophy of Religion  
REL 300-400 level course in New Testament  
REL/PHL Elective, 300-400 level

### Senior Year:

REL 300-400 level course in Old Testament  
REL 403, History of Christianity  
REL/PHL Elective, 300-400 level (2)

## **Minor**

Students electing a minor in Religion must complete the following: REL 101, 102, and 12 additional hours selected from Religion or Philosophy (9 of the 12 additional hours must be at the 300-400 level).

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

## **In-Service Guidance**

Each student receives professional training under a certified supervisor in an area related to the student's future vocational goals. The objectives of these in-service experiences are:

To prepare the student for leadership roles in local churches, chaplaincies, denominations, and related institutions;

To establish better lines of communication between ministers/churches and the campus so that the student will be able to identify more easily with specific forms of ministry;

To introduce the student to capable leaders within his/her denomination who satisfactorily demonstrate effective professional leadership;

To acquaint students as thoroughly as possible with organizational structures and procedures of local churches, denominational agencies, and institutions;

To promote opportunities for students to evaluate their commitments and to develop their innate abilities; to develop desirable interests, attitudes, ideas, and techniques of ministry through self-direction and self-evaluation; to experience ministry and mission principles and methodology on the job under qualified supervision; to evaluate their ministry and mission experience through interaction with professors and career ministers on the campus.

## **Courses of Instruction in Religion**

### **101 Introduction to Old Testament Literature**

**(3)**

The application of critical methodology to the history, literature, and religion of the ancient Hebrews. Attention is given to the historical context, the development, and the message of the Hebrew faith. This course satisfies three hours of the Religion and Philosophy requirement for General Education.

### **102 Introduction to New Testament Literature**

**(3)**

The application of critical methodology to the biblical text to discover the basic meaning and message of the New Testament. Attention is given to the secular and religious history of the period as well as to the life and teachings of Jesus, the letters of Paul, and the origins of the Christian Church. This course satisfies three hours of the Religion and Philosophy requirement for General Education.

### **201 Religions of the World**

**(3)**

An examination of the origin, basic beliefs, historical developments, and sociological manifestations of the world's great religions. This course satisfies three hours of the Religion and Philosophy requirement for General Education.

### **207 Spirituality in Business and Commerce**

**(3)**

This course will consider the role of spiritual values and ethics in the workplace and how the application of spiritual and ethical values can contribute positively to the bottom line. The student will consider how humanizing the workplace can help restore a higher conscience and consciousness to business, as well as bringing heart into the business and commercial arenas.

### **212 Death and Dying (Same as SOC 212)**

**(3)**

The goal of this course is to examine the phenomenon of death and dying within various cultural and religious contexts with the view of understanding how such perspectives inform our understanding of the end of life. This approach will survey the principles and perspectives of science and the humanities as they apply to the experience of death and dying. Numerous studies and instructional methodologies will be examined for the purpose of correcting stereotypes and myths concerning death and the reactions of people to death and dying. The course will pay particular attention to the phenomenon of death and dying through the lenses of social science and religion.

### **260 Religion in America**

**(3)**

A study of the history and expression of religion in America through Protestantism, Catholicism, and Judaism. Attention will also be given to a comparison of mainstream and divergent groups and the religious expressions in America since 1950. Alternate years.

### **304 Studies in the Prophets**

**(3)**

The historical background, function, message, contribution, and contemporary significance of the Hebrew prophets. Alternate years. Prerequisite: REL 101.

### **305 Studies in the Poetry and Wisdom Literature**

**(3)**

The historical background, function, message, contribution, and contemporary significance of the poetry and wisdom literature of the Old Testament. Alternate years. Prerequisite: REL 101.

### **306 African-American Religions**

**(3)**

A reading/lecture/dialogue course designed to survey the development of Afro-American religion from its African roots to the present. The course will focus on the black folk tradition and denominational structures, as well as some of the significant leaders and movements within black religion in America. Special emphasis will be given to the liberation tradition within black Protestantism, Catholicism, and Islam.

### **308 Introduction to Islam**

**(3)**

This course will present the history, basic beliefs, sacred writings, and institutional structures of Islam. In addition, this course will investigate both current events between Western and Muslim countries and struggles within Islam itself.

**311 Jesus in the Synoptic Gospels (3)**  
A study of the life and teachings of Jesus through a careful examination of the synoptic gospels in the light of available historical, cultural, and literary studies. Alternate years. Prerequisite: REL 102.

**312 Life and Letters of Paul (3)**  
An introductory course on the life and thought of Paul. The Pauline letters are studied within the historical context of first century Christianity, and their contemporary importance for the church in today's world is explored. Alternate years. Prerequisite: REL 102.

**313 Johannine Literature (3)**  
A study of the Gospel of John, the Epistles of John, and the Revelation. The student will master the contents of the books and the major critical issues involved in their interpretation, and will demonstrate competence in using modern research and interpretive methods. Every third year. Prerequisite: REL 102.

**315 Archaeology and the Bible (3)**  
A survey of the contributions of Near Eastern archaeology to Biblical studies.

**351 Developing Spiritual Discipline (3)**  
This course has a dual purpose of introducing learners to the rich tradition of Christian mysticism as well as to increase the learner's awareness and practice of spiritual formation. Learners will be exposed to a variety of spiritual resources that will enable them to learn and experiment with different traditions and approaches to deepening their spiritual life.

**380 Church Music (Same as MUS 380) (3)**  
A study of the relationship of music to worship in the history of the Western Church. By examination of influences that have shaped the musical practices of various denominations, both liturgical and non-liturgical worship are discussed in addition to the multifaceted purposes of music as religious expression in contemporary society. Alternate years.

**403 History of Christianity (3)**  
A study of the history of the Christian religion and Church from the first century to the beginning of the modern period. The course highlights the theological and sociological developments in the Early Church, the Middle Ages, the Reformation, and post-Reformation periods.

**465 Senior Research Thesis (1)**  
An opportunity for students to demonstrate critical skills in the area of research and writing. The projects/papers will be reviewed by an external evaluator. The course is required of all seniors and must be successfully completed prior to graduation. Prerequisite: Senior status.

## **In-Service Guidance**

**255 Ministry Formations (3)**  
A seminar designed to acquaint the student with the ministry as a profession and to help the student define his/her role in relationship to the ministry as a vocation, become acquainted with the basic skills of pastoral care and develop communication skills necessary for the ministry. Required of all students who are receiving ministerial tuition grants.

**453, 454 Internship I, II (3,3)**  
A program designed to give senior students in-depth training as they serve as apprentices under highly trained, local supervisor-mentors for two semesters. The student is expected to write weekly experiential reports and to meet with his/her mentor one hour each week for one-on-one supervision of their work. Discussion about practical application will be held weekly with the supervisor, and weekly seminars will be held at the college to discuss the learning activities. The student is expected to spend 7-8 hours each week in the field, active in the apprenticeship. Required of all fourth-year students who are receiving ministerial tuition grants. Prerequisite: 2.0 grade point average.

---

## SOCIOLOGY (SOC)

---

Adrienne Brune  
Steve Wray, Co-Chair

Laura L. Hartman, Co-Chair

The Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology is a four-year program at Averett University. The curriculum in Sociology ensures that each student is provided with a strong foundation in the basic principles, techniques of analysis, and theories for understanding and working with the important aspects of social life in the contemporary world. The program gives students an appreciation of their own social world, a broader understanding of different ways of life, and a more complete perspective of the world and their place in it. Courses focus on the study of the structure and changes of social life and relationships, and on contemporary issues in areas such as the family, crime, religion, race and ethnic relations, urban communities, aging, gender roles, and law. The program prepares students for careers in government employment, secondary teaching, social services, and research with agencies in industry, business and pre-law. It also enables students to work as data analysts, office managers, sales directors, labor managers, city planning directors, police officers, parks and recreation directors, community organizers, social workers, management consultants, advertising executives, and insurance agents. Supervised internships are available in community agencies and organizations to allow students to test their ideas about careers and examine the realities of a professional occupation.

Students must attain at least a 2.0 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

### Requirements for a Major in Sociology

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics .....	<u>3</u>
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology.....	3
SOC 401, Social Theory .....	3
SOC 440, Senior Seminar .....	3
SOC 470, Research Methods .....	3
Sociology Electives.....	15
Total	30

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Sociology

Freshman Year:

SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology

Sophomore Year:

MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics  
SOC Recommended Elective  
SOC Recommended Elective

Junior Year:

SOC Recommended Elective  
SOC 300-level Elective

Senior Year:

SOC 300-level Elective  
SOC 401, Social Theory  
SOC 440, Senior Seminar  
SOC 470, Research Methods

## **Sociology/Criminal Justice**

The Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice is a four-year program at Averett University and requires courses in Sociology and in Criminal Justice.

Specific course requirements for the Sociology/Criminal Justice Programs (4-year program and 2+2 program) may be found in the Criminal Justice section of the catalog, page 98.

### **Minor**

Students electing a minor in Sociology must complete SOC 101 plus 15 hours in Sociology (9 hours must be at the 300-400 level).

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

### **Courses of Instruction in Sociology**

#### **101 Introduction to Sociology (3)**

A scientific study of social behavior examining the topics of culture, socialization, social organization, social class, minority groups, social power and conflict, patterns of social interaction, the environment, and social change. Offered fall and spring semesters.

#### **102 Social Problems (3)**

An examination of the contemporary social problems of poverty, war, racism, sexism, domestic violence, and resource depletion. Theories of causation, cost, and possible solutions are discussed. Offered spring semester.

#### **104 Elections and Current Events (3)**

This course is designed to examine the structure of national, state, and local election activities. The social and economic forces underlying the election process will be studied along with the strategies used to achieve success. Current events that affect social and political institutions around the country will be studied. Offered election years.

#### **212 Death and Dying (Same as REL 212) (3)**

The goal of this course is to examine the phenomenon of death and dying within various cultural and religious contexts with the view of understanding how such perspectives inform our understanding of the end of life. This approach will survey the principles and perspectives of science and the humanities as they apply to the experience of death and dying. Numerous studies and instructional methodologies will be examined for the purpose of correcting stereotypes and myths concerning death and the reactions of people to death and dying. The course will pay particular attention to the phenomenon of death and dying through the lenses of social science and religion. Offered fall semester.

#### **216 Criminology (3)**

An examination of criminal behavior and crimes against society. The crimes surveyed include murder, burglary, robbery, fraud, embezzlement, confidence games, and business crimes. The course provides an analysis of the social and legal factors affecting the nature of crime and the development of social responses to it. Offered fall semester.

#### **230 Cultural Anthropology (3)**

A comparative study of cultures around the world. Emphasis is on the variations in marriage and kinship, religion and magic, the arts, language, and social systems of politics, stratification, and economics.

#### **306 Marriage and the Family (3)**

A study of courtship, marriage, and the family, focusing on the problems in these relationships and promoting self-understanding in dynamic relationships. Offered fall and spring semesters.

- 309 Society and the Individual (3)**  
An examination of the individual in a changing society and the dynamic relationship between the person and society at large. Particular attention is paid to the topics of personality development, perception, symbolic communication, drug addiction, madness, social control, and deviant subcultures. Several theoretical perspectives are employed to analyze these topics.
- 317 American Minorities (3)**  
An examination of the conditions and problems of minority groups with particular emphasis on the social and psychological processes involved in prejudice. The focus is on racial, ethnic, class, and religious minorities, but consideration is given to women, the elderly, homosexuals, and the mentally and physically disabled as minority groups. Prerequisite: SOC 101. Offered fall semester.
- 320 Urban Sociology (3)**  
An examination of the origin and development of the city and urbanization as a social phenomenon. The organization, functions, and problems of modern urban communities are examined with special emphasis on population growth and environmental decay. Prerequisite: SOC 101.
- 329 Drugs and Substance Abuse (same as CRJ 329) (3)**  
An examination of drugs and substance abuse in American society. The course examines the social, physical, and mental effects drugs have on the user, as well as the impact they have on the family and society. Major issues include addiction, recovery, treatment, rehabilitation, and relapse prevention. Offered spring semester.
- 332 Gender Roles in Society (3)**  
A study of the impact of gender roles on the institutions of our society including the family, church, school, economy, military, sports, media, health care, law, and government. The biological, psychological, and socio-cultural explanations for the acquisition of gender roles also will be examined as well as the importance of language and the nature of same-sex and opposite-sex relationships. Offered fall semester.
- 340 Juvenile Delinquency and Justice (Same as CRJ 340) (3)**  
An examination of the causes of juvenile delinquency, sociological theory, and the responses of the legal system. The extent of juvenile delinquency, the organization of police, judicial, and correctional response to juvenile offenders, the legal developments in statutory and case law, and the future of this system are examined. Offered fall semester.
- 344 Sports on the Silver Screen (3)**  
Most Americans are at least somewhat interested in sport and many are downright fanatical about it. This does not mean they necessarily understand sport. Today, every facet of sport culture is media culture. By looking at sports films, this course will examine how sport is linked to other institutions in society and the role sport plays in socializing youngsters in American values. Sport movies will also be used to examine the issues of race, gender, deviance, and violence. Offered fall semester.
- 365 Aging and Society (3)**  
An exploration of the characteristics, experiences, problems, and needs of older persons. Issues examined include population changes, health, physical changes, social psychological processes of aging, social policies for the aged, and community programs and services for older adults. Prerequisite: SOC 101.
- 375 Corrections (Same as CRJ 375) (3)**  
A survey of prison, jail, and correction alternatives in the United States. Topics include federal, state, and local correctional facilities, sentencing, the prison experience, community correctional programs, probation, and parole. Prerequisite: SOC 216 or CRJ 301. Offered alternate years.
- 401 Social Theory (3)**  
A review of the growth and development of sociology, the major theories of symbolic interactionism, conflict, functionalism, and the fundamentals of theory construction. Prerequisites: SOC 101 and six additional hours in sociology. Offered spring semester.

**440 Senior Seminar (3)**

A capstone course for the major. The student will complete a project combining theory, research, and evaluation methods on a selected topic in the major. A portion of the course will be devoted to career development. Prerequisite or co-requisite: SOC 470. Offered spring semester.

**445 Internship (3)**

A supervised work experience in a setting that requires the student to use sociological skills in a practical, applied program. A qualitative analysis and report are required. Prerequisite: 2.0 cumulative grade point average and permission of the instructor. Offered each semester, including summer.

**470 Research Methods (3)**

An examination of the methods sociologists use in gathering and evaluating scientific facts. Topics include surveys, participant observation, content analysis, questionnaire construction, and interviewing. Prerequisites: SOC 101 and six hours of sociology. Offered fall semester.

---

## **SPANISH (SPA)**

---

Barbara A. Clark

The modern language program is proficiency-based; that is, students learn skills that help them to function in the language. The goal at each level is to help the student advance to the next level of proficiency.

### **Placement**

Students who wish to begin the study of Spanish for the first time are required to take the placement exam.

All students with two or more years of high school credit, or transfers with college credit who intend to continue their study of Spanish at Averett, must take the placement exam. Students are encouraged to do as well as possible. Those students whose records indicate successful completion of three or more years of Spanish within the past two years should, depending upon the results of the placement exam, expect to be placed in 201 or a higher level course.

Students may take the language placement exam online at their convenience, but should do so at least several days prior to Orientation/Registration. The exam and instructions are available at: [http://webcape.byuhtsc.org/nwregister.php\(#\)acct=averett](http://webcape.byuhtsc.org/nwregister.php(#)acct=averett). Placement results will be provided immediately after the exam is completed and submitted.

Opportunities for study in countries where the Spanish language prevails are available, and arrangements may be made through the Office of Study Abroad.

### **Minor**

A minor in Spanish is available to students who satisfactorily complete SPA 221, 222, 315, and 316 or 317. Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor. A major in Modern Languages with a concentration in Spanish and a supporting program in French is available to students who satisfactorily complete the degree requirements. For details of the major please refer to the information on Modern Languages on page 166. Student must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.5 in the major.

### **Liberal Studies: Teaching Licensure Majors**

Students who plan to earn teaching licensure in grades PK-6 may choose a concentration in Spanish as one of two concentration areas required for licensure. This concentration consists of SPA 221 and 222 or 315 and 316 or 317, depending upon placement.

### **Pass/Fail Option**

Elective Spanish courses may be taken Pass/Fail if they are not used to fulfill a general education requirement. For example, students who minor in French, who seek a B.A. degree or who choose a Spanish course to partially fulfill the Society component of the General Education Requirements may not choose the Pass/Fail option.

### **Courses of Instruction in Spanish**

#### **101, 102 Beginning Spanish I, II**

**(4,4)**

A course designed to help students learn functional tasks that permit them to use Spanish in appropriate, "real-life" situations. Special emphasis is placed on speaking and listening, followed by exercises to promote skill in

reading and writing. This course is intended for students with fewer than two years of prior instruction in Spanish.

**201, 202 Intermediate Spanish I, II (3,3)**

A review of basic grammar and intermediate functional skills. Special emphasis is placed on reading and writing followed by exercises to improve listening and speaking skills. This course is intended for students who have successfully completed two or more years of prior instruction in Spanish. Prerequisite: SPA 102 or departmental placement.

**211 Intermediate Spoken Spanish (1)**

A course designed to provide additional practice in speaking for students enrolled in intermediate level courses. It is especially helpful to students new to Averett. Pass/Fail only, this course may be repeated once for credit. Prerequisite: SPA 102 or equivalent.

**221 Conversation and Listening (4)**

A course intended to help the intermediate-level student progress to an advanced level in speaking and listening proficiency. Video and audio materials, oral presentations, and contact with speakers outside the classroom setting enable students to improve their comprehension and conversation. Prerequisite: SPA 202 or departmental placement.

**222 Advanced Writing and Grammar (3)**

A course designed to help the intermediate level student progress to an advanced level of proficiency in written Spanish. Various activities allow the student to explore stylistic elements which affect the form and tone of the written word. The grammatical structures needed to perform particular written tasks are reviewed systematically. Prerequisite: SPA 221 or departmental placement.

**315 Introduction to Hispanic Literature (3)**

An introduction to works representative of the great Hispanic literary tradition. Examples of different literary genres will be studied in order to provide the student the greatest exposure. Activities and exercises are designed to develop students' awareness and appreciation of various styles and themes of literary works. Prerequisite: SPA 221 or 222, departmental placement, or permission of the department chair.

**316 Culture and Civilization, Spain (3)**

A course designed for the advanced-level student who wishes to explore and to understand better the relationship of history and cultural development in Spanish society. Historical periods and topics will vary. Prerequisite or co-requisite: SPA 222.

**317 Culture and Civilization, Latin America (3)**

A course designed for the advanced-level student who wishes to explore and to understand better the relationship of history and cultural development in Hispanic societies. Historical periods and topics will vary. Prerequisite or co-requisite: SPA 222.

---

## THEATRE (TH)

---

Richard Breen, Co-Chair

Jackie Finney, Co-Chair

The Averett University Department of Theatre has dedicated itself to the teaching of the practice of theatre, in all of its aspects, and to the growth and development of this discipline in those students who have expressed an interest in the theatre arts. Students in the department bring with them a variety of backgrounds and experiences, both acting and technical, and it becomes the goal of the department to enhance those experiences into an ensemble effort, creating a sense of teamwork and mutual interdependence.

The Theatre Department supports the University's mission of developing students who communicate clearly, think critically, have a global perspective, and are lifelong learners by offering academic courses that fulfill the General Education requirements of the University. The department also recognizes, and strives to fulfill, its responsibilities as a cultural center for the University and the surrounding community by presenting a series of professionally-staged theatre productions throughout the school year.

Upon graduation each major should exhibit the skills and background necessary to enter successfully into a graduate program of study or into an entry-level professional position.

All theatre majors must complete a senior project prior to graduation. In addition, students must attain at least a 2.0 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

### Requirements for a Major in Theatre

In addition to the general education requirements for a Bachelor of Arts degree, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
TH 101, Voice and Diction .....	3
TH 105, Introduction to the Theatre .....	3
TH 110, Theatre Practicum (must repeat for 4 hours credit) .....	4
TH 133, Acting I <b>or</b>	
TH 233, Acting II <b>or</b>	
TH 333, Acting III <b>or</b>	
TH 433, Acting IV .....	6
TH 220, History of the Theatre I .....	3
TH 221, History of the Theatre II .....	3
TH 251, Stagecraft I .....	3
TH 252, Stagecraft II .....	3
TH 340, Theatre Design .....	3
TH 401, Play Directing I .....	3
TH 410, Modern Drama .....	3
TH 462, Senior Seminar .....	3
ENG 414/TH 414, Shakespeare .....	3
Theatre Electives (3 hours must be at the 300 level or above) .....	6
	Total 49

All students majoring in Theatre are required to serve as Stage Manager for at least one major drama production and to serve as chairperson at least once for each production crew (e.g. makeup, lighting, costumes, deck, and house management).

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Theatre

### Freshman Year:

TH, 101, Voice and Diction **or**  
TH 220, History of the Theatre I **or**  
TH 221, History of the Theatre II  
TH 105, Introduction to the Theatre  
TH 110, Theatre Practicum  
TH 133, Acting I **or**  
TH 233, Acting II  
TH 251, Stagecraft I **or**  
TH 252, Stagecraft II

### Sophomore Year:

TH 220, History of the Theatre I **or**  
TH 221, History of the Theatre II  
TH 133, Acting I **or**  
TH 233, Acting II  
TH 251, Stagecraft I **or**  
TH 252, Stagecraft II

### Junior Year:

ENG 414/TH 414, Shakespeare  
TH 110, Theatre Practicum  
TH 333, Acting III **or**  
TH 340, Theatre Design **or**  
TH 433, Acting IV  
TH 220, History of the Theatre I **or**  
TH 221, History of the Theatre II  
TH 401, Play Directing I **or**  
TH 402, Play Directing II  
Theatre Elective

### Senior Year:

TH 110, Theatre Practicum  
TH 333, Acting III **or**  
TH 340, Theatre Design **or**  
TH 433, Acting IV  
TH 401, Play Directing I **or**  
TH 402, Play Directing II  
TH 410, Modern Drama  
TH 462, Senior Seminar  
Theatre Elective

## Requirements for a Major in Theatre Arts with Teaching Licensure (PK-12)

Students may earn a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree in Theatre Arts with Teaching Licensure.

	Semester Hours
ENG 414/TH 414, Shakespeare .....	3
TH 101, Voice and Diction .....	3
TH 105, Introduction to the Theatre .....	3
TH 110, Theatre Practicum (must repeat for 4 hours credit) .....	4
TH 133, Acting I <b>or</b>	
TH 233, Acting II <b>or</b>	
TH 333, Acting III <b>or</b>	
TH 433, Acting IV .....	6
TH 205, Creative Dramatics for the Classroom Teacher.....	3
TH 210, Oral Interpretation of Literature .....	3
TH 220, History of the Theatre I .....	3
TH 221, History of the Theatre II .....	3
TH 251, Stagecraft I.....	3
TH 252, Stagecraft II .....	3
TH 340, Theatre Design.....	3
TH 401, Play Directing I.....	3
TH 402, Play Directing II .....	3
TH 410, Modern Drama.....	3
TH 440, Advanced Design.....	3
TH 462, Senior Seminar .....	3
Total	55

The other General Education and Professional Education requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for teaching licensure may be found on page 151-153.

## Requirements for a Major in English/Theatre

Students interested in pursuing graduate degrees in either or both fields may select the Bachelor of Arts degree in English/Theatre.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century .....	3
ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries .....	3
ENG 205, Survey of American Literature to 1860 .....	3
ENG 206, Survey of American Literature 1860 – 1970 .....	3
ENG 210, Oral Interpretation of Literature .....	3
ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English .....	3
ENG 410, Modern Drama.....	3
ENG 414/TH 414, Shakespeare .....	3
ENG 421, Teaching Composition.....	3
ENG 444, Literature for Children and Adolescents .....	3
English Elective .....	3
TH 101, Voice and Diction .....	3
TH 110, Theatre Practicum (must repeat for 3 hours credit).....	3
TH 133, Acting I <b>or</b>	
TH 233, Acting II <b>or</b>	
TH 333, Acting III <b>or</b>	
TH 433, Acting IV .....	6
TH 205, Creative Dramatics for the Classroom Teacher.....	3
TH 220, History of the Theatre I or	
TH 221, History of the Theatre II .....	3
TH 251, Stagecraft I.....	3
TH 252, Stagecraft II .....	3
TH 340, Theatre Design.....	3
TH 401, Play Directing I.....	3
Total	60

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for English/Theatre

Freshman Year:

- ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research
- ENG 112, Introduction to Literature
- TH 101, Voice and Diction **or**
  - TH 220, History of the Theatre I **or**
  - TH 221, History of the Theatre II
- TH 105, Introduction to the Theatre
- TH 110, Theatre Practicum
- TH 133, Acting I **or**
  - TH 233, Acting II
- TH 251 Stagecraft I, **or**
  - TH 252, Stagecraft II

Sophomore Year:

ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century  
ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries  
English Elective  
TH 101, Voice and Diction **or**  
    TH 220, History of the Theatre I **or**  
    TH 221, History of the Theatre II  
TH 110, Theatre Practicum  
TH 205, Creative Dramatics for the Classroom Teacher  
TH 233, Acting II **or**  
    TH 333, Acting III  
TH 251 Stagecraft I, **or**  
    TH 252, Stagecraft II

Junior Year:

ENG 205, Survey of American Literature to 1860  
ENG 206, Survey of American Literature 1860 – 1970  
ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English  
ENG 414, Shakespeare **or**  
    TH 410, Modern Drama  
TH 110, Theatre Practicum  
TH 340, Theatre Design  
TH 401, Play Directing I **or**  
    TH 402, Play Directing II

Senior Year:

ENG 414, Shakespeare **or**  
    TH 410, Modern Drama  
ENG 421, Teaching Composition  
ENG 444, Literature for Children and Adolescents  
TH 333, Acting III **or**  
    TH 340, Theatre Design **or**  
    TH 433, Acting IV

**Minor**

Students electing a minor in Theatre must complete 18 semester hours from courses listed under Theatre, nine of which must be at the 300 or 400-level.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.0 in the minor.

## Minor in Musical Theatre

The following courses are required for a minor in musical theatre:

	Semester Hours
MUS 151, Applied Voice (2 semesters) .....	2
MUS 161, Averett Singers (2 semesters).....	2
TH 111, Theatre Practicum in Musical Theatre (2 semesters) .....	2
TH 207, Musical Theatre Lab.....	3
TH 208, Musical Theatre Dance.....	2
TH 305, History of Musical Theatre.....	3
TH 133, Acting I or TH 233, Acting II .....	3
Three hours of electives from the following:	
MUS 188, Class Piano for Beginners.....	1
MUS 251, Applied Voice .....	1-2
TH 133, Acting I or TH 233, Acting II .....	3
TH 306, Advanced Musical Theatre Dance .....	<u>2</u>
	Total 20

## Teaching Licensure: Speech Communication Endorsement

Students seeking this endorsement must have a primary license in another field to which an endorsement in Speech may be added. The requirements for an add-on endorsement in Speech are listed below:

	Semester Hours
TH 101, Voice and Diction.....	3
TH 205, Creative Dramatics .....	3
TH 210, Oral Interpretation of Literature .....	3
TH 300, Public Speaking .....	3
	Total 12

TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication, is included in core requirements for Liberal Studies with or without Teaching Licensure.

## Courses of Instruction in Theatre

### 101 Voice and Diction

(3)

A course designed to improve voice and diction. A study of the physiological structure of the vocal mechanism and an introduction to phonetics is made to give the student a basis for continuing improvement in breathing, relaxation, and presentation. This course strives for a beginning understanding of “Standard American English” with vocal work on monologues, reports, and exercises. Oral projects and lectures will be a part of the course.

### 103 Introduction to Human Communication

(3)

The study of communication forms and contexts, including intrapersonal, interpersonal, and public. Emphasis on development of individual communicative competency in such areas as listening, reasoning, interviewing, small group, and nonverbal communication. Completion of ENG 111 is recommended as prerequisite.

### 105 Introduction to the Theatre

(3)

A course designed to familiarize the student with structural forms and styles of dramatic literature from the classic to the contemporary period. The development of acting techniques, theatre architecture, methods of staging, and theatre terminologies are included. This course satisfies three hours of the Fine Arts requirement for General Education.

- 110 Theatre Practicum (1)**  
A course designed to give credit for execution of major responsibility in theatre activities under faculty supervision. May be repeated up to eight times for credit. Prerequisite: Approval of TH faculty.
- 111 Practicum in Musical Theatre (1)**  
A course designed to give credit for execution of major responsibility in musical theatre activities under faculty supervision. May be repeated up to eight times for credit. Prerequisite: Approval of TH faculty.
- 133 Acting I (3)**  
A general introductory course in acting. The course involves exercises in voice, movement, improvisation, pantomime, text study, and some scene work. Open to all students. Alternate years.
- 205 Creative Dramatics for the Classroom Teacher (3)**  
A course of instruction in directing creative dramatics for children. Included are the study of psychological elements involved in group activity along with the means of stimulating growth of the imagination and the development of self-expression in children. Alternate years.
- 207 Musical Theatre Lab (3)**  
A course focused on the study of Musical Theatre Literature with an emphasis on performance.
- 208 Musical Theatre Dance (2)**  
A course designed to teach the fundamental dance technique and conditioning exercises for the Musical Theatre dancer. Dance combinations stressing steps and styles used historically in Musical Theatre productions will be taught.
- 210 Oral Interpretation of Literature (same as ENG 210) (3)**  
A course designed to introduce the student to the oral communication of various forms of literature and to instruct the student in techniques of oral delivery. Regular performance in an informal atmosphere with constructive criticism by the instructor and fellow students makes up a major part of the course.
- 220 History of the Theatre I (3)**  
The study of theatre development from its beginning to the Renaissance. This course satisfies three hours of the Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Prerequisite: TH 105 or permission of instructor.
- 221 History of the Theatre II (3)**  
The study of theatre development from the Renaissance to Ibsen. This course satisfies three hours of the Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Prerequisite: TH 105 or permission of instructor.
- 233 Acting II (3)**  
A course that involves basic scene study, character work, and text analysis. The actor's work continues with the study of various techniques used in performance. Alternate years. Prerequisite: TH 133 or permission of instructor.
- 251 Stagecraft I and Lab (3)**  
An introduction to the building and painting of scenery and to lighting mechanics, requiring approximately 45 laboratory hours per semester.
- 252 Stagecraft II and Lab (3)**  
An introduction to the building and maintenance of costumes and to the application of makeup, requiring approximately 45 laboratory hours per semester.
- 300 Public Speaking (3)**  
A course designed to build self-confidence in the student and to acquaint the student with the structural elements of various forms of public discourse working toward logical, coherent, and easy communication.

- 305 History of American Musical Theatre (3)**  
A course focused on the study of the development of the American Musical Theatre as music and as theatre.
- 306 Advanced Musical Theatre Dance (2)**  
This course is a continuation of the study of Musical Theatre Dance techniques, steps, and styles.
- 320 Church Drama (3)**  
A study of all aspects of theatrical productions to be produced in churches, including the process of analysis and interpretation, directing, designing of scenery, costuming, and makeup.
- 333 Acting III (3)**  
An advanced acting class focusing on how an actor approaches Period styles and movement. Intensive scene study and monologues from the Greek Classics to Modern Drama. Prerequisite: TH 233 or permission of instructor.
- 340 Theatre Design (3)**  
A course tailored to the individual needs of beginning design students; the focus will be on scenery, costumes, lighting, or sound design. May be repeated for a maximum of nine semester hours.
- 342 Stage Management (3)**  
An introductory course involving the fundamental principles of stage management. This course is a practical guide to all phases of production management, stage management, and front-of-the-house operations. The course includes techniques and devices for effective backstage operations, and covers all aspects of stage management from pre-production through the final performance.
- 401 Play Directing I (3)**  
An introduction to creative and aesthetic challenges faced by the director and how they are solved. Included is an examination of the director's relationship to the text, the design team, and the actor. This approach is both theatrical and practical involving reasoning, analysis, research, rehearsal observation, exercises, and papers. Alternate years. Prerequisite: TH 333 or permission of instructor.
- 402 Play Directing II (3)**  
An advanced study of the method of analysis, interpretation, and blocking of a play. This is the practical application of directorial methods learned. Extensive research including script analysis and interpretation, establishing atmosphere, developing character relationships, pace and tempo in scene work is a part of the student's study. Working with designers and producers is also researched. Exercises and lectures culminate in a polished production of a one-act play. Alternate years. Prerequisite: TH 401 or permission of instructor.
- 410 Modern Drama (Same as ENG 410) (3)**  
Development of drama from Ibsen to today, including American, European, and Third World playwrights. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.
- 414 Shakespeare (Same as ENG 414) (3)**  
The study of representative comedies, histories, and tragedies, showing Shakespeare's practice in each type, the development of his art and craftsmanship as poet and dramatist, and the progress of his thought and style. Introduction to Shakespeare's world and theatre. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other Literature course. Alternate years.
- 433 Acting IV (3)**  
A concentrated study in script and character analysis. Extensive scene work and improvisation is used to develop good acting techniques. Prerequisite: TH 333.
- 440 Advanced Design (3)**  
A course tailored to the individual needs of advanced design students; the focus will be on scenery, costumes, lighting, or sound design. May be repeated for a maximum of 9 hours. Prerequisite: TH 340 or permission of instructor.

**445 Internship****(credit hours contingent upon responsibilities) (3-9)**

An internship with a professional theatre company which is approved by the theatre faculty. This course allows the student to gain practical work experience in his/her chosen field. Prerequisite: Permission of theatre faculty.

**462 Senior Seminar****(3)**

A capstone course for the theatre major. The student, in collaboration with the theatre faculty will complete an assigned project from concept to performance. The student is required to keep a journal of the process, write a research paper on the project, and complete a self-evaluation after the project is completed.

---

## Women's and Gender Studies

---

The Women's and Gender Studies Program critically examines the place of women and gender in culture and society. It is an interdisciplinary program that combines the analytic tools from different disciplines, incorporating both practical and theoretical approaches to understanding the role of gender in our lives. Women's issues and gender issues encompass and modify all areas of knowledge; subjects like race, class, and sexuality are crucial aspects of the WGS experience, so the WGS Program is multicultural as well as interdisciplinary. Course offerings also provide students with opportunities to integrate experiences from a variety of different fields of study. The WGS minor provides an education in gender issues that responds to an increasing demand for such expertise in many professions and offers strong preparation for further study in a variety of postgraduate fields and job markets. WGS courses offer students a strong foundation for involvement in social justice issues. The Women's and Gender Studies minor is open to all undergraduates enrolled at Averett University.

The minor will consist of two core classes:

WGS200: Introduction to Women's and Gender Studies	(3)
WGS300: Literature and Research	(3)
WGS electives	(12)
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>(18)</b>

No more than two electives may be taken for WGS credit from any single department. At least 9 of the 12 elective hours must be at the 300-400 level.

Research Project:

Students must include some specialized research and/or an internship as part of their WGS minor. They may do so by completing a Capstone or Senior Seminar course in their respective majors; however, a WGS critical lens must be applied to the research project or internship to receive WGS credit. The WGS Director and faculty member overseeing the student's research in his or her major would need to approve the approach. A syllabi for the Capstone or Seminar course will be created and overseen by the mentoring faculty member and a copy of it provided to the WGS Director in advance of the start of the student's research.

If the student wishes for an internship to satisfy a requirement in the major or a general education requirement, significant attention must still be paid to having a WGS component of the project. The student must obtain written approval in advance from the WGS Director and the professor teaching/overseeing the non-WGS requirement the student wishes to satisfy.

Upon completion of the WGS minor, students should be able to:

- Recognize how the social and cultural constructions of gender have shaped the experiences of men and women historically and geographically;
- Understand connections between gender and power in a global context;
- Examine gender roles from multiple perspectives and disciplines;
- Evaluate feminist critical scholarship and methodologies;
- Analyze the connections between gender inequalities and other forms of discrimination (race, class, ethnicity, etc.);
- Develop abilities and skills to deal positively and effectively with gender issues;
- Appreciate the ethical and social justice dimensions and implications of the study of gender.

Assessment of Minor:

In order to ensure integrity of the WGS minor, student mastery of these skills and content areas must be demonstrated beyond simply passing WGS listed classes. Therefore, students must submit a WGS Portfolio to the WGS Director. The Portfolio must consist of three essays of no less than 5 pages (not including works cited), each written for at least three different WGS classes, the research project from WGS300, and a 1,500-

2,000 word self-reflective essay must introduce the Portfolio. It will be submitted by each student upon the completion of minor coursework and no later than the eighth week of his or her final semester.

WGS200 Introduction to Women's and Gender Studies

(3)

This course provides an introduction to the dynamic, interdisciplinary field of Women's and Gender Studies. By incorporating both contemporary and historical feminist material, the class will explore various definitions, movements, theories, applications, debates, intersections, waves, practices, contradictions and critical issues embedded within feminist and gender focused discourses.

WGS300 Literature and Research

(3)

This course introduces students to representative works by and about women from historical, social, and literary perspectives. Students read different literary forms and identify motifs, themes, and patterns in that literature. Additionally, students learn historical, philosophical, religious, and cultural information to help increase understanding and appreciation of the works in context of Gender Studies generally. Projects will be completed throughout the course that help students explore and apply how gender roles develop and change.

WGS332 Gender Roles

(3)

The purpose of this class is to examine the biological, psychological, and sociocultural explanations for the acquisition of gender. The student will also investigate how the cultural expectations of gender effect not only communication, but also the institutions of our society including the media, family, church, school, economy, military, sports, health care, law and government. How much time spent on any one area will depend, in part, on the interests of those enrolled. Student input is vital to make this class as interesting and successful as possible. Gender is, by nature, an interdisciplinary topic. The instructor is a sociologist by training and that is the perspective that will dominate the class. However, the readings represent a variety of viewpoints.

---

## **STUDENT LIFE**

---

It is the goal of the University to create a community in which the student can grow intellectually, emotionally, physically, socially, and spiritually, thus preparing the student for lifelong learning. Student life at Averett offers a wide range of personal, social, cultural, religious, and athletic opportunities to complement academic studies. At the core of Averett's student life program are the elements which contribute to a better community: common purpose, shared responsibility, interdependence, communication, interaction, and pride in commitment to the University.

### **Campus Life**

#### **Arts@Averett**

The Arts@Averett Committee, composed of faculty, staff and students, sponsors a series of events each year for both the college and Danville community. The events include public speakers, musical performances, and dramatic productions. Events are free for AU students, faculty and staff.

#### **Averett Singers**

Averett Singers is the primary choral performing organization on campus. This choir offers special opportunities for ensemble singing and individual musical expression. The main focus of the choir is to represent the University positively at both on and off campus events. Membership is open to any student who successfully completes an audition, and academic credit may be awarded for each semester of participation.

#### **Campus Activities**

The Averett University Campus Activities Board (CAB) offers an opportunity for increased group participation and interaction while presenting socially stimulating programs to the campus community. CAB's strength is a direct result of the input and assistance from a large number of student volunteers. Several committees oversee different components of CAB and sponsor comedians, concerts, dances, and other special events throughout the year.

#### **Religious Life**

Averett University seeks to foster an environment where faith concerns can be explored and nurtured. In an atmosphere of care and support, students are provided with opportunities to explore their individual spirituality and to express their faith both publicly and privately. Averett values religious freedom and tolerance, and welcomes diversity as a means of broadening minds and enriching dialogue.

The Christian Student Union (CSU) promotes both the inward journey and outward expression of Christian faith. Members of CSU involve themselves in weekly worship services, bible study, community mission projects, and retreats. The CSU is open to persons of all denominations. Catholic Campus Ministry, Fellowship of Christian Athletes, Brothers and Sisters in Christ (BASIC), and area churches sponsor other religious activities. Participation in any campus ministry activity is voluntary and open to all students.

#### **Social and Cultural Awareness Programs**

Averett strives to enhance the overall educational experience of students through development of, exposure to, and participation in social and cultural activities. Numerous events are planned throughout the school year for the personal enjoyment and growth of our students. On-campus events are free for all Averett students, and discounted or free tickets are available to students for many community-sponsored events. In addition to activities planned during the year, several student organizations have formed that foster cultural awareness and development.

## **Student Services**

### **Averett Central**

Main Hall 1<sup>st</sup> Floor (entrance of Woodland Avenue across from Schoolfield House Booksellers)

Hours of Operation: Monday through Friday, 8:30 a.m. to 4:30 p.m. EST

[averettcentral@averett.edu](mailto:averettcentral@averett.edu) / x15614 (on campus) / 434-791-5614 (off campus)

Averett Central is a “one-stop shop” providing superior, friendly student/staff interaction and services. As a service center, Averett Central is the point of contact for assistance and problem resolution. Students can accomplish the “business” of being an Averett student by requesting, receiving, and retrieving the wealth of information needed without having to run all over campus to do it.

Students can also get answers to their questions at Averett Central online at:  
[http://wiki.averett.edu/index.php/Averett\\_Central](http://wiki.averett.edu/index.php/Averett_Central).

### **Career Services**

The Career Center helps students translate their majors into careers or graduate study. Students may sign up for Averett's free online Career Service manager at: <https://Averett-csm.symplicity.com/student> and learn about full-time and part-time employment, career related events, and internships. Individual appointments are available to help students choose a major, develop a career, create or review résumés, and discuss job search strategies and opportunities. Workshops and handouts on these topics are available as well. All services are free to Averett students and alumni. Career Services is located in the CCECC and services are available by appointment or on a drop-in basis.

### **Disability Services**

The University is committed to offering equal educational opportunities for persons with disabilities. It is the University's policy that no qualified person shall, on the basis of disability, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination with regard to the programs, activities, or services provided by the University. Services to students with disabilities are coordinated through Academic Support in accordance with applicable provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, and the Virginians with Disabilities Act. In order to receive services, students with disabilities are required to provide documentation of their disabilities and any requested accommodations to the Galesi Family Academic Support Office.

### **Food Services**

Food service is provided by Bon Appetit during the regular academic sessions and as activity on campus during the summer sessions requires. The University requires that students living on campus have a meal plan during the academic year. Several meal plan options are available to students, including smaller plans for commuter students. The dining hall, when open during the academic year, is open to the entire Averett community and the general public. All academic year meal plans end with the spring semester and do not carry over into the summer sessions.

### **Health Services**

The university requires each student to have a completed Personal Health History form on file in the Dean of Students Office.

Averett has partnered with an off-campus medical facility, Providence Family & Sports Medicine, Inc., to provide health care services for all full-time students. Their office is located at 441 Piney Forest Road, and appointments can be made by calling 434-791-4110. All students must present their Averett ID as well as their medical insurance card, along with their co-payment, at the time of service. The Cougar Express is available to make stops at Providence with prior notice. Students should contact the Dean of Students Office (791-5620) to

make the necessary arrangements for transportation. Additional information about Providence Family & Sports Medicine, Inc. and Averett University Health Services can be found in the Dean of Students Office.

In the event of an emergency, students should first contact 911 immediately, then Security (1-5888) and a Residence Life Staff member.

All full time Averett students must show proof of medical insurance prior to enrollment. Students who will be covered on their parents' insurance may waive out of the university's insurance by visiting the Gallagher Koster website and providing the requested waiver information. Their website is [www.gallagherkoster.com/averett](http://www.gallagherkoster.com/averett). Those who do not have health insurance coverage are required to purchase the university's plan which is underwritten by Companion Life Insurance Company and managed by Gallagher Koster. The annual cost is \$407. All intercollegiate sports athletes will be automatically enrolled in an excess athletic sports insurance policy for a fee of \$150. Student athletes are required to carry this coverage and, therefore, may not waive it – even if they are eligible to waive the university's other plan. Details of coverage can be found on the Gallagher Koster website.

### **New Student Orientation**

New Student Orientation is the first stop on the journey students take as they become part of the Averett family. Orientation is designed to acclimate new students to campus life and the academic rigors of college. During this time, students attend sessions about university life, complete academic assessments, meet with their advisors, learn more about financial aid and other university services, meet other new students, and register for classes. In addition, this time serves as an opportunity for new students to get settled once they have moved in to the residence halls and for all students to get to know each other.

### **Personal Counseling**

Students who may have personal concerns, relationship problems, or college adjustment problems may find assistance in the Personal Counseling Center located in the Charles James Office Suite on the fourth floor of the Student Center. Counseling is available by appointment and is strictly confidential. Appointments are made by calling 791-5624 (extension 1-5624 on campus) or through campus email. Contact Joan Kahwajy-Anderson, Director of Counseling Services, at [jkahwajy@averett.edu](mailto:jkahwajy@averett.edu).

### **Athletics and Leisure Activities**

#### **Intercollegiate Athletics**

In addition to the instructional programs listed in this catalog, Averett provides 13 intercollegiate athletics programs. Committed to providing an environment for the growth and development of the whole person, the University recognizes that athletic endeavors and academic pursuits should complement each other. Thus, it is the goal of the University that the student-athlete experience emphasizes success in academics as well as athletics. Averett is dedicated to the ideals of both fair play and amateur athletic competition as defined and guided by the National Collegiate Athletic Association.

Averett holds institutional membership in the National Collegiate Athletic Association (Division III) and the USA South Athletic Conference. These memberships make possible exciting, competitive experiences and advancement to regional and national competition for qualifying individuals and teams. Although student-athletes are recruited by the coaches, open tryouts are held for all sports. Opportunities are available for participation in the sports listed below:

<b>Women</b>	<b>Men</b>
Basketball	Baseball
Cross Country	Basketball
Soccer	Cross Country
Softball	Golf
Tennis	Football
Volleyball	Soccer
	Tennis

The **Averett University Cheerleading Squad** helps to support and inspire Averett's athletic teams. Fit men and women who embody school pride and promote school spirit are selected each year.

The **Equestrian Drill Team** gives men and women riders the opportunity to participate at the regional and national level of competition through the Intercollegiate Horse Show Association. The Equestrian Drill Team is under the supervision of the Equestrian Department

### **Intramural and Recreational Activities**

Intramural activities are available to students in such sports as basketball, dodge ball, softball, football, soccer, and volleyball. In addition, other activities such as aerobics and dance lessons are offered. For more information contact the Office of Residence Life.

### **Recreational Facilities**

Averett University features a variety of fitness and recreation options on the main campus.

**The Fitness Center:** Located in Bishop Hall, the fitness center has a variety of strength training and aerobic equipment, including plate-loaded and pin-operated weight machines, stationary bikes, treadmills, and elliptical machines.

**Main Campus Gym:** The main campus gym, located in Pritchett Hall, is accessible to students, faculty, and staff 24 hours a day.

**Tennis Courts:** Tennis courts for the AU tennis team and student use are located on the Main Campus.

## **Student Organizations**

### **Student Government Association**

Every student enrolled at Averett University is automatically a member of the Student Government Association (SGA). This group, led by an executive board and senators elected by their peers, serves as the voice for student concerns and a medium for change. The executive board members and senators represent the student voice on university-wide committees to ensure that student concerns and ideas to facilitate change are heard by the administration. In addition, the SGA coordinates the Homecoming Court process in the fall and plans the Spring Formal. Each senator is responsible for chairing a committee that offers opportunities for students to get involved in student governance.

### **Clubs and Organization**

Every student is encouraged to join at least one campus organization. Averett University offers students opportunities for involvement in a variety of activities on the campus. Participation in these activities can be helpful as students seek to meet new friends, share ideas, and pursue specific interests. A wide variety of the campus organizations available are listed below. Students may get involved in an organization by contacting the organization's advisor for more information. A complete list can be found at [www.averett.edu/student-life/student-engagement/activities/clubs-organizations](http://www.averett.edu/student-life/student-engagement/activities/clubs-organizations).

### **Student Publications**

All interested students are invited to work on *The Chanticleer*, the student newsmagazine. *The Chanticleer* is the student voice of Averett University and welcomes students who are interested in writing, graphic design, and photography. Certain leadership positions are paid, and all staff members earn one academic credit per semester for participation. Students interested in joining *The Chanticleer* staff should register for JR152.

Students are encouraged to submit to the *Ember*, Averett's juried literary and art magazine. Categories for submission include poetry, short fiction, art, and photography. Winners are published in the *Ember* and receive a monetary award. If interested, please contact Holly Kilby at [hkilby@averett.edu](mailto:hkilby@averett.edu).

## **Residence Life**

### **Residence Halls**

Residence Life at Averett University is committed to "Learning Beyond the Classroom." Our residence halls are dedicated to education, personal growth, and diversity. We encourage our residents to develop positive living/learning communities and responsible self-determination. We house upper-class and first-year students together in several of our residence halls so that living/learning may be enhanced by experiential diversity. Most of the residence halls are set up to accommodate two students per room, encouraging the personal growth that comes from having a roommate. A limited number of single rooms are available in the traditional halls for students willing to pay the single room fee of \$800.00 per year. A Resident Assistant staffs each floor. All Averett University residence halls and buildings are non-smoking.

Main, Danville, Davenport and Bishop Halls are all located in interconnecting buildings on the central part of the campus. In addition, there is a live-in Residence Life professional staff member in Danville Hall.

Main Hall is the oldest residence hall, housing approximately 24 women on the third floor. All rooms are designated singles with no additional single room fee. The rooms have high ceilings, cable television, high-speed Internet access, and some rooms have sinks. Each floor has a centrally located bathroom and study lounge. Laundry facilities are located in the basement. Note: Window-unit air conditioners are not permitted in Main Hall.

Danville Hall houses men and/or women on two separate floors as needed. Each floor has a study lounge and a centrally located bathroom. All rooms have hardwood floors, large windows, cable television, and high-speed Internet. Small, window-mounted air conditioners are permitted in Danville Hall.

Davenport Hall houses approximately 63 men on the second and third floors and 33 women on the fourth floor. Each floor has a study lounge and a centrally located bathroom. All rooms have hardwood floors, large windows, cable television, and high-speed Internet access. Small, window-mounted air conditioners are permitted in Davenport Hall.

Bishop Hall is a traditional residence hall housing 50 men. All rooms are configured as doubles and are air-conditioned. The floor features a study lounge, and a large, centrally located bathroom on the floor. Each room has cable television and high-speed Internet.

Fugate Hall is a suite-style hall located on Woodland Avenue and accommodates 70 men and 80 women. Fugate features 15 suites each housing 10 residents in five rooms with a shared central living area and bathroom. The building is air-conditioned, and is wired for high-speed Internet access and cable television. All student rooms are carpeted. The building contains a large lobby, study room and laundry room. In addition, a full-time Residence Life staff member resides on the ground floor. Single rooms are not available in Fugate Hall.

Averett Commons Apartments (The Commons) consist of three buildings accommodating a total of 140 upper class\* students in 35 apartments. Each air-conditioned apartment accommodates four students each with a single room. Each apartment has two bathrooms, a common area, balcony or patio, and kitchen. Each apartment has a washer and dryer, high-speed Internet access and cable television. The Commons has a live-in professional staff member as well as Resident Assistants in each building.

\*Averett Commons are not available to freshmen.

Resident students must complete housing information forms and sign a residence hall contract. After receiving the \$400.00 reservation deposit, the Residence Life team will make housing assignments for the academic year.

Students must be enrolled in at least 12 hours of coursework during a regular semester in order to live on campus without special permission. Housing is also available during the summer sessions. Applications are made to Residence Life.

Three professional Residence Life Area Coordinators live on campus. Selected upperclassmen serve as Resident Assistants who carry out residential programs and help solve problems that arise. The Averett University Student Handbook contains all official residence hall guidelines with policies and procedures. All students visiting in the halls are expected to abide by university policy. Residents are responsible for their guests. Overnight guests must register with the appropriate live-in staff member, the Office of Residence Life, and/or Campus Security.

The residence halls are closed following the end of each semester/summer session. They are also closed for Thanksgiving and winter break. The Dining Hall is closed during all student vacations.

### **Requirements for Living in Residence Halls**

Full-time Averett University students are required to live in university residence halls for 3 full years (6 semesters) or until they have 90 credit hours, determined once per year during the spring housing moves. Exceptions are as follows:

- Undergraduate students 23 years of age or older prior to the next period of enrollment;
- Married students [no married/family student housing];
- Students who are parents who care for a dependent child;
- Students who have served 180 days of consecutive military service prior to enrollment;
- Students who live with an immediate blood relative within 30 miles of the Danville campus. Immediate blood relative is defined as mother, father, aunt, uncle, or grandparent;
- Students who have accumulated 90 credit hours or will earn 90 credits hours by the end of the spring semester of a given academic year. Such classifications are made prior to the spring housing selection process. Anticipated credits for summer or fall sessions of the following year do not count toward the 90 credit hours;
- Students who have lived in Averett housing for three years;
- Students who are independent, emancipated adults bearing the full cost of their education;
- Transfer students who have lived on their own for at least one year prior to entering Averett.

Students who do not qualify for release from the residential requirement may petition on the basis of medical need or financial hardship.

### **Visitation Policy**

Students are welcome to visit with guests in common areas in the residence halls any time of the day or night, provided that they are respectful of quiet hours and do not create public disturbances. Common areas are defined as public spaces such as designated study lounges, television lounges, or areas outside of buildings. Residents are permitted to have guests in common areas so long as the guest(s) is/are accompanied by a resident of that building. Hallways and stairwells must be kept clear at all times and are not appropriate for public gatherings.

Visitation hours at Averett University apply to private spaces (defined below) and are intended to assist in maintaining a reasonable environment in which to live and study. This policy is designed to promote privacy and courtesy, and to limit noise that adversely affects others in the residential community. Suite-common areas, such as those found in the Commons and Fugate, are considered private spaces, i.e. not appropriate for gatherings of more than twice the design capacity of the suite. Please see the Guest policy in the 2012-2013 Student Handbook for additional information. Students may visit each other in private rooms, Fugate Suites and

the Commons apartment from 9:00 am to Midnight, Sunday through Thursday, and 9:00 AM to 1:00 AM on Friday and Saturday.

## **The Student Center**

Averett University's Student Center is home to Jut's Café, the Daly Game Room, student lounges, computer lab, meeting spaces, dining hall, clubs and organization offices, the Dean of Students, and the Office of Student Engagement and Leadership Development. Reservations for meeting facilities or special events can be made by contacting the Student Activities Office at 1-5627.

### **Banking**

An ATM machine is located in the Student Center, and there are several banks within 5-10 minutes of the university.

### **Bookstore**

Textbooks and classroom supplies, as well as drinks & snacks, school spirit clothing and gifts, cards, and residence hall supplies (toothpaste, deodorant, etc.) may be purchased from the Averett Bookstore. All Averett students with a current student ID/access card are able to charge books and school supplies to their Tuition Account for the first week of fall, spring and summer semesters. These charges are added to the student's account at the end of that period. Bookstore Gift Cards are available.

### **Motor Vehicles**

All motor vehicles must be registered with the Office of Campus Security. Once a student has registered a vehicle, he or she is given a parking permit that must be displayed on the vehicle's rear window. Parking is prohibited on the lawns and in places where the spaces have not been marked off. There are specific areas on campus for Resident Students and Commuter Students to park as well as areas designated for Faculty, Staff, and Visitor parking.

The University exercises the right to fine the driver of any vehicle who does not follow campus-parking regulations. Vehicles that are improperly parked in Faculty Only, Visitor Only, and Library 2 Hour parking spaces are subject to towing at the owner's expense.

Vehicles also will be towed for repeated parking violations, circumstances where emergency lanes or service entrances are blocked, or when vehicles are not registered with the University. Averett students are not allowed to park in areas designated as Parking By Permit Only; these parking areas are on the street and are for city residents who live in the homes surrounding the University.

---

## FINANCIAL INFORMATION

---

A college education represents a substantial monetary investment by the student and/or parents. Yet the tuition and fees charged by Averett University cover only a part of the full cost of instruction and services. Substantial contributions to the university by alumni, trustees, friends, businesses and industries, and other sources help to subsidize the education of every student at Averett.

### Tuition and Fees for 2015-2016

All tuition and fees are subject to change, without notice, by the Averett University Board of Trustees.

The charges listed below apply only to the undergraduate program offered on the main campus during regular semesters. Costs for summer sessions, the graduate programs, GPS, and at off-campus sites are listed in other publications appropriate to the program.

#### Tuition

Full-time	12-18 hours)	\$15,450.00 per semester
	Any hours over 18	\$970.00 per hour
Part-time	(less than 12 credit hours)	\$970.00 per hour
IDEAL	Full time (all independent studies)	\$425.00 per hour
IDEAL	Full time (classroom & independent studies)	\$15,450.00 per semester
IDEAL	Part time (1-11 hours)	\$425.00 per hour
Graduate Education		\$450.00 per hour
(If a graduate student takes an undergraduate class he/she pays the undergraduate hourly rate.)		
Audit Fee		
	Audit (non credit)	\$645.00 per hour
Senior Citizen Audit (age 62 or over)		
Audit – Traditional Undergraduate class		\$100.00 per course
Taking for Credit – Traditional Undergraduate –		\$325.00 per hour
On-line courses and/or IDEAL courses will be charged at the normal rate.		

NOTE: All Virginia residents who are full-time students are eligible for tuition assistance grants from the Commonwealth of Virginia; see the Virginia Tuition Assistance Program on page 230 of this catalog.

#### Room

Main, Danville, & Davenport Residence Halls	\$2,785.00 per semester
Fugate and Bishop Residence Halls	\$2,935.00 per semester
Averett Commons Apartments	\$3,365.00 per semester
Mountain View Apartments (International Student Housing)	\$2,785.00 per semester
Private Room Fee	\$800.00 per year

#### Meal Plans – Per Semester

ALL Residence Hall, Averett Commons and Commuter Students have the following options:

Unlimited Block Plan with \$25 Bonus Bucks	\$1,640.00
210 Block Plan with \$50 Bonus Bucks	\$1,415.00
105 Block Plan with \$75 Bonus Bucks	\$1,115.00

## Supplemental Fees

Late Payment Charge to unpaid accounts	\$50.00
Reservation Fee (Resident students) \$150.00 held as Room/Key Deposit [Refunded when student graduates, withdraws, or moves off campus] \$150.00 applied to first semester	\$150.00
Reservation Fee (Commuting students)	\$75.00
Advance Deposit for International Students (Resident or Commuter)	\$1,500.00
Commencement Fee (Graduating seniors only)	\$100.00
Cap and Gown (Graduating seniors only)	Check with Bookstore

## Special Program Fees

These fees are assessed because of the extraordinary costs involved in the programs.

### Equestrian Studies

Fees are assessed per class and are listed in the course schedule each semester.

### Aviation

Pilot Training (Flight and Ground): special, per course fees are assessed and are published individually. Fees are available from the Business Office, Financial Aid Office, Flight Operations facility, and Aviation Department Chair. If the student requires extra time (particularly flight time) for the completion of a course, additional fees will be assessed. Rates are subject to change because of the unpredictability of fuel and related costs.

### Music

Students taking instruction in piano, organ, or voice will be assessed applied music fees in addition to tuition.

### Special Course and Laboratory Fees

Some courses require the provision of special supplies and/or facilities, e.g., laboratory sciences, studio art, and photography. The costs of these resources fluctuate; thus the charges are published each semester in the schedule of class offerings. Be assured that every attempt is made to keep these fees as low as possible.

### Library Fines

Students must pay fines for the late return of library books and are liable for damage to or loss of books.

## Financial Policy

### Payment Schedules

Tuition and fees and all other university costs are due and payable at or before the beginning of each academic session. To assist families, the University makes available the Cougar Payment Plan. The plan offers traditional students the option of paying their tuition and fee bill in three installments rather than one lump sum. Details about the Cougar Payment Plan can be found on the Averett website.

## Unpaid Accounts

All accounts, including library and parking fines, bookstore charges and damage assessments, must be paid prior to registration for a subsequent term. Graduation and issuance of diplomas, transcripts, or course grades will be denied if accounts are not paid in full. A late payment penalty of \$50.00 will be added to each bill if not paid by the end of the published drop/add period in each term, and a subsequent \$50.00 late payment charge will be added at the end of each month. Should a student leave Averett University with an account due, all attorney's fees and other reasonable collection costs and charges necessary for collection will also be assessed.

## Crediting of Financial Aid

Financial aid from any source administered by Averett University is credited to the student's account with one-half being awarded each semester. The student or family is responsible for the difference between actual charges and the semester amount of financial aid.

## Withdrawal Adjustment Policy

Registration at the University is considered a contract binding the student and/or his/her parents for charges for the entire semester. The university makes a number of financial commitments based on enrollment at the conclusion of registration. Many of these commitments do not change even if students subsequently withdraw. However, in order to accommodate those exceptional situations which require withdrawal, the university will allow refunds to students who follow the official procedures for withdrawing from the university. Scholarships and other financial aid will be prorated in accordance with appropriate regulations and a separate refund schedule.

Any claims for refunds will be based on the date of last day in class. Refunds are computed on total charges for tuition and fees.

## Withdrawal Procedure

***Non-attendance of class does not constitute withdrawal.*** Any student who withdraws from the university, regardless of the reason, must see the Dean of Student Success and complete the withdrawal process. Failure to officially withdraw will result in academic penalties. Upon withdrawal from the university, the student's identification card must be surrendered to the Dean of Student Success. More information about withdrawing from the university may be found on page 36.

## Tuition Adjustments

Adjustments are computed on total charges for tuition and fees. The official withdrawal date assigned by the Dean of Student Success will be used in calculating all refunds.

## Regular Semester Withdrawal Policy for Tuition

<b><u>If Student Withdraws</u></b>	<b><u>Fall 2015 dates</u></b>	<b><u>Spring 2016 dates</u></b>	<b><u>Tuition Refund</u></b>
On or before the first day of classes	08/19/15	01/13/16	100%
On or before	08/28/15	01/22/16	75%
On or before	09/04/15	01/29/16	50%
On or before	09/11/15	02/15/16	25%
On or before	09/18/15	02/12/16	25%
	After 9/19/15	After 02/13/16	0%

Last day to withdraw with a "W" is September 18, 2015 for the Fall 2015 semester and February 12, 2016 for the Spring 2016 term.

If changes are made and the student is still taking at least 12 hours, there will be no adjustments in the full-time tuition rate.

### **Refunds During Summer Terms**

<u>If Student Withdraws</u>	<u>Tuition Refund</u>
On or before the first day of classes	100%
Remainder of first week	75%
Second week	0%
Third and Fourth weeks	0%

A statutory pro rata refund will be applied to any student who:

- is attending the school for the first time, AND
- leaves the school on or before the 60 percent point in the enrollment period for which he or she has been charged.

### **Refund of Room and Board**

There is no refund of room and board charges for the semester.

### **Refund of Fees**

Normally there is no refund of fees. An exception is made for fees assessed in the aviation program. The Ground School fees are refunded according to the same schedule as tuition. Flight Course fee refunds are prorated based on time incurred; however, there is a penalty of 10 percent of the unused fee assessed for those who withdraw after the last day to add a class.

### **Financial Assistance**

Averett has an extensive program of financial assistance, which serves to recognize academic achievement as well as the special financial needs of individual students. Each application for financial assistance is carefully reviewed and a package of aid is developed which will typically include a variety of types and sources of aid.

Federal regulations forbid federal financial aid to be given to any student who fails to maintain satisfactory progress. The definition of satisfactory progress involves both grade point average and the number of semester hours earned. The full policy regarding satisfactory progress can be found at [http://www.averett.edu/student-services/financial-services/forms/pdf/SAP\\_policy.pdf](http://www.averett.edu/student-services/financial-services/forms/pdf/SAP_policy.pdf).

### **Procedure for Applying for Financial Aid**

Application for financial assistance must be filed each year. Therefore, upperclassmen that wish to apply for financial assistance should proceed as follows before April 1: Complete the Renewal Free Application for Federal Student Aid sent to you by the Federal processor if you applied the previous year. If you did not apply the previous year, complete the Free Application for Federal Student Aid. The form is in the Financial Aid Office or you can apply electronically at <http://www.fafsa.ed.gov>.

Financial aid applicants who are residents of the state of Virginia must also apply for the Virginia Tuition Assistance Grant.

### **Financial Aid Appeals**

Financial aid appeals can be made in writing to the Scholarship Committee, Averett Financial Aid Office. The decision of the Scholarship Committee is final.

## Scholarships and Loans

Note: Unless otherwise indicated, application for any of the following scholarships or loans should be made through the office of Financial Aid.

### University Sponsored

**Averett Scholarships and Awards** are awarded to entering full-time students who demonstrate academic achievement. The amounts vary from \$3,000 to \$ 14,000 according to the student's cumulative GPA and SAT or ACT scores. Scholarships are renewable in subsequent years if the recipient maintains a cumulative GPA of 2.5 and their current full-time enrollment status. Grants are renewable by maintaining good academic standards and their current full-time enrollment status. To apply, complete an Averett Admissions Application before the April 1 priority deadline.

**Graduate of Merit Scholarships** are awarded to Pittsylvania County Graduates of Merit. Applicants may qualify for a scholarship in the amount of \$500 per year to attend Averett. More information about the Pittsylvania County Graduate of Merit is available at <http://www.pcs.k12.va.us/merit>.

**Phi Theta Kappa** scholarships in the amount of \$500 are awarded to community college students who are members of Phi Theta Kappa. These scholarships may be renewed by maintaining a cumulative grade point average of 3.0 or above.

**Ministerial Tuition Discounts** of \$400 are awarded to full-time resident students (\$200 for non-resident students) preparing for church-related vocations. The same discount is awarded annually to students who are daughters or sons of ministers. These awards may be renewed each year upon application. If the student changes vocational plans and does not pursue church-related work, the award will be considered loans, repayable to Averett University. These scholarships may be renewed by maintaining a cumulative grade point average of 2.0 or above.

A **Family Discount** of \$250 is awarded to each resident student in a family with two or more members enrolled as full-time residents. Full-time, non-resident students are awarded \$100 for each qualifying student if there are two or more Averett students in the same family. The awards may be renewed each year.

### Federally Sponsored

Students who file the Free Application for Federal Student Aid are automatically considered for Pell Grants, Supplemental Educational Opportunity Grants (SEOG), Federal Teach Grants, the Perkins Loan, and Federal Work Study.

**Federal Pell Grants** provide for grants up to \$5550. The amount of the Pell award is determined by the financial circumstances of the student's family.

**Federal Supplemental Educational Opportunity Grants** are available to students with financial need. These grants are from \$100 to \$4000 annually.

**The Federal TEACH Grant Program** provides up to \$4,000 per year (\$16,000 total for an undergraduate program; \$8,000 total for graduate studies) in grants to full time students who plan to teach full time in high-need subject areas at schools serving students from low-income families. Students attending less than full time will have the grant reduced (three-quarter time students may receive up to \$3,000; half-time students may receive up to \$2,000, and less-than-half time students may receive up to \$1,000). If a student receives any award amount (\$16,000 or \$1,000), he or she will have the same teaching obligation of four years within eight years after graduation. **Please note:** Because total financial aid must not exceed the cost of attendance, receiving a TEACH Grant may reduce the recipient's eligibility for other sources of financial aid.

**Federal Perkins Loans** may be secured for amounts up to \$5,500 annually for students who demonstrate exceptional financial need. A student is obligated to repay the loan with a low interest rate within a ten-year period after graduation.

**The Federal Work-Study Program** provides part-time work, up to twenty hours weekly, for those attending college as regular students. During the summer or other vacation periods, a student may, if funds are available, work full-time under this program. Students enrolled at least half-time are eligible to apply.

**Educational Aids for Dependents of Military Personnel.** Scholarships, grants, and loans are available from the military services for dependents of active-duty, retired, or deceased military personnel. Obtain further information from:

<b>Army</b>	The Adjutant General Department of the Army Washington, D.C. 20315 Attention AGMG-D
<b>Air Force</b>	Director of Air Force Aid Society National Headquarters Washington, D.C. 20333
<b>Navy &amp; Marine Corps</b>	Chief of Naval Personnel Arlington Annex Washington, D.C. 20370
<b>Coast Guard</b>	Commandant U.S. Coast Guard Headquarters Washington, D.C. 20591

**Veterans Administration Benefits** are available to eligible individuals, as Averett University has been approved to offer educational programs to persons entitled to educational benefits. Information about VA benefits at Averett University is available from the Registrar's Office.

### **State Sponsored**

**The Virginia Tuition Assistance Program.** Students who are legal residents of the Commonwealth of Virginia may apply for this program. Awards of \$2800 in 2012-13 are available to all legal residents who apply by the deadline and who take a minimum of 12 semester hours each semester. The application must be completed and returned to the Financial Aid Office at Averett by July 31.

**The Virginia College Scholarship Assistance Program.** Students who are legal residents of the Commonwealth of Virginia and who are at least half-time each semester may be considered for the College Scholarship Assistance Program, which is need-based. Amount: \$400 – 1,000. Eligibility for this program is determined by completing the FAFSA.

**Two-Year College Transfer Grant.** Students who wish to apply for this grant must meet the following qualifications:

- Be a first-time entering freshman no earlier than summer 2007;
- Be a full-time undergraduate in-state student;
- Have completed an Associate's degree at a Virginia two-year public institution with a cumulative GPA of 3.0 or above;
- Have completed the FAFSA and have financial need defined as a federally calculated EFC of \$8,000, or less.

The maximum annual standard award is \$1,000 (\$500 per term). An additional \$1,000 (\$500 per term) is available to students enrolled into a degree program in engineering, mathematics, nursing, teaching, or science.

## **Scholarships and Awards**

The **Margarette M. Aldredge Scholarship** was established and endowed by James H. Aldredge Jr. in memory of his sister and Averett alumna, Margarette M. Aldredge. The scholarship recipient must maintain at least a 2.5 grade point average, demonstrate financial need, show a strong desire to complete an undergraduate degree, and be a good citizen.

The **Alliance One International Endowed Scholarship** was established and endowed by Alliance One International. First preference shall be given to students who are dependents of full-time employees of Alliance One International Incorporated. Second preference shall be given to students who are dependents of other local tobacco industry employees. Third preference shall be given to students who have lived for at least one year in Danville, Pittsylvania County or the surrounding area. The recipient must be a full-time student and remain in good academic standing. The scholarship is renewable if the student maintains a 2.5 GPA for up to 4 years.

The **Alumni Association Legacy Endowed Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett University alumni. This scholarship is awarded to a full-time, undergraduate student enrolled in the traditional, GPS, or IDEAL program. The award will be given to a student who has a family connection defined as Legacy and may be renewable. For purposes of this scholarship, "Legacy" will be defined as a student who has a parent and/or grandparent who graduated from Averett.

The **American National Bank and Trust Company Scholarship** was established by the bank to provide scholarship funds for students who demonstrate financial need. This scholarship is awarded to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student demonstrating financial need, and may be renewable up to four years.

The **Joseph B. Anderson Student Aid Fund** provides scholarships to young women who demonstrate financial need. First preference is given to those who live in the Spring Garden area of Pittsylvania County, Virginia.

The **Paschal Lawrence Anderson and Ellen Hawkins Anderson Scholarship** was endowed by P. L. Anderson Jr. in memory of his parents. The recipient(s) should demonstrate financial need, maintain at least a 2.5 grade point average, and demonstrate traits of good citizenship. First consideration is to be given to qualified students related to Paschal Lawrence and Ellen Hawkins Anderson.

The **Randy Monteith Anderson Fund** was established in memory of Mrs. Anderson, who attended Averett, by her husband and friends. This scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving full-time undergraduate student demonstrating financial need and may be renewable up to four years. Preference is given to students from West Virginia.

The **Agnes H. Athey Scholarship** was established through the Estate of Mary A. Hoffmeister and is awarded to full-time undergraduate music students. The award may be renewable.

The **Stephen C. Ausband Endowed Scholarship** was established in October 2011 and endowed by Jacob E. Frith II. This scholarship is awarded to full time, undergraduate students who have earned a minimum of 30 credit hours at Averett and possess a minimum 3.0 GPA.

The **Averett Theatre Players Scholarship** was established and endowed by interested parties. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student majoring or minoring in Theatre. The award may be renewable up to four years providing the recipient maintains a minimum overall GPA of 2.5.

The **Ella Vaden Aylor Scholarship** was established and endowed by Carrie Tate Aylor and Louise Aylor Montague, both Averett alumnae, in memory of their mother, Ella Vaden Aylor, Averett Class of 1900. This scholarship is awarded to one or more Christian students majoring in music. Preference will be given to a student(s) from Virginia and/or North Carolina. The recipient must demonstrate financial need and skill.

The **Bruce James Barbour Family Scholarship** was endowed by the Barbour family. Preference is given to an applicant who has been active in a church and who demonstrates financial need. The recipient must maintain a grade point average of 2.0 or better.

The **Barksdale Study Abroad Fund** was established and endowed by Mary Morten Barksdale to provide funds for an Averett student to study in a foreign country. The recipient is to be enrolled as a full-time Junior or Senior at Averett with 60 or more academic credits and shall have a cumulative grade point average of 2.5. The study abroad shall be a program for academic credit sponsored directly by Averett or a program of study through which academic credit will be granted by Averett University. Apply through the office of the Vice President for Academic Affairs.

The **Brantley Barr Scholarship Fund** was established by Averett alumna, Mary Lou Martin Barr, '28, in memory of her husband, Brantley F. Barr. This scholarship is awarded to students who have passed the traditional age for college attendance. Preference will be given first to students from the city of Danville, second from the county of Pittsylvania, third from the adjacent cities and counties, fourth from other areas.

The **Walter E. Barrick Jr. Scholarship** was established and endowed by William E. Barrick. This scholarship is to be awarded to a full-time, undergraduate student majoring in aviation/aeronautics and may be renewable up to four years.

**Beazley Scholar** recipients are juniors in the upper 10% of their class who have taken at least 30 hours at Averett and demonstrated leadership qualities and financial need. This scholarship was established at each of the member institutions of the Virginia College Fund to recognize outstanding students. This scholarship was made possible through a grant from the Beazley Foundation Inc. of Portsmouth, Virginia. Recipient(s) must sign an agreement to attend the scholar ceremony held during the award year.

**David Strouse Blount Education Foundation Scholarships** are given to full-time students who are residents of Virginia and who demonstrate financial need. The following minimum grade point averages are required every semester: Freshman, 2.0; Sophomore, 2.5; Junior and Senior 2.75.

The **Thomas and Isabelle Boyd Scholarship** was established and endowed by the estate of Mrs. Lightfoot Boyd Fourqurean, Averett College Class of 1931. Preference will be given to a student graduating from a high school in Halifax County, Virginia, who has demonstrated financial need.

The **Russell C. Brachman Scholarship** was established by Dr. and Mrs. Edward W. Fisher, Mrs. Laura Meder, other members of the Averett Biology Department and friends and family of Dr. Russell Brachman. This scholarship will be awarded to a Junior or Senior majoring in Biology with a minimum GPA of 3.0. Recipients are chosen based on contributions to the Biology Department, overall strong character, fine virtues, and good social standing. This award is merit based and shall be over and above any need-based financial aid the recipient(s) receive.

The **Bradley Family Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett alumnus, H. Hawkins Bradley '48. This scholarship will be awarded to traditional or nontraditional students majoring in business administration who have maintained a grade point average of 2.5 or above and have demonstrated traits of good citizenship and demonstrate financial need.

The **Elizabeth and James Bustard Distinguished Award** was established at Averett under the provisions of a trust created by the will of Elizabeth B. Bustard. This award is to be made at commencement to one or more graduating seniors selected by the faculty and Board of Trustees, who excel in high ideals of living, in spiritual qualities, and in generous service to others, for use in the student's higher education.

The **Patty Saunders Cahill Memorial Scholarship** was established and endowed by W. S. Cahill Sr. This scholarship is awarded to a deserving traditional or non-traditional full-time undergraduate student with demonstrated financial need, demonstrated traits of good citizenship, and a minimum GPA of 2.5.

The **Frank and Janet Campbell Scholarship** was established and endowed by former Averett president, Dr. Frank R. Campbell. The scholarship will be awarded to a deserving student each year from the Roanoke Valley and may be renewable up to four years.

The **Carrington Scholarship** was established and endowed in Mr. Carrington's memory. This scholarship is awarded to deserving, full-time students and may be renewable for up to four years.

The **Alexander Berkeley Carrington, Jr. Scholarship—Honors Program** was established and endowed in Mr. Carrington's memory. This scholarship is to be awarded to deserving full-time undergraduate students to support pre-approved off campus programs such as study abroad as academically appropriate.

The **Ernest L. Carter II Scholarship** was established and endowed by Worth H. Carter Jr. This scholarship is to be awarded to deserving student(s) based on the following criteria: first, to those applicants who are employees of Carter Bank and Trust, formerly known as the following institutions: Blue Ridge Bank, N.A., Central National Bank, Community National Bank, First National Bank (of Rocky Mount, Virginia), First National Exchange Bank, Mountain National Bank, Patrick Henry National Bank, Patriot National Bank, Peoples National Bank, Shenandoah National Bank, or their successors or subsidiaries (hereinafter individually referred to as a "Bank" and collectively as the "Banks"), or Bank Building Corporation, Bank Services of Virginia, Inc., or Mortgage Company of Virginia, Inc., or their successors or subsidiaries (hereinafter individually referred to as a "Company" and collectively as the "Companies"); second, to those applicants who are the natural or legally adopted children of persons who are employees of one of the Banks or Companies; third to those applicants who are natural or legally adopted grandchildren of persons who are employees of one of the Banks or Companies; fourth to applicants who are legal residents of Pittsylvania County or Halifax County, VA, or any cities or towns located therein; finally to applicants who are legal residents of any town, city or county in which any of the Banks then has an office or branch.

The **Galilee Clark Scholarship** was established and endowed by Galilee Clark. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student and may be renewable up to four years.

The **Class of 1941 Scholarship** was established and endowed by members of the Averett College Class of 1941. This scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving, full-time student who demonstrates financial need, maintains a grade point average of 3.0 or better, and who is in good standing both academically and socially. This award may be renewable up to four years.

The **Class of 1948 Scholarship** was established and endowed by members of the Averett College Class of 1948. This scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving, full-time student who demonstrates financial need and who is in good academic standing. This award may be renewable up to four years.

The **Class of 1950 Scholarship** was established and endowed by members of the Averett College Class of 1950. This scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving, full-time student who demonstrates financial need and who is in good academic standing. This award may be renewable up to four years.

The **Class of 1954 Scholarship** was established and endowed by members of the Averett College Class of 1954. This scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student, and may be renewable up to four years.

The **Class of 1955 Scholarship** was established and endowed by members of the Averett College Class of 1955. This scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student, and may be renewable up to four years.

The **Class of 1958 Scholarship** was established and endowed by members of the Averett College Class of 1958. This scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving, full-time undergraduate female student, and may be renewable up to four years.

The **Class of 1960 Scholarship** was established and endowed by members of the Averett College Class of 1960. This scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student, and may be renewable up to four years.

The **Pauline Coll Endowed Scholarship** was established and endowed by Margaret Lanham. Miss Coll was not only an able scholar—she was an excellent teacher and benefactor of various important programs at Averett University. This scholarship is awarded to a full-time, undergraduate commuter student residing in or near Danville who possesses a minimum GPA of 3.0. Preference will be given to the student(s) with the highest GPA. The award may be renewable for up to four years providing the recipient continues to excel academically and maintains a minimum 3.0 GPA. This award is based on scholarly achievement and not financial need.

The **Compton Scholarship** was established by Dr. Elizabeth Compton in 1986. This scholarship benefits students planning to teach grades K-6 and enrolled in liberal studies with teaching licensure. The recipient shall be a junior or senior from Pittsylvania County, Virginia. If such an individual is not available, consideration will be given to a student from the City of Danville. The recipient shall hold and maintain a GPA of 2.5 or above.

The **P.F. Conway Scholarship** was established and endowed by interested parties. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student, and may be renewable up to four years.

The **Grace V. Crenshaw Award** is given to the student with the second highest academic average among the B.A. or B.S. graduates. The award is in honor of Miss Crenshaw who served as mathematics professor at Averett for 40 years, retiring in the spring of 1969. She has been remembered and honored by her students as a great teacher, whose commitment and interest in her students and the college extended far beyond the formal requirements of her work.

The **Daly Promise Award** is an annual award made possible through the generosity of the Philip N. and Frances K. Daly Charitable Lead Unitrust. The scholarship is awarded to Southside residents who are also first-generation college students. Recipients shall demonstrate financial need and demonstrate promise in their academic pursuits during their freshman year and remain in good standing in order to remain eligible.

The **Dan Daniel-MRI Endowed Scholarship** was established in March 2012 through proceeds of the Military Resale Invitational, an annual golf tournament which honors the memory of the late Congressman, Dan Daniel. First preference will be given to a student who is the legally recognized spouse or offspring of a deceased military member of the Global War on Terror and whose death occurred in the military campaigns of Iraq or Afghanistan. Second preference will be given to a student who is the legally recognized spouse or offspring of a deceased military member of the Global War on Terror and whose death occurred in foreign lands other than Iraq or Afghanistan. Third preference will be given to a student who is the legally recognized spouse or offspring of a wounded military member of the Global War on Terror and who was wounded in the military campaigns of Iraq and Afghanistan. Fourth preference will be given to a student who is the legally recognized spouse or offspring of any active duty member of the military or honorably discharged veteran who served in the military campaigns of Iraq or Afghanistan during the Global War on Terror. Fifth preference will be given to a student who is the legally recognized spouse or offspring of any active duty member of the military or honorably discharged veteran. The recipient shall be a deserving, full-time undergraduate traditional or non-traditional student. The award may be renewable for up to three years. Preference will be given to qualified students with financial need. Recipient must maintain at least a 2.5 GPA in order to continue receiving the scholarship.

The **Daniel, Medley and Kirby Scholarship** was established and endowed by the members of the Daniel, Medley and Kirby P.C. law firm. Preference shall be given to traditional or non-traditional students who have demonstrated financial need. The recipient shall have maintained a grade point average of 2.5 or higher and shall have demonstrated traits of good citizenship.

The **Lucille Heydorn Digges Scholarship** was established and endowed by alumna, Lucille H. Digges, '55. This scholarship is awarded to a full-time, female, freshman student who is a music major or music minor. Preference is given to a Virginia resident.

The **Ruth Walton English Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett alumna, Ruth Walton English, '32. The recipient shall maintain at least a 2.5 grade point average, demonstrate good citizenship and have financial need. Provided the student continues to meet the requirements, this award may be renewable up to four years.

The **Mamie Strickland Farmer Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett alumna, Mamie Strickland Farmer, '32. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student, and may be renewable up to four years.

The **Carlo Finocchiaro, '92 Pi Kappa Phi Annual Scholarship** is awarded based on the following criteria: the recipient(s) shall be a current member of the Averett University Chapter of Pi Kappa Phi, shall have remained in good standing with the Chapter and the National Organization for at least two semesters, shall have held or currently hold an Executive Committee office in the Chapter for two semesters, have maintained a minimum overall GPA of 3.0, and remained in good academic and social standing with the University for at least two semesters.

The **Mary C. Fugate Award** for academic excellence goes to the graduating B.A. or B.S. student who has earned the highest academic grade point average on all college and university work undertaken. It is named for the former Vice President for Academic Affairs and interim president of Averett College, Dr. Mary Fugate, who for 45 years served the college and was widely recognized for her commitment to scholarship, to students, and to the principles of Christian higher education.

The **Mary C. Fugate Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett College alumni in memory of former Averett Vice President for Academic Affairs, Mary C. Fugate. This scholarship is awarded to a full-time, undergraduate female student majoring in Education who best demonstrates those ideals exemplary of the life of Mary C. Fugate and may be renewable up to four years. Recommendations from the Education Department faculty should be forwarded to the University Scholarship Committee.

The **Dr. and Mrs. Clifford Gaddy Endowed Scholarship** was established and endowed in honor of Inez Gaddy by her husband Dr. Clifford G. Gaddy. Preference shall be given to a student with demonstrated need graduating from a high school in Pittsylvania County, VA, Danville, VA, or Caswell County, North Carolina. Provided the recipient remains in good social standing and maintains a 2.5 minimum GPA, the award may be renewable for up to four years.

The **Galbraith Family Scholarship** was established and endowed by Paula Galbraith '69, and members of the Galbraith family. This scholarship is awarded to students who are natives of Virginia and demonstrate financial need. Awards may be applied to tuition or housing costs.

The **Roy G. and Joan F. Gignac Endowed Scholarship** was established and endowed by Mr. and Mrs. Roy G. Gignac. Preference will be given to a student graduating from a high school in Pittsylvania County, VA, Danville, VA, or Caswell County, NC, who demonstrates financial need. Preference will be given to a student who attends Sacred Heart Catholic Church of Danville, VA. Provided the recipient remains in good social standing and maintains a 2.5 minimum GPA, the award may be renewable for up to four years.

The **Emily Swain Grousbeck Scholarship**, established and endowed by Mrs. Grousbeck, is awarded to deserving, full-time students who demonstrate financial need and who are in good academic and social standing with the University. This award may be renewable for up to four years.

The **John O. and Annie Newman Gunn Scholarship** was endowed through the generosity of John O. and Annie Newman Gunn. This scholarship is awarded to a full-time, deserving undergraduate student. While the scholarship is not restricted, the donors wish to encourage students for full-time Christian service and give preference to students from Caswell County, NC, and may be renewable for up to four years.

The **Haley-Wood Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett alumna, Josephine E. Wood, '41, in memory of her maternal grandmother, Mrs. Grace Mae Haley. The scholarship is awarded to a female undergraduate student who is a resident of Virginia. The recipient shall have demonstrated academic achievement. A 3.0 GPA is required in any academic program the recipient was enrolled in prior to Averett University.

The **Charles Harris Scholarship** is awarded to a black, undergraduate student majoring in education or business. The recipient shall rank in the top 20% of their graduating class and demonstrate the greatest financial need. The recipient shall live within a 30-mile radius of First State Bank. This award may be renewable.

The **J. Bryant Heard Scholarship** was endowed by Major Olga S. Heard, '33, in memory of her father. The scholarship is awarded to a Virginia resident majoring in mathematics with first preference given to a student from Danville or Lynchburg.

The **Mrs. Bryant Heard Scholarship** was established by her daughter and Averett alumna, Major Olga S. Heard, and endowed through the generosity of the Heard family. This scholarship is awarded to a Virginia resident majoring in English or voice with first preference given to a student from Danville or Lynchburg.

The **Olga Sheppard Heard Scholarship** was established in 1995 by Olga S. Heard, '33, and shall be awarded to a student majoring in history. The recipient shall demonstrate financial need and have maintained a minimum 3.0 GPA.

The **Thelma Farthing East Herndon Scholarship** was established through the Robert H. Herndon III Estate. This scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student majoring in pre-law. This award may be renewable for up to four years.

The **Vesa Hiltunen Scholarship** was established by Vesa Hiltunen in 1986. First preference shall be given to a full-time undergraduate student-athlete—with priority to an international student. The award may be renewable for up to four years provided the recipient maintains a 2.5 GPA or better.

The **Vesa Hiltunen International Student Scholarship** was established by Averett faculty, staff, alumni, and interested parties. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving, full-time undergraduate international student, and may be renewable up to four years.

The **Richard and Louise Hinton Scholarship** was endowed by Averett alumna, Anna Lee Hinton Fetter, '40, in memory of her parents Richard and Louise Hinton. Preference will be given to a worthy, full-time student. Preference will be given to students from the Northern Neck of Virginia and/or from the state of Virginia who demonstrate financial need.

The **Moonja Hong Endowed Scholarship** was established and endowed by Dr. Inja Hong. This scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving, undergraduate, sophomore student demonstrating financial need. Priority is given to students without living parents or to students of a single parent. The scholarship is renewable as long as the student maintains a 3.0 GPA.

The **Hopkins-Bryan Scholarship** is funded annually through the Ira and Bertha Hopkins and Nancy Hopkins Bryan Trust Fund managed and held in perpetuity by the Virginia Baptist Foundation, Inc. The recipient is to be a Virginia Baptist student who was a member of a Virginia Baptist church of the Baptist General Association of Virginia prior to enrolling at Averett.

The **Douglas W. Hosier '83 Memorial Scholarship** was established and endowed by his parents, members of his family, classmates and friends, in memory of Douglas Hosier, Averett College Class of 1983. The recipient will be a full-time student who has demonstrated financial need and good citizenship. Preference will be given to a qualified student who is related to any deceased Averett University alumni or to any international student who meets the criteria.

The **Hudson Scholarship** was endowed by Lester and Jane Hudson and is awarded to a junior or senior. The recipient must maintain a 3.0 grade point average.

The **Bonnie Humphreys Scholarship** was established through a bequest from the Estate of Bonnie W. Humphreys. This scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student and a resident of the city of Danville or Pittsylvania County. This award may be renewable up to four years.

The **Ollie Y. Jennings Memorial Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett alumna, Ollie Y. Jennings, '36. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student, and may be renewable up to four years.

The **Jones Family Endowed Scholarship** was established through the estate of Dr. Charles E. Jones. This scholarship shall be awarded to a deserving, undergraduate student with demonstrated need pursuing an education in the area of religious studies, and showing promise for future service to the field.

**Keesee Scholars** must be United States citizens who are residents of Virginia, North Carolina or South Carolina. Awards are need-based and shall not exceed \$5,000 per student, per year. Students must maintain a cumulative GPA of "C" or higher. First preference is given to students who are Baptist and planning to enter full time Baptist religious work. Second preference is given to other Baptist students. Grants may be awarded to non-Baptist students if there are funds remaining from the annual appropriation.

**Yvonne Kelly Scholars** are full-time juniors and/or seniors with financial need and GPA's of at least 3.5.

The **Lovick H. Kernodle Scholarship** was established by the Lovick H. Kernodle Foundation for a graduate of George Washington High School, Danville, VA, who has demonstrated outstanding scholarship and good citizenship and who has financial need. This award may be renewable up to four years.

The **Howard and Margaret Lee Scholarship** was established by Averett faculty and staff to honor the contributions of Dr. and Mrs. Howard Lee to Averett University. The recipient shall be a full-time, undergraduate student and demonstrate financial need. This award may be renewable up to four years.

The **Robert J. and Irene W. Mann Scholarship Fund** honors the long-standing and sacrificial efforts of Reverend and Mrs. Mann. Preference is given to students from Patrick and Albemarle Counties and the city of Charlottesville, VA. Based on both need and merit, this scholarship is awarded to deserving, full-time undergraduate students, preferably freshmen. This award may be renewable up to four years.

The **Margaret D. and Robert T. Marshall Scholarship** is an annual scholarship awarded to deserving students making satisfactory progress toward a degree and is based on financial need and academic ability.

The **Webster and Elizabeth Marshall Award** is presented to an incoming freshman with first priority given to a full-time graduate from one of Danville's high schools. Second preference is given to an incoming freshman from a Pittsylvania County High School. Providing the recipient maintains at least a 3.0 GPA the award may be renewable for up to four years.

The **MBA Scholarship** was established and endowed by the Averett MBA Cluster-146 and the Estate of Ruth Irene Baker, Averett Class of 1945. This scholarship, for MBA students, will be awarded each year in each of the four regions of the non-traditional programs. Each recipient cannot be receiving other financial assistance including employer tuition reimbursement. Applicants entering the program must have an overall grade point average of 3.5 from undergraduate study. Applicants in the program are to have a grade point

average of 3.5. Previous recipients may reapply, but are not guaranteed a second award. Applications are available at each regional office.

The **Carroll and Ruth McDowell Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett alumna, Louise Hall McDowell, '57, and her husband Charles, in memory of his parents. Preference will be given to a traditional or nontraditional student with demonstrated need. Recipients shall be residents of a rural area in Southside Virginia with preference given to a high school graduate residing in a rural section of Halifax County, VA. Preference shall be given to a student pursuing a degree in Religious Studies or in Education. The scholarship may be renewable up to four years providing that the student remains in good social and academic standing (2.0 GPA or above) and maintains demonstrated need.

The **Louise Hall McDowell, '57 Endowed Scholarship** was established by Averett alumna, Louise Hall McDowell, '57. This scholarship is awarded to a full-time student demonstrating financial need who is a high school graduate from rural Southside Virginia to include the counties of Charlotte, Halifax, and Pittsylvania County with preference given to qualified candidates from Charlotte County. The recipient shall be a traditional or non-traditional student demonstrating financial need and pursuing a degree that would lead to a career working with people to benefit mankind, such as public education, social work, physical therapy, medicine, ministerial or religious studies. This award may be renewable up to four years.

The **Clara Barbour Meadows Scholarship** was established and endowed by Charles S. Barbour, '50. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student demonstrating financial need and may be renewable up to four years.

The **Dorothea Noonan Mellon Scholarship** was established by Mr. Curtis Mellon in memory of Dorothea Noonan Mellon, '94. The recipient shall be a deserving student in the Graduate and Professional Studies Program and shall demonstrate financial need.

The **Evelyn Miller Memorial Scholarship** is an annual scholarship established by current and retired Averett University faculty and staff, family, and friends of Evelyn Miller. Funds are awarded to students majoring in Liberal Studies with PK-6 Teaching Licensure, Music, or any major leading toward Secondary Teaching Licensure with a minimum GPA of 3.0. Recipients shall be chosen based on contributions to the major, overall character, fine virtues and good social standing. This award is need and/or merit-based.

The **Onnie H. and Bertie Milloway Scholarship Fund** was established in memory of Onnie and Bertie Milloway. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student demonstrating financial need and may be renewable up to four years. The recipient must be a resident of Danville or Pittsylvania County, VA, or Caswell County, NC. Applications should be made through the Community Foundation of the Dan River Region.

The **Spencer and Mary Elizabeth Morten Scholarship** was established and endowed by Mary Elizabeth Bassett Morten. Preference is given to traditional or non-traditional students who are employees, spouses or children/grandchildren of employees of Bassett Mirror Company and/or Bassett Furniture Industries, Inc. Second preference is given to students who have lived for at least one year in the geographic area of Northern Henry County and Eastern Patrick County, VA. Applicants must have at least a 2.5 GPA and demonstrate traits of good citizenship.

The **Tony and Reva Myers Scholarship** was endowed by Averett alumnus, Dr. Danny C. Myers, '72, in memory of his parents. This scholarship is awarded to a student from Pittsylvania County, VA, majoring in mathematics or science. Preference shall be given to a traditional or nontraditional student from a home where only one natural parent resides and from whom no financial support is available. The recipient must maintain a 3.2 GPA while in high school and/or college.

The **Neil Andrew Nesterak Scholarship** was established and endowed by his parents, members of his family, Averett College classmates and friends, in memory of Neil Andrew Nesterak, Averett Class of 1983. This scholarship is to be awarded to a full-time, undergraduate student who demonstrates an interest and enjoyment working with young people in sports and outdoor activities. The recipient must maintain a grade point average of 2.5 or above and have demonstrated financial need. This award may be renewable for up to four years.

The **Mildred Fulton Owen Scholarship** was endowed by her son, Claude S. Owen, Jr., and daughter-in-law, Lamar Lewis Owen, '65. This scholarship is awarded to one or more female residents of Pittsylvania County who are full-time students at Averett.

The **Louise Paulsen Scholarship** is awarded to a full-time undergraduate music student and may be renewable.

The **Peoples Mutual Telephone Company Scholarship** was established and endowed by the Board of Directors of Peoples Mutual Telephone Company of Gretna, VA. Preference is given to students who are employees, spouses or children/grandchildren of employees of Peoples Mutual Telephone Company. Second preference is given to traditional or non-traditional students who have lived for at least one year in the geographic area served by the Peoples Mutual Telephone Company. The recipient must maintain at least a 2.5 grade point average and demonstrate traits of good citizenship.

The **Pfau Family Scholarship** was established by Averett's Board of Trustees and interested parties and is awarded to deserving full-time undergraduate students. This award may be renewable provided the student remains in good academic standing.

The **Pittsylvania Baptist Association Endowed Scholarship** is awarded to recipients demonstrating financial need and participating as an intern in the In-Service Guidance program of the Department of Religion. Recipients must also be in good academic and social standing with the college.

The **Rita S. Porterfield Music Award** is an annual award given to an outstanding music major who is preferably active in the Averett Singers and Averett Handbell Choir. Preference is given to a graduating senior. The student will possess strong leadership qualities and should be active with a church music program in some manner. In addition to a cash award, the recipient's name will appear on a plaque which will be placed in the Grousbeck Music Center.

The **Prillaman-Davis Endowed Scholarship** was established and endowed by alumna and former Averett staff member, Mary Jo Davis, '55. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student, and may be renewable up to four years.

The **Alfred Hugo Radke and Gerda Else Radke Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett alumnus, Dr. Danny Myers, '72, and his wife Ingrid, in honor of Mrs. Myers' parents, Alfred and Gerda Radke. As Mr. and Mrs. Radke immigrated to the United States from Germany in 1950, this scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving, full-time, undergraduate, international student or a first generation American student whose intent is to graduate from Averett University and demonstrates financial need. This award may be renewable for up to four years.

The **Charlotte Read Endowed Scholarship** was established by friends of Charlotte Read. Recipients shall be a full-time, rising sophomore majoring in business and possessing a 2.5 GPA or greater. Providing the recipient continues to meet the criteria, this award may be renewable for two additional years.

The **Herman E. Bond and Cora H. Bond Reid Memorial Scholarship** was established and endowed by the Estate of Cora H. Bond Reid, '82. This scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student who is at least 30 years of age or older and may be renewable up to four years.

The **David S. Reynolds Theatre Arts Scholarship** was established and endowed by his father and his sister, Claude D. Reynolds and Claudette Reynolds Keeter. This scholarship will be awarded annually to a student majoring in theatre. Awards will be given on the basis of a student audition, academic performance (a minimum 3.0 grade point average) and demonstrated traits of good citizenship.

The **Katherine Payne Rigney '42 Scholarship** is an annual scholarship awarded to a resident of Virginia majoring in Education. Preference is given to a transfer student that has completed a community college program. The recipient must have a 3.0 GPA prior to enrolling at Averett.

The **Rippe Scholarship** was established and endowed by A. Benjamin Rippe in honor of Karen Rippe Steinreich, Sonia Lubin Rippe, E. Louis Rippe and David H. Gladstone. First preference shall be given to a full-time, freshman student demonstrating financial need, from the city of Danville, Pittsylvania, Henry, or Halifax Counties, VA, or Caswell or Rockingham Counties, NC. Second preference shall be given to a full-time, freshman student demonstrating financial need at the discretion of the Director of Student Financial Services.

The **O. Lewis Roach Jr. Scholarship** was established and endowed by Alyce Amory Roach in memory of her husband, Averett College trustee emeritus, O. Lewis Roach, Jr. The recipient must major in business administration. A 3.0 GPA or its equivalent is required in any academic program that the recipient completed or was enrolled in prior to Averett University. Preference will be given to a resident of Virginia.

The **Othelia and William Shelhorse Scholarship** was established and endowed by Othelia Shelhorse Anderson. This scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student who is a resident of Danville or Pittsylvania County. Selection is based on a combination of individual merit and financial need and may be renewable up to four years.

The **George and Leah Shields Endowed Scholarship** was established and endowed by Dr. and Mrs. George H. Shields Jr. The scholarship is awarded to a student graduating from Dan River High School and is non-renewable. Not based on academic merit, this scholarship is awarded to students of average or slightly above average academic ability. Preference will be given to students with demonstrated financial need.

The **Florrie Storey Shultz Endowed Scholarship** was established and endowed by her nephew Robert H. Shultz Jr., and the estate of Florrie Storey Shultz, Averett College Class of 1928. The recipient may be a traditional or non-traditional student, majoring in the field of business, who demonstrates financial need, and must have at least a 3.0 GPA and demonstrate traits of good citizenship. This award is available to incoming freshmen provided they have met the GPA requirements during their senior year of high school.

The **Elizabeth R. Smith/Tom Wilson Theatre Arts Scholarship** was established by Averett's graduates of the Theatre Arts Department and other interested parties. This scholarship is to be awarded to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student. The recipient shall have maintained an overall grade point average of 2.0 and a 3.0 in their major area of study. This award may be renewable for up to four years. The selection of the recipient(s) shall be made by the Theatre Arts Department in conjunction with the University's Scholarship Committee.

The **Louise G. Snavelly Scholarship** was established and endowed by Louise Goodwin Snavelly, Averett Class of 1941, in memory of her parents, Nicie B. and John S. Snavelly. Preference shall be given to traditional or non-traditional students who have demonstrated need and who reside in the area of Virginia to include, beginning on the east, Giles, Montgomery, Floyd and Carroll Counties and to include all other counties west of these to the western end of the Commonwealth of Virginia. Within this area, preference shall be given to females from Smyth, Washington and Wythe Counties in the order as listed. The recipient shall have maintained at least a grade point average of 2.5 or above and shall demonstrate traits of good citizenship. May be renewable up to four years.

The **Bessie Myers Suddarth Scholarship** was established and endowed by the members of the Myers family in memory of Averett alumna, Bessie Myers Suddarth. The recipient shall maintain a minimum 2.5 GPA and demonstrate traits of good citizenship and financial need. First consideration is given to qualified students from Danville or Pittsylvania County.

The **Wycliffe Swain Scholarship** was established and endowed by his sister, Emily Swain Grousbeck. Selection of the student is made in conjunction with the faculty of the Music Department and the University's Scholarship Committee. This scholarship is awarded to one or more students majoring in music that demonstrate the greatest financial need and/or at the discretion of the faculty of the Music Department.

The **Bernard C. and Barbara S. Swann Scholarship**, endowed by Bernard and Barbara Swann, is awarded to students based on the following: first choice shall be a Christian student preparing for a church-related vocation recommended by his/her church; second choice shall be a Virginia Baptist student recommended by his/her church; third choice shall be a Christian student in good standing with Averett University recommended by his/her church.

The **Dewey W. Swicegood Scholarship** was established through a bequest of Dewey W. Swicegood and endowed by Mrs. Dewey W. Swicegood in memory of her husband. Preference is given to a female, full-time undergraduate student from Danville or Pittsylvania County and may be renewable for up to four years.

The **Homer "T" Thomasson Scholarship** was established by the Homer "T" Thomasson Fund Directors from contributions received from friends and colleagues in memory of Homer "T" Thomasson. The recipient must be preparing for a career in the field of communications.

The **Dr. Luther Lee Vann and Ida Rochester Chaney Vann Endowed Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett alumna, Carolyn Vann Irvin, '24, to honor Dr. Vann, former Averett Trustee, and Ida Vann, Class of 1889. The scholarship is awarded annually to a junior and a senior from the City of Danville or Pittsylvania County. Recipients shall maintain a minimum GPA of 3.2 and demonstrate financial need, traits of good citizenship and promise. Providing the junior recipient continues to meet the requirements, he/she will receive the award in their senior year as well.

The **Vinson Family Fund Scholarship** was established and endowed by Dr. and Mrs. Richard G. Vinson. Recipients must be enrolled in a division of the Arts & Sciences. Preference is given to a person in need who exhibits strong character and fine virtues. Provided the recipient remains in good academic standing with Averett University (minimum GPA of 2.8), social standing, and maintains demonstrated need, the award may be renewable for up to four years.

The **Virginia Bank and Trust Company Scholarship** was established by The Virginia Bank and Trust Company. This award is available to a full-time, rising senior student who lives within 30 miles of the bank's main office in Danville. Applicants must be majors in either Business Administration: Management Science, Business Administration: Marketing, or Business Administration: Accounting. The recipient shall possess a GPA of at least 2.75, demonstrate financial need, and have a record of good citizenship.

The **Virginia Collegium Scholar Award** recognizes outstanding academic performance of students enrolled in the Averett Honors Program. This fund was made possible through gifts to the Virginia College Fund of which Averett University is a member institution.

The **Virginia License Plate Scholarship** is an annual award made possible through the sale of Averett University license plates in Virginia. Recipients shall be full-time students, maintain a cumulative GPA of at least 2.5, be bona fide residents of Virginia, and have a zero EFC as determined by completion of the FAFSA (have financial need). This scholarship is not automatically renewable.

The **Dr. Bernice Heard Waddell Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett alumna, Major Olga S. Heard, in memory of her sister, Dr. Bernice Heard Waddell who served as a professor and as acting President of Stratford College. For twelve years she served as professor of foreign languages at Averett. This scholarship is awarded to an upperclassman who has demonstrated interest and ability in the study of French and/or Spanish and who desires to pursue the study of French and/or Spanish beyond the intermediate level. The Department of Modern Languages Faculty and the University's Scholarship Committee make the selection of the student.

The **Nancy Frazer Wakeman, '31, Scholarship** was established and endowed by her husband, Truman J. Wakeman. This scholarship is awarded to a full-time undergraduate student maintaining a 2.5 GPA, demonstrating traits of good citizenship, and financial need. This award may be renewable up to four years.

The **Grace W. Garrett and Harry B. Waller Memorial Scholarship** was established and endowed through the Harry B. Waller Estate. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving, full-time undergraduate student, demonstrating financial need and may be renewable up to four years.

The **Warren and Mary Lewis Weddle Scholarship** was established in November 2007 through the generosity of the Mary Lewis Weddle Estate. The scholarship is awarded to full-time, undergraduate students and may be renewable for up to four years providing the student remains in good academic standing and maintains a minimum GPA of 2.5.

The **Lettie Pate Whitehead Foundation** provides scholarships for Christian female residents of Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Tennessee, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, and Louisiana who are studying medical technology, special education, or wellness/sports medicine. The student must demonstrate financial need.

The **Anna Bowles Ferrell Willeford Scholarship** was established through the Estate of Anna Willeford. The recipient shall be a full-time student demonstrating financial need. The award may be renewable for up to four years provided the student maintains a minimum 2.5 GPA and remains in good academic standing.

The **Dot R. Williamson Scholarship** was established and endowed by The Williamson Family. This scholarship is awarded to a student majoring in music. The selection of the recipient will be determined by audition and will be based on demonstrated skill and financial need. The selection of the student shall be made by the Music Department faculty in conjunction with the University's Scholarship Committee.

The **Lawrence G. "Lefty" Wilson Memorial Scholarship** was established and endowed by family and friends, in memory of Lawrence G. "Lefty" Wilson. Preference will be given to a graduate of George Washington High School in Danville, VA. If a student is not available from GWHS, preference will be given to a student from Southside VA. The recipient will have demonstrated traits of good citizenship, financial need, and sportsmanship. This award may be renewable up to four years providing the recipient maintains a GPA of at least 2.5.

The **Louise Rowlett Wingo Scholarship** was established by Mrs. Sara Gregory and Mrs. Gene Moore in memory of their aunt, Louise Rowlett Wingo. The recipient must be preparing to teach mathematics, demonstrate financial need, and must teach one year for each year he/she receives the scholarship.

The **Womack Scholars Program** is an annual award made possible through the generosity of the Womack Foundation. Recipients must demonstrate financial need and possess a minimum GPA of 2.5. Students are selected from Danville, Pittsylvania County and Caswell County, NC, and will represent regional diversity, educational capacity, and level of need.

The **Virginia Elizabeth Davis Woody, '73 Scholarship** was established and endowed in August 2007 to honor the memory of Virginia Elizabeth Davis Woody, '73. This scholarship is awarded to students enrolled in Liberal Studies with Teaching Licensure and planning to teach in grades K-6 upon graduation. Recipients must maintain a 2.5 minimum GPA. Preference is given to juniors or seniors from Henry County, VA.

The **Anne Worthington Scholarship** was endowed by Dr. Anne Worthington, '74, and is awarded to one or more non-traditional junior or senior students majoring in the humanities or in science. A grade point average of 3.0 or better and demonstrated financial need is required.

The **Garland and Harriet Wyatt Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett alumni Garland and Harriet B. Wyatt. This scholarship is awarded to student(s) majoring in the field of business.

## **Educational Loans**

**Federal Stafford Student Loans** (formerly Guaranteed Student Loans) are made available to any college student by private lending agencies or public agencies, depending on the state. Students should apply to their hometown bank. The federal government will pay the interest while they are attending Averett. Repayment of the principal and the interest begins when the student has ceased his course of study. A student must establish eligibility or ineligibility for the Pell Grant by completing the Free Application for Federal Student Aid before the guaranteed student loan can be processed.

## **Other Loans**

**Parents Loan to Undergraduate Students (PLUS).** This loan is made to the parents of undergraduate students. The loan provides additional funds for educational expenses and is made by a lender such as a bank, credit union, or savings and loan association.

---

# THE PEOPLE OF AVERETT UNIVERSITY

---

## Board of Trustees

### Officers

Dr. Calvin R. Snowden.....	Chairperson
L. Samuel Saunders .....	First Vice-Chairperson
Reverend Dr. Daniel Carlton.....	Second Vice-Chairperson
Bobbye Raye Womack.....	Secretary

### Board Members

The Honorable Rossie D. Alston, Jr., '79.....	Manassas, Virginia
John S. Barr, Esq., .....	Richmond, Virginia
Kirk Bidgood.....	Danville, Virginia
Irving M. Blank.....	Richmond, Virginia
Dr. Joseph G. Burke.....	Chesapeake, Virginia
The Rev. Dr. Daniel Carlton, '90.....	Culpeper, Virginia
Timothy S. Carter, '94.....	Houston, Texas
Steven B. Daniels, Sr.....	Danville, Virginia
William J. Gentry, Jr.....	Danville, Virginia
Virginia W. Hamlet.....	Bassett, Virginia
Wanda B. Jeffress, '81, '92.....	South Boston, Virginia
Lisa D. Johnson.....	Tarpon Springs, Florida
Michael E. Keck.....	Richmond, Virginia
Margaret G. Lewis, '96.....	Tappahannock, Virginia
Michael D. Luter, '03.....	Zuni, Virginia
Ron Palmer, '00.....	Danville, Virginia
Mary M.G. Riddle.....	Atlanta, Georgia
Richard Roccesano, '81.....	Spring Lake, New Jersey
L. Samuel Saunders.....	Danville, Virginia
Dr. Calvin R. Snowden, '94.....	Washington, D.C.
Christopher E. West, '12.....	Arlington, Virginia
L. Hampton Wilkins, '73, '87.....	Danville, Virginia
Kris Willard.....	Penhook, Virginia
Dr. Annie P. Wimbish, '81.....	Vernon Hill, Virginia
Bobbye Raye Womack, '79.....	Danville, Virginia
Todd McGregor Yeatts.....	Alexandria, Virginia

### Faculty

Teresa Beach, B.S., M.S. Assistant Professor and BSN Coordinator Diploma in Professional Nursing, The Memorial Hospital School of Nursing, B.S. in Nursing, Averett College, M.S. in Nursing, University of Virginia	Nurse Education
Fred Bolton, B.A., M.P.A., M.S.S., Ph.D. Associate Professor B.A. American University, M.P.A., George Mason University, M.S.S., U.S. Army War College, Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University	Business

Richard S. Breen, B.A., M.F.A.  
 Professor Theatre  
 B.A., Averett College; M.F.A., Western Illinois University.

Aimee Brenner, B.A., M.A., M.S., Ph.D. Education  
 Assistant Professor  
 B.A., James Madison University, M.S., Radford University, M.A., Ph.D., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University

Adreinne Brune, B.S., M.A., Ph.D. Sociology  
 Assistant Professor  
 B.S. Central Michigan University, M.A., University of Oklahoma, Graduate Certificate University of Oklahoma, Ph.D. University of Oklahoma

**Meaghan Byrne, B.S., M.B.A. Business**  
 Instructor  
 B.S., Averett University, M.B.A., Averett University

Lyle E. Cady, Jr., B.A., M.S., M.B.A., D.B.A. Business Administration  
 Associate Professor  
 B.A., Rutgers State University; M.S., Seton Hall University; M.B.A., New York University; D.B.A., Nova Southeastern University.

James S. Caldwell, B.S., Ph.D. Biological and Physical Sciences  
 Professor  
 B.S., University of Texas at Austin; Ph.D., Wake Forest University, Bowman Gray School of Medicine Post-doctoral Study: Harvard Medical School.

Andrew McNeill Canady, B.A., M.A., Ph.D. History  
 Assistant Professor  
 B.A., Wake Forest University; M.A., Ph.D., Rice University.

Barbara A. Clark, B.A., M.A., Ph.D. Spanish  
 Professor  
 B.A., College of St. Elizabeth; M.A., State University of New York at Binghamton University; Ph.D., University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill.

Catherine O. Clark, B.A., M.A., Ph.D. English and French  
 Assistant Professor  
 Director of Study Abroad  
 B.A., Salem College; M.A., Ph.D., University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill.

Nancy Dameron, R.N., B.S.N., M.S.N. Nurse Education  
 Assistant Professor  
 R.N., Danville Regional Medical Center, B.S.N., Virginia Commonwealth University, M.S.N., Old Dominion University

Stephen Davidson, B.S., M.S. Mathematics  
 Instructor  
 B.S. Bluefield College, M.S. Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University

Elaine L. Day, B.A., M.S.  
 Director of Library, Associate Professor  
 B.A., Syracuse University; M.S.L.S., University of North Carolina.

Sue Davis, B.S., M.E.D., Ph.D. Education  
Assistant Professor  
B.S., Averett University, M.E.D., Averett University, Ph.D., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University

Deborah M. DeMarey, B.S., M.B.A., B.S., Ph.D. Biological and Physical Sciences  
Associate Professor  
B.S., University of Maine-Farmington; M.B.A., Western New England College; B.S., Westfield State College;  
Ph.D., University of Nebraska-Lincoln.

Hank Dempsey, B.M., M.M. Aeronautics  
Assistant Professor  
B.M., M.M., Ouachita Baptist College.

Zana Kepuska Devlin, B.S., M.S. Biological and Physical Sciences  
Instructor  
B.S., Averett University; M.S., Duke University.

Mary Lou Dunn, R.N., B.S.N., M.S.N. Nurse Education  
Assistant Professor  
R.N., Memorial Hospital School of Nursing, B.S.N., Virginia Commonwealth University, M.S.N., University of Virginia

Donald Travis Ethington, B.A., M.S., Ph.D. Mathematics  
Professor  
B.A., Centre College of Kentucky; M.S., Mississippi State University; Ph.D.; University of Georgia.

Richard M. Ferguson, Jr., B.S., M.Ed., Ph.D. Physical Education, Wellness & Sport Science  
Professor  
B.S., James Madison University; M.Ed., Ph.D., University of Virginia.

Jackie W. Finney, B.A., M.F.A. Theatre  
Professor  
B.A., Averett College; M.F.A., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Antoinette M. Gazda, B.A., M.A. English  
Assistant Professor  
B.A., Averett University; M.A., University of North Carolina Wilmington.

Pamela Giles, B.S.N., M.S., Ph.D. Nursing Education  
Dean, Associate Professor  
B.S.N., Marion College, M.S., Indiana Wesleyan University, Ph.D. Walden University

John M. Guarino, B.S., A.M., M.B.A., Ph.D. Business Administration  
Associate Professor  
B.S., State College at Bridgewater; A.M. Dartmouth College; M.B.A., University of Connecticut; Ph.D., Syracuse University.

David Hanbury, B.S., M.A., Ph.D. Psychology  
Assistant Professor  
B.S., University of Southern Mississippi, M.A., University of Southern Mississippi, Ph.D., University of Southern Mississippi

Kevin M. Harden, A.A., B.A., M.L.S.  
 Social Sciences/Electronic Resources Librarian, Associate Professor  
 A.A., Louisburg College; B.A., Elon College; M.L.S., North Carolina Central University.

Laura L. Hartman, A.A., B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
 Professor Sociology/Criminal Justice  
 A.A., Cuyahoga Community College; B.A., Arizona State University; M.A., Ph.D., University of Texas at Austin.

Ralph K. Hawkins, B.A., M.A., D.Min., Ph.D.  
 Associate Professor Religion  
 B.A., M.A., David Lipscomb University; D.Min., Sewanee: University of the South; Ph.D., Andrews University.

Jack I. Hayes, Jr., B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
 Professor History  
 B.A., Hampden-Sydney College; M.A., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University; Ph.D., University of South Carolina.

Virginia Henderson, A.A.S., B.S., M.Ed.  
 Assistant Professor Equestrian Studies  
 A.A.S., Ohio State University; B.S., Averett University; M.Ed., Lynchburg College.

David E. Hoffman, A.B., M.A., Ed.D.  
 Professor English and Journalism  
 B.A., M.A., Marshall University; Ed.D., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Susan L. Huckstep, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
 Associate Professor Communications/Journalism  
 B.A., Averett College; M.A., University of North Carolina at Greensboro; Ph.D., Regent University.

Jennifer Hughes, B.S., M.A., Ph.D.  
 Assistant Professor English  
 B.S., Cornell University; M.A., University of Virginia, Ph.D. Emory University

Michael Jernigan, B.A., M.I.S., Ph.D.  
 Associate Professor Business Administration  
 B.A., Old Dominion University; M.I.S., Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University.

Diane P. Kendrick, B.S., M.Ed., M.F.A.  
 Professor Art  
 B.S., East Carolina University; M.Ed., M.F.A., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Simona Kragh, B.A., M.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
 Associate Professor History and Political Science  
 B.A., Università Cattolica del Sacro Cuore; M.A., M.A., Marquette University; Ph.D., University of South Carolina.

Barbara A. Kushubar, B.S., M.S.S.  
 Associate Professor Physical Education, Wellness & Sport Science  
 B.S., Averett University; M.S.S. United States Sports Academy.

Chung Kwon, B.A., M.B.A., M.S., Ph.D.  
 Assistant Professor Business Administration  
 B.A., Yonsei University, Seoul Korea; M.B.A., Yonsei University, Seoul Korea; M.S., Florida Technology Institute; Ph.D, Virginia Commonwealth University.

Steven R. Lemery, B.A., M.S.  
Associate Professor  
B.A., Southern Illinois University; M.S.; University of Arizona. Mathematics and Computer Science

Anne Lewis, B.M., M.M., D.M.A.  
Professor  
B.M., M.M., Baylor University; D.M.A., University of North Carolina at Greensboro. Music

Melanie Lewis, B.S., M.S.  
Assistant Professor  
B.S., Radford University; M.S., High Point College. Physical Education Wellness Sport Science

Hsiu-Chen Liu, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Associate Professor  
B.A., Fu-Jen Catholic University, Taiwan; M.A., University of New Orleans; Ph.D., University of Idaho. Physical Education, Wellness & Sport Science

Robert C. Marsh, B.S., M.F.A.  
Professor  
B.S., Florence State University; M.F.A., University of Mississippi. Art

Laura Meder, B.S., M.Sc.  
Associate Professor  
B.S., Averett University; M.Sc., University of London. Biological and Physical Sciences

Mark Muneal, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Assistant Professor  
B.A. Morehouse College, M.A., Emory University, Ph.D. Emory University English

Gina Nichols, B.S., Ph.D.  
Assistant Professor  
B.S., McMurry University, Ph.D., Wake Forest University School of Medicine Biological Sciences

Jennifer Nunn, R.N., B.S.N., M.S.  
Instructor/Simulation Lab Coordinator  
R.N., Danville Regional Medical Center, B.S.N. Old Dominion University, M.S. in Nursing, Jacksonville University Nurse Education

Karen C. Oaks, R.N., B.S.N., M.S.N.  
Assistant Professor  
R.N., Danville Regional Medical Center; B.S.N., M.S.N., Old Dominion University. Nurse Education

Alice M. Obenchain-Leeson, B.B.A., M.B.A., D.B.A.  
Professor  
B.B.A., Roanoke College; M.B.A., Averett College; D.B.A., Nova Southeastern University. Business Administration

George Odongo, B.S., M.Ed., Ed.D.  
Assistant Professor  
B.S., The University of Nairobi, M.Ed., Wichita State University, Ed.D., Texas Tech University Education

Susan E. Osborne, B.S., M.A., M.O.R.  
Associate Professor  
B.S., Averett College; M.A., Wake Forest University; M.O.R., North Carolina State University. Mathematics

Janet Phillips, B.M., M.M., D.M.A. Music  
Assistant Professor  
B.M. Florida State University, M.M. University of NC at Greensboro, D.M.A. University of NC at Greensboro

Sarah Pressley, B.S., M.S. Nurse Education  
Assistant Professor and Clinical and Program Assessment Coordinator  
Diploma in Professional Nursing, The Memorial Hospital School of Nursing, B.S. in Nursing, Averett College,  
M.S. in Nursing, University of North Carolina at Greensboro

Pamela B. Riedel, B.S., M.Ed., Ed.S., Ed.D. Education  
Professor  
B.S., M.Ed., Averett College; Ed.S., Ed.D., The College of William and Mary.

Jennifer S. Robinson, B.A., M.L.S.  
Technical Services Librarian, Assistant Professor  
B.A., Averett College; M.L.S., The University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

David I. Rosenberg, B.A., M.S., Ph.D. Psychology  
Professor  
B.A., University of Virginia; M.S., Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University.

Nancy Ryan, B.B.A., M.B.A., Ph.D. Business Administration  
Associate Professor  
B.B.A, M.B.A., Ph.D., Texas Tech University.

Sergey V. Samoilenko, B.S., M.S., Ph.D. Computer Science  
Associate Professor  
B.S., Institute of Soviet Trade Technology, M.S., Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University

Stephanie Smith, B.S., M.Sc. Biological Sciences  
Instructor  
B.S., Averett University, M.Sc., University of Dundee

Krisztina Spong, M.S., Ph.D. Physical Sciences  
Assistant Professor  
M.S., Lajos Kossuth University, Ph.D., Miami University

Phillip R. Sturm, B.S., M.B.A., Ph.D. Business Administration  
Professor  
B.S., M.B.A., Murray State University; Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University.

Chin-Chyuan Tai, B.A., M.A., Ph.D. Economics  
Professor  
B.A., M.A., National Taiwan University; M.A.; Ph.D., University of Cincinnati.

Gary A. Tucker, B.S., M.A., Ph.D. Mathematics and Computer Science  
Associate Professor  
B.S., Averett College; M.A., Ph.D., Duke University; Graduate Study, Nova Southeastern University.

Brian S. Turner, B.S., M.T., C.P.A. Business Administration  
Associate Professor  
B.S., Averett College; M.T., Old Dominion University; C.P.A. Virginia.

Marvin Jimmy Turner, A.S., B.S., M.S., M.Div., Ph.D.  
Associate Professor Physical Sciences  
A.S., Danville Community College; B.S., Averett University; M.S., Wake Forest University; M.Div., Ph.D.,  
Biblical Life College and Seminary.

James M. Verdini, B.A., M.L.S., M.A.  
Humanities/Access Services Librarian, Associate Professor  
B.M., Western Connecticut State University; M.L.S., Southern Connecticut State University; M.A., Yale  
University.

Martha Wall-Whitfield, B.F.A., M.Ed., Ph.D. Education  
Assistant Professor  
B.F.A., M.Ed., Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University

Patrick Wasley, B.A., M.A., M.S., Ph.D.  
Assistant Professor  
B.A., West Chester University; M.A., Bowling Green State University; M.S., The University of Tennessee,  
Knoxville; Ph.D., West Chester University.

Jeffrey S. Woo, B.A., M.B.A., D.B.A.  
Professor Business Administration  
B.A., Mary Washington College; M.B.A., Averett College; D.B.A., Nova Southeastern University.

Steven D. Wray, B.Ed., M.Ed., J.D., Ph.D.  
Professor Sociology/Criminal Justice  
B.Ed., M.Ed., Ph.D., University of Florida; J.D., Washington and Lee University; Graduate Study, Harvard  
University; New York University, Post Graduate School of Medicine; University of Louisville, Southern Police  
Institute.

Peggy C. Wright, B.S., M.S., D.B.A.  
Professor Business Administration  
B.S., Averett College; M.S., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University; D.B.A., Nova Southeastern  
University.

Charles Wuest, B.A., M.F.A., Ph.D. English  
Assistant Professor  
B.A., University of Houston, M.F.A., University of Florida, Ph.D., Southern Methodist University

## **Faculty Emeriti**

Stephen C. Ausband, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Professor, English 1970-2013

Rebecca L. Clark, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Professor, Sociology 1999 -2015

M. Elizabeth Compton, B.S., M.Ed., Ph.D.  
Professor, Education 1968-1999

J. Thomson Foster, B.S.Ed., M.Ed., Ph.D.  
Professor, Physical Sciences and Wellness/Sport Science 1988-2008

Clara G. Fountain, B.A., M.S.L.S.  
Associate Professor, Humanities Librarian, Archivist, 1989-2007

Ann D. Garbett, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Professor, English 1978-2010

Juanita G. Grant, B.S., B.S. in L.S., M.L.A.  
Professor, Director of Library 1967-1995

Richard M. Inlow, B.S., M.A., D.Arts  
Associate Professor, Mathematics 1967-1995

Mary Evelyn Jefferson, B.A., M.A., M.S.L.S.  
Associate Professor, Reference Librarian 1976-1987

John C. H. Laughlin, B.A., M. Div., Ph.D.  
Professor, Religion 1979-2011

Betty J. Steele, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Professor, English 1981-2002

## **Administrators and Staff**

### **PRESIDENT'S OFFICE**

Tiffany M. Franks, B.A., M.Ed, EdD.  
President  
Karen W. Ward  
Administrative Assistant to the President  
Charles S. Harris, B.S.  
Executive Vice President

### **Auxiliary Services**

Michael Moroni, A.A.S.  
General Manager Bon Appetit Management Company  
Dana D. Nelson, A.A.S.  
Director of Operations, Averett University Bookstore

### **Athletics**

Meg Stevens, B.S., M.S.  
Director of Intercollegiate Athletics  
Mavis Brantley-Lloyd  
Administrative Assistant to the Athletic Director and  
Administrative Assistant to the Department of Physical Education, Wellness and Sport Science  
Cleive Adams, B.S.  
Head Football Coach  
Sarah Chapman, B.S.  
Head Women's Soccer Coach  
David Doino, B.S.  
Men's Basketball Coach  
C.Edward Fulton, B.S.  
Baseball Coach  
Keith Goodaker, B.B.A.

Head Men's Golf Coach  
Elizabeth Hickey, B.S., M.S.  
Women's Basketball Coach  
Senior Woman administrator  
Bren LaFlamme Taylor, B.S.  
Softball Coach  
Angela McNeely, M.S., A.T.C.  
Assistant Athletic Trainer  
Danny Miller, B.S., M.B.A.  
Associate Athletic Director  
Women's Volleyball Coach  
Bert Poole, B.S.  
Men's and Women's Tennis Coach  
Thomas Underwood, M.B.A., L.A.T., A.T.C.  
Head Athletic Trainer  
Philip Wilson, B.S., M.B.A.  
Men's Soccer Coach

## **ACADEMICS**

Timothy Fulop, B.A., M.Div., M.A., Ph.D.  
Vice President for Academic Affairs and Student Success  
Mary Sullivan B.A.  
Administrative Assistant to the Vice President for Academic Affairs

### **Academic Administrative Assistants**

Wanda Haynes  
**Administrative Assistant** to the Faculty  
Debbie Pike  
Administrative Assistant to the School of Nursing  
Gloria Robertson  
Secretary to the Faculty  
Brenda Wilcox, A.A.  
Aviation Office Manager

### **Administrative Faculty**

Alice M. Obenchain-Leeson, B.B.A., M.B.A., D.B.A.  
Professor of Business Administration,  
Dean of Academics  
Sue Davis, B.S., M.E.D., Ph.D.  
Director of Graduate Education Program  
Pamela Giles, B.S.N., M.S., Ph.D.  
Dean, School of Nursing, Associate Professor  
Peggy C. Wright, B.S., M.S., D.B.A.  
Professor, Chair, Business Administration and Graduate Business Programs

### **Center for Community Engagement and Career Competitiveness**

Alexis I. Ehrhardt, B.A., M.Ed.  
Executive Director

Brigid Belko, B.S., M.P.A.  
Director of Experiential Learning  
Rachel Covington, B.A.  
Assistant Director of Community Engagement  
Angie McAdams, B.S., M.S.  
Director of Career Development  
Tia Yancey, A.A.S.  
Administrative Assistant

### **Equestrian Center**

Virginia Henderson, A.A.S., B.S., M.Ed.  
Assistant Professor, Equestrian Studies  
Valerie Haar, B.S., M.B.A.  
Equestrian Associate  
Carolyn Morris, B.A.  
Equestrian Associate

### **Library**

Elaine L. Day, B.A., M.S.L.S.  
Director of Library, Associate Professor  
Peggy Adkins, A.A.  
Library Assistant  
Kevin M. Harden, A.A., B.A., M.L.S.  
Social Sciences/Electronic Resources Librarian, Associate Professor  
Linda Lemery, B.S., M.B.A., M.Ed.  
Library Circulation Coordinator  
Jennifer Robinson, B.A., M.L.S.  
Technical Services Librarian, Assistant Professor  
Deborah Touchstone, B.B.A., M.B.A.  
Library Administrative Associate  
James M. Verdini, B.A., M.L.S., M.A.  
Humanities/Access Services Librarian; Associate Professor  
Patrick Wasley, B.A., M.A., M.S., Ph.D.  
Digital Resources Librarian and Archivist, Assistant Professor of English

### **Office of Student Success**

Teresa Lawrence M.Ed.  
Director of Student Success  
Carianna Beck, B.A., Coordinator of Writing Support  
Catherine O. Clark, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Assistant Professor; Director of Study Abroad  
Karen Duhamel, B.A.  
Coordinator of Academic Support

### **Registrar's Office**

Janet Roberson, B.A., B.A., M.B.A.  
Assistant Dean/University Registrar and Military Affairs Officer  
Katie Johnston, B.S.  
Assistant Registrar  
Feleta Morton, A.A.S, B.B.A., M.B.A.  
Associate Registrar, VA Certifying Official

Sherry Phelps, B.A., M.B.A.  
Associate Registrar  
Celia Wilkerson, A.A.S.  
Records Specialist  
Sheila Smithers, A.A.S.  
Records Specialist

### **Student Life**

Lesley Villarose, B.A., M.Ed.  
Dean of Students  
Sandy Bash  
Administrative Assistant, Residence Life  
Donna Benz, B.S.  
Area Director, Coordinator of Housing Operations & Summer Residential Programs  
Skylar Daniel, B.A., M.Div.  
University Chaplain  
Marsha Foster, B.A., M.S., M.Ed., N.C.C.  
Associate Dean of Students and Title IX Coordinator  
Ashley Gayles, B.S.  
Administrative Assistant to Dean of Students  
Joan Kahwajy-Anderson, B.S., M.Ed., L.P.C.  
Director of Counseling Services  
Kyle Patterson, B.A. M.Ed.  
Assistant Director of Residence Life

### **BUSINESS AND FINANCE**

Aaron Howell, B.S., M.B.A., CPA  
Vice President for Business and Finance/Chief Financial Officer  
Mark Sheets  
Assistant to the Chief Financial Officer  
Pam Paynter, B.B.A.  
Payroll Specialist  
Elizabeth Richardson, A.A.S.  
Staff Accountant/Accounts Payable  
Lisa Stuart, B.S., M.S..  
Controller

### **Facilities**

Alonzo Jones  
Director of Facilities, Aramark  
Jason Ferrell, B.S.  
Assistant Director of Facilities, North Campus  
Mike Fisher  
Assistant Director of Facilities, Aramark  
Jamie Walker, B.A.  
Director of Security, Aramark

### **GPS Accounting**

Rena Shanks, A.A.S., B.S.  
Associate Director GPS Financial Services  
Denise Garrett, A.A.S.  
GPS Student Financial Services Counselor

Penny Hudson, A.A.S.  
GPS Student Financial Services Counselor  
Kristi Phillips, A.A.  
GPS Student Financial Services Counselor  
Rhonda Reavis, B.S., M.B.A.  
Assistant Director GPS Financial Services

### **Human Resources**

Kathie Tune, B.A., M.S.  
Director of Human Resources  
Anna Kautzman, M.Ed., J.D.  
Policy and Compliance Specialist  
Tammy Wall, B.S., M.B.A.  
Senior Accountant/Benefits Coordinator

### **Information Technology**

Kevin Lipscomb  
Director of Information Technology Services  
Pat Bowman  
Manager, Database Systems  
Don D'Alfonzo  
Network Administration Consultant  
Christopher W. Hanks, B.S.  
Systems Administrator  
Chelsea (Tony) Harris, A.A.S., B.S.  
IT Security Analyst  
John Lovell, A.A.S.  
Telecommunications Manager/Technician Specialist  
Jim Sauser  
Senior Systems Administrator  
Michael Thomas, A.A.S., A.A.S.  
Client Support Specialist

### **Student Financial Services**

Carl Bradsher, A.A., B.S.  
Director of Student Financial Services  
Faye Brandon, A.A.S., B.B.A., M.B.A.  
Assistant Director of Financial Aid-GPS  
Nancy Clark  
Senior Financial Services Counselor  
Kara Hankins, B.A.  
Senior Student Financial Services Counselor/VA Certifying Official  
Marty Jackson, B.A.  
Financial Aid Counselor  
Jeremy Jennings, B.S.  
Student Financial Services Counselor (GPS)  
April McCubbins, A.A.S.  
Senior Student Financial Services Counselor  
Susan C. Newcomb, A.S.  
Associate Director of Student Accounts  
Charles Phillips, B.A.  
Student Financial Services Counselor (GPS)

Stephanie Walker, B.A.S.  
Student Financial Services Counselor  
Caroline T. Wilborn, B.S.  
Student Financial Services Counselor (GPS)

## **ENROLLMENT MANAGEMENT**

Stacy Gato, B.S., B.A.  
Vice President for Enrollment Management

### **Admissions**

Angela Bowers  
Office Manager/Coordinator of Application Processing  
Cheryl Dalton  
Administrative Assistant to the Vice-President of Enrollment and Communications Management  
Jillian Gourley, B.S.  
Associate Director of Admissions  
Shekinah M. Logan, B.S.  
Campus Guest Coordinator  
Matthew B. Mann, B.A.  
Admissions Counselor  
Christopher McDonald, B.S.  
Admissions Counselor  
Stephanie T. Mullins, B.A.  
Associate Director of Admissions/Transfer Counselor  
Robyn Neal, A.A.S.  
Admissions Assistant  
Joel Nester, B.A., M.B.A.  
Director of Admissions/International Counselor  
James Thurnes, B.S., M.B.A.  
Assistant Director of Admission

### **Averett Central**

Katherine Clark, B.A.  
Student Concierge Coordinator  
Rose Holley  
Student Services Coordinator

### **Graduate and Professional Studies**

#### **Admissions**

Ron Lonzo, B.S., M.S.  
Interim Executive Director, GPS Enrollment  
Melissa Anderson, B.B.A., M.B.A.  
Director of GPS Admissions  
Christina D. Davis, A.A.S.  
Enrollment Administration Assistant  
Sarah Hudson, B.S., M.B.A.  
Admissions Counselor  
Andrea Levensgood, B.A.  
Admissions Counselor  
Valerie Y. Murphy-Point, B.A.

Assistant Director of GPS Admissions  
Jonathan Nichols, B.S.  
Admissions Counselor  
Katherine A. Pappas, B.A.  
Associate Director of GPS Admissions  
Angie Vaughan, B.B.A.  
GPS Administrative Assistant  
Pat Williams, B.S.W.  
Admissions Counselor

### **Operations**

A. Kendall Carter, B.A., M.B.A.  
Acting Associate Dean  
Marietta Sanford, B.B.A., M.B.A.  
Faculty Services  
Donna Schweiger  
Tracking Specialist

### **Student Success**

Chris Ellis, B.A., M.Div.  
Student Success Counselor  
Pam L. Harris, B.S.  
Senior Student Success Counselor  
Debbie M. Hyler  
Admissions Coordinator  
Chazley C. Logan, B.A.  
Student Success Counselor  
Erma Neveu, B.B.A.  
Military Site and Student Support Liaison  
Carly M. Pearce, B.A., M.S.  
Director of Student Success

### **INSTITUTIONAL ADVANCEMENT**

Buddy Rawley, B.S.  
Vice President for Institutional Advancement  
  
Marion Breen, B.S., M.S.  
Administrative Assistant  
Debbie Flinn, B.A., M.A., M.B.A.  
Director of Development  
Diane Gosney, A.A.S., B.B.A., M.B.A.  
Coordinator of Development Services  
Donna R. Gourley, A.A.S.  
Executive Assistant to the Vice President  
Daniel Hayes, B.S.  
Director of Alumni Relations  
Jennifer Hooper, B.S.  
Office Assistant  
Sherry R. McDowell, A.A.S., B.B.A.  
Administrative Assistant to the Director of Alumni and Parent Relations  
Suvi Pipponen, B.S., M.B.A.  
Coordinator of special events, campus, and conferences

Emily Tomlinson, B.A., M.B.A.  
Communications Specialist

**Individualized Education for Adult Learners (IDEAL)**

Susan Rowland, A.A.S., B.B.A., M.B.A.  
Director of GPS Curriculum Services/IDEAL  
Bonnie Humphries, B.B.A., M.B.A.  
Distance Education Specialist  
Virginia P. Stanley, B.S., M.A. Ed.  
Instructional Designer

---

## Averett University Alumni Association

---

Eric C. Miller '96 ..... Centreville, VA  
President

Nancy L. Perry '72 ..... Portsmouth, VA  
Vice-President

L. Keith Ashworth '85 ..... Danville, VA

Pattie P. Cairns '74 ..... Danville, VA

Justine L. Cherochak '12 ..... Fairfax, VA

Diron C. Clements '09 '07 ..... Danville, VA

Ronald B. Colege '11 '83 ..... South Boston, VA

Carol D. Digesare '71 '68 ..... Jacksonville, FL

Lucille A. Digges '55 ..... Charlottesville, VA

Mary C. Franks '66 ..... Danville, VA

David C. Hudson '13 '10 ..... Danville, VA

Christopher A. McDonald '11 ..... Martinsville, VA

Alisha B. Oehling '05 ..... Hume, VA

Virginia M. Rawls '03 ..... Acworth, GA

Nicholas C. Sturdifen '10 '07 ..... Burlington, NC

Roberta A. Thayer-Smith '72 ..... Yorktown, VA

Jackson B. Weller '01 ..... Danville, VA

Anita J. Wyatt '88 '77 ..... Danville, VA

---

# UNDERGRADUATE COLLEGE CALENDAR

---

## FALL 2015

Opening Meeting and Workshops	August 13
Returning Students Move In & International Student Orientation	August 16
Freshman Advising & Registration	August 17
IDS Class Meets	August 18
Opening Convocation	August 18
Classes Begin	August 19
Last Day Add/Drop, Declare P/F	August 26
*Labor Day - University Closed	September 7
Last Day to Withdraw "W" grade	September 18
Senior Pinning	September 24
Textbook Orders for Spring due	September 28
Mid-Terms	October 19
*Fall Break - No Classes	October 14-16
Classes Resume	October 19
Homecoming	October 2-4
Pre-registration Begins	October 30
Last Day to Apply for Graduation	November 6
Residence Halls Close (Thanksgiving)	November 24 at 7 p.m.
*Thanksgiving Break - No Classes	November 25-27
Classes Resume	November 30
Last Day to Withdraw "WP/WF"	December 2
*Reading Day - No Classes	December 3
Exams	December 4, 7-9
Residence Halls Close (Winter Break)	December 9 at 7 p.m.
Senior Grades Due 9:00 a.m.	December 10
GPS Graduation Reception	December 11 at 6:30 p.m.
Residence Hall Close (Graduating Seniors)	December 11
Commencement	December 12
Fall Grades Due	December 15

**SPRING 2016**

New Student Registration	January 11-12
Classes Begin	January 13
Last Day Add/Drop, Declare P/F	January 20
Founder's Day	January 21

Last Day to Withdraw "W" grade	February 12
Mid-Terms	March 4
*Spring Break - No Classes	March 7-11
Classes Resume	March 14
Textbook Orders for Fall & Summer due	March 15
Pre-registration Begins	March 28
Last Day to Apply for Graduation	April 8
*Good Friday - University Closed	March 25

Last Day to Withdraw "WP/WF"	April 27
*Reading Day - No Classes	April 28
Exams	April 29, May 2-4
Senior Grades Due 9:00 a.m.	May 5
GPS Graduation Reception	May 6
Commencement	May 7
Residence Halls Close (Graduating Seniors)	May 6
Spring Grades Due	May 10

**\*No Classes**

**SUMMER 2015 SESSIONS**

<b>First Term:</b>	May 20-June 12
<b>Second Term:</b>	June 15-July 8

## INDEX

- Academic Awards, 32
- Academic Forgiveness, 36
- Academic Honors, 32
- Academic Program, 18
  - Degrees Offered, 18
  - Graduation Requirements, 26
- Academic Renewal, 36
- Academic Support, 28
- Acceptance, 9
- Accreditation, 5
- Adding/Dropping a Course, 39
- Admission, 9
  - Accelerated, 11
  - Readmission, 15
  - Requirements, 17
- Adult Degree Program (see IDEAL), 17, 44
- Advanced Placement, 10
- Advising, 39
- Aeronautics, 47
  - Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice, 50
  - Aviation Business, 48
  - Flight Operations, 49
- Alumni Association, 259
- Art, 56
  - Minor, 58
  - Visual Arts with Teaching Licensure (PK-12), 57, 150
- Arts@Averett, 217
- Athletics, 219
- Athletic Training, 62
- Attendance and Absences, 30
- Averett Central, 218
  
- Basic Degree Requirements, 19
- Biological and Physical Sciences, 69
  - Biology with Teaching Licensure (6-12), 74, 150
  - Biology/Chemistry, 72
  - Biomedical Sciences, 70
  - Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 148
  - Environmental Studies, 71
  - Medical Technology, 73
  - Radiologic Technology, 74
- Board of Trustees, 243
- Bookstore, 223
- Business Administration, 80
  - Accounting, 81
  - Aviation Business, 48
  - Management Science, 82
  - Marketing Management, 83
  - Minor, 84
  
- Calendar, 260
- Campus, 7
- Campus Activities Board, 217
- Campus Visits, 16, 222
- Career Services, 28, 218
- Chemistry, 72
- Chemistry/Biology, 72
- Class Attendance, 30
- Classification of Students, 38
- CLEP, 40
- Clubs, Student, 220
- Communication Studies/Journalism, 88
  - Communications Minor, 89
  - Communications Studies Concentration, 88
  - Journalism Concentration, 89
  - Journalism Minor, 89
  - Journalism Teaching Licensure Endorsement, 90
- Commuter Students, 15

- Computer and Information Science, 93
  - Computer Information Systems, 95
  - Computer Information Systems Minor, 96
  - Computer Science, 93
  - Computer Science Minor, 94
  - Computer Science Teaching Endorsement, 96
  - Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 148
- Considered for Suspension, 34, 35
- Counseling Center, 219
- Course Load, 40
- Course Repeats, 36
- Credit by Examination, 41
- Criminal Justice, 99
  - Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice, 50
  - Criminal Justice Minor, 103
  - Criminal Justice/Sociology (IDEAL), 101
  - Criminal Justice/Sociology for Law Enforcement Professionals (IDEAL), 102
  - Criminal Justice/Sociology for Corrections Professionals (IDEAL), 102
  - Minor, 103
  - Sociology/Criminal Justice (2+2 program), 100
  - Sociology/Criminal Justice (4 year program), 99
- Danville, VA, 6
- Dean's List, 32
- Declaration of Major/Minor, 23
- Degrees, 18
- Degree Programs, 22
- Degree Requirements, 46
- Degree-Seeking Status, 14
- Directed Teaching, 156
- Direct Transfer Agreement, 14
- Disability Services, 218
- Dropping/Adding a Course, 39
- Dual Enrollment, 11
- Early Childhood Education, 105
  - Business Concentration, 106
  - Health/Physical Education Concentration, 106
  - Humanities Concentration, 105
  - Social Science Concentration, 106
  - Spanish Concentration, 106
- Economics, 107
- Education (See Liberal Studies), 144
- English, 108
  - Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 147
  - English/Theatre, 211
  - Minor, 111
  - With Teaching Licensure (6-12), 109, 150
- English/History (Pre-Law), 115
  - English/History, 115
- Environmental Sciences, 71
- Equestrian Studies, 117
  - Dressage, 118
  - Equine Assisted Psychotherapy, 119, 122
  - Eventing, 120
  - Management, 121
  - Minor, 122
- Evaluation of Academic Work, 31
- Faculty, 244
- Fees, (See Financial Information), 224
- Financial Assistance, 227
- Financial Information, 224
- Financial Policy, 225
- Fitness Center, 220
- Food Services, 218
- Forgiveness, Academic, 36
- French, 127, 165
  - Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 127
  - Minor, 127

General Education Requirements, 19  
 General Regulations, 38  
 Grade Appeal, 31  
 Grading System, 31  
 Graduate and Professional Studies, 43  
 Graduate Education Programs, 16, 144, 152  
 Graduation Application, 26  
 Graduation Requirements, 26  
 Greek, 129

Health, 129  
 Health Services, 218  
 Hebrew, 129  
 History, 130
 

- History and Social Science Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 150
- History/Social Science with Teaching Licensure (6-12), 131
- Minor, 133

 History and Politics, 135  
 History of Averett University, 6  
 Honor Code, 30  
 Honors Program, 25, 28, 136  
 Honor Societies, 33  
 Honors, Academic, 32  
 Human-Computer Interaction Program, 139

I-20 Form, 12  
 IDEAL, 44  
 Independent Study, 44  
 Information Directory,  
 Information Technology (see Computer Science), 93  
 Intercollegiate Athletics, 219  
 Interdisciplinary Studies, 21, 141
 

- Degree Requirements, 24, 46

 International Baccalaureate Diploma, 13  
 International Students, 11  
 International Study Opportunities, 25

Journalism/Communication Studies, 88
 

- Communications Minor, 89
- Communications Studies Concentration, 88
- Journalism Concentration, 89
- Journalism Minor, 89
- Journalism Teaching Licensure Endorsement, 90

Language Requirement, 20  
 Leadership Studies, 142  
 Leave of Absence, 37  
 Liberal Studies (Elementary Education), 144
 

- Autism Studies, 150
- Biology Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 148, 150
- Biology with Teaching Licensure (6-12), 74, 150
- Computer Science Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 148
- Computer Science Teaching Licensure Endorsement, 96, 150
- Directed Teaching, 156
- Drivers Education Teaching Licensure Endorsement (PK-12), 150
- English with Teaching Licensure (6-12), 109, 150
- English Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 147
- French Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 127, 147
- Health, Physical Education and Driver Education with Teaching Licensure (PK-12), 150, 178
- History and Social Science Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 147
- History/Social Science with Teaching Licensure (6-12), 131, 150
- Journalism Teaching Endorsement, 90
- Mathematics Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 148
- Mathematics with Teaching Licensure (6-12), 150, 159
- Natural Science Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 148
- Professional Courses, 148
- Social Science Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 148
- Spanish Concentration with Teaching Licensure, 147, 206
- Speech Teaching Endorsement, 150, 213

- Special Education Minor, 150
- Theatre Arts with Teaching Licensure (PK-12), 150, 210
- Visual Arts with Teaching Licensure (PK-12), 57, 150
- With Teaching Licensure (PK-6) (Elementary Education), 146
- With PK-12 Licensure, 150
- With Secondary Licensure (6-12), 150
- Library, 8, 29, 225,
- Loans and Scholarships, 228
- Location of the University, 6
  
- Major, Formal Declaration, 23
- Majors and Minors, 21, 23
- Mathematics, 159
  - Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 148
  - Mathematical Decision Science, 160
  - Minor, 161
  - With Teaching Licensure (6-12), 159
- Medical Technology, 73
- Military Credit, 41
- Minor, Formal Declaration, 23
- Mission Statement, 5
- Modern Languages, 165
- Motor Vehicles, 223
- Music, 167
  - Church Music, 168
  - Minor, 169
  - Performance, 168
  
- Non-Collegiate Learning Experiences, 42
- Non-Traditional Study (See also IDEAL), 44
  
- Organizations, Student, 220
- Orientation, 219
  
- Parental Access, 42
- Parking, 223
- Pass/Fail Option, 40
- Personnel Directory, 243
- Philosophy, 175
- Physical Education, Wellness and Sport Science, 176
  - Coaching, 171, 183
  - Health, Physical Education and Driver Education with Teaching Licensure (PK-12), 178
  - Personal Training, 179
  - Physical Education, 176, 183
  - Sport Management, 180
  - Wellness/Sports Medicine, 182
- Placement Tests, 10, 13
- Political Science, 189
  - Minor, 190
- Pre-Law (see English/History), 115
- Pre-Professional Studies, 25
- President's List, 32
- Probation, Academic, 34, 35
- Proficiency Requirements, 20
- Psychology, 192
  - Applied Behavior Analysis, 192, 193
  - Biological Psychology, 193
  - Cognitive Science, 193
  - Counseling and Clinical Psychology, 193
  - General Psychology Minor, 194
  - Human-Computer Interaction, 194
- Publications, Student, 220
  
- Quality Points, 31
  
- Radiologic Technology, 74
- Readmission, 15, 17, 35, 37
- Refunds, 226, 227
- Registration for Classes, 39
- Religion, 198

Minor, 199  
 Religious Life, 217  
 Repeating Courses, 36  
 Residence Halls, 221  
 Residence Requirements, 222  
 Resident Students, 15  
  
 Scholarship Assistance, 228  
 Scholarships, 228  
 Second Baccalaureate Degree, 26  
 Secondary Education, 150  
 Senior Citizen Discount, 224  
 Senior College Credits, 26  
 Social and Cultural Life, 217  
 Sociology, 202
 

- Criminal Justice/Sociology (IDEAL), 101
- Criminal Justice/Sociology for Law Enforcement Professionals (IDEAL), 102
- Criminal Justice/Sociology for Corrections Professionals (IDEAL), 102
- Minor, 203
- Sociology/Criminal Justice (2+2 program), 100
- Sociology/Criminal Justice (4 year program), 99

 Spanish, 165, 206
 

- Concentration with Teaching Licensure (PK-6), 147

 Special Education, 150  
 Special Students, 14  
 Special Studies, 46  
 Speech (See Theatre), 213  
 Student Government Association, 220  
 Student Life, 217  
 Student Loans, 228  
 Student Organizations, 220  
 Student Services, 28, 218  
 Study Abroad, 25, 166  
 Summer Sessions, 40  
 Supplemental Fees, 225  
 Suspension, Academic, 34, 35  
 Suspension, Considered for, 34, 35  
  
 Teacher Licensure, (See Liberal Studies), 144  
 Theatre, 208
 

- English/Theatre, 211
- Minor, 212
- Musical Theatre Minor, 213
- Speech Communication Endorsement, 213
- Theatre Arts with Teaching Licensure (PK-12), 210

 Transcripts, 42  
 Transfer Applications, 12  
 Transfer Credits, 13, 38, 39  
 Trustees, Board of, 243  
 Tuition and Fees (See Financial Information), 224  
 Tutoring Services, 28  
  
 Values, 5  
 Vehicles, 223  
 Vision, 5  
 Visitors, 5, 16, 222  
  
 Warning, Academic, 34, 35  
 Withdrawal from a Course, 39  
 Withdrawal from University, 36, 226  
 Writing Support, 28  
 Writing Proficiency Exam, 20

---

---

# INFORMATION DIRECTORY

---

---

Admissions	Dean of Admissions
Campus Visitations	
Interviews with Prospective Students	
Academic Records	Registrar
Grades	
Graduation Requirements	
Registration	
Transcripts	
Transfer Credits	
Veteran Affairs	
Academic Advising	Vice President for Academic Affairs
Academic Discipline	
Student Academic Concerns	
Freshman Interdisciplinary Program	
Faculty	
Class Schedules	
Alumni and Parent Relations	Director of Alumni and Parent Relations
Athletics	Interim Director of Intercollegiate Athletics
Men's and Women's Intercollegiate Teams	
Averett Central	Vice President for Enrollment Management
Contributions	Vice President for Institutional Advancement
Annual Giving	
Gifts	
Facilities	Director of Facilities Services, Aramark
Faculty Development	Vice President for Academic Affairs
Employment	
Evaluation	
Promotion	
Tenure	
Curriculum Development and Assessment	
Financial Affairs	Vice President for Administration and Finance
Tuition and Fees	
Insurance	
Mailroom	
Bookstore	
Financial Aid	Director of Student Financial Services
Loans	
Scholarships	
Graduate and Professional Studies	Associate Vice President of Graduate and Professional Studies

IDEAL Program

Director of the IDEAL Program

Information Technology  
Computer Center  
Internet Services

Director of Information Technology

Library

Director of Library

Security

Security Manager, Aramark

Student Services  
Career Services  
Counseling Services  
Facilities  
Security  
Residence Life  
Student Activities

Dean of Students